

UC-NRLF



\$B 253 209

P A  
2095  
N8  
1912  
MAIN

GIFT OF  
President Wheeler



760  
N 987  
f

760

N987

f

Then 52

345 N.W.  
Brown, brown

500  
500

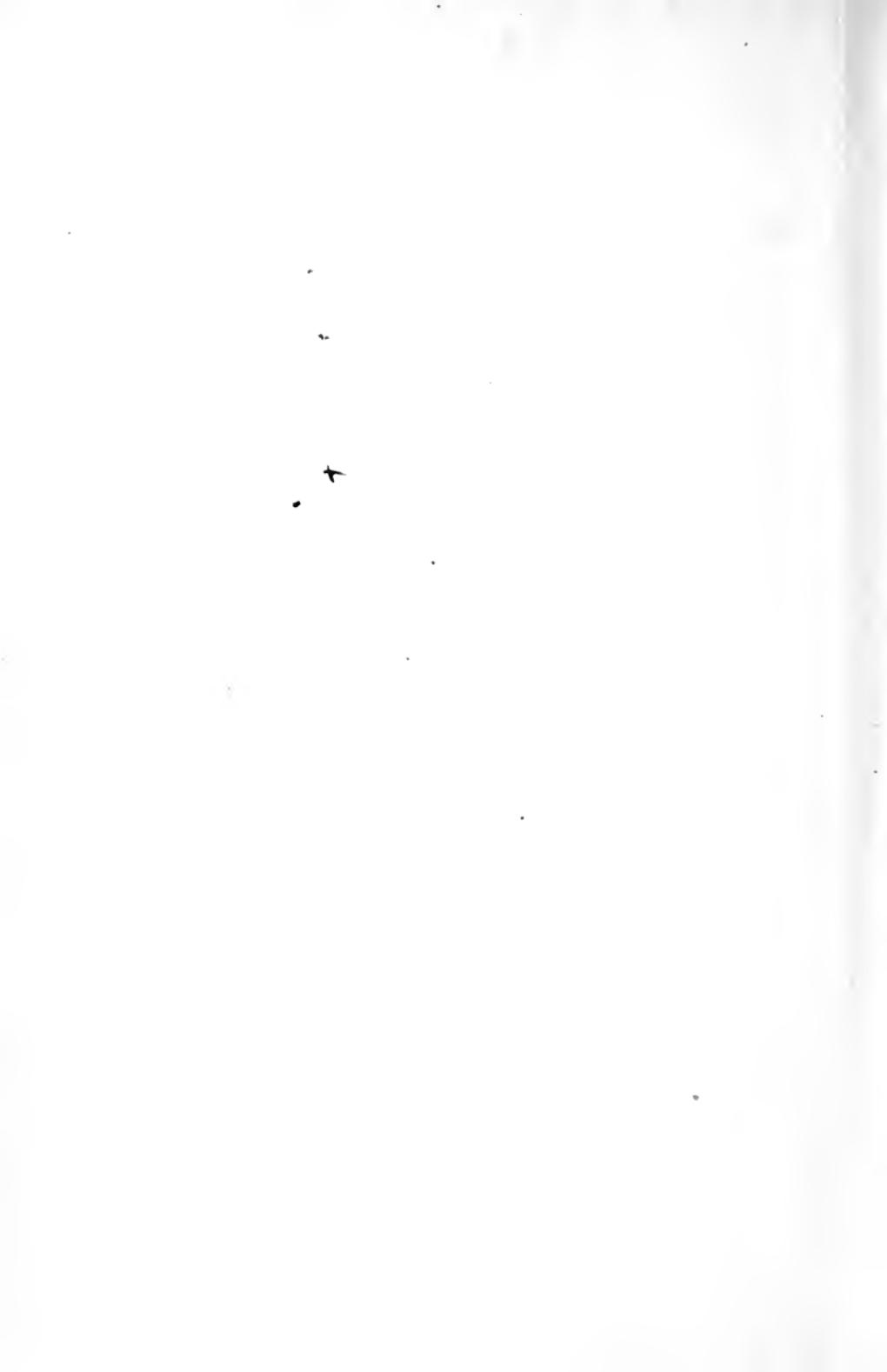
500  
500

500

500  
500  
500

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation





# A FIRST LATIN READER

BY

H. C. NUTTING, PH.D.

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY  
OF CALIFORNIA



UNIVERSITY OF  
CALIFORNIA.

NEW YORK :: CINCINNATI :: CHICAGO  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

*Gift of Rev. Wheeler.*

COPYRIGHT, 1912, BY  
H. C. NUTTING.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.

NUTTING, LATIN READER.  
W.P. I

TO MARY  
AMACILLAO

PA 2095  
N8  
1912  
MAIN

## PREFACE

WITH the Primer previously published, this Reader provides for a course of study leading up to Caesar or some other author of like difficulty. Students who are to give five years or more to preparatory Latin would normally devote a year each to the Primer and the Reader; but the maturer pupils in the four-year course will cover easily in their first year the work outlined in both books.

It is hoped too, that, aside from use in this regular sequence, the Reader will be found to meet the needs of many teachers who are looking for a carefully graded text for supplementary reading or for translation at sight.

The plan for "beginning Latin" embodied in Primer and Reader differs from others most fundamentally, perhaps, in that it concentrates so definitely upon the problem of developing the student's power to read Latin; and it is quite in harmony with that general design that this second book is called a "Reader," and that in it the Latin-English exercises are massed at one point, with notes at the foot of the page.

Teachers using the Reader can best coöperate toward realizing the writer's aim if each recitation period is divided definitely into two parts, the first to be devoted, without distraction, to the business of learning to read, the other being reserved for grammatical drill and for composition work, oral or written. In this way, without loss in any essential particular, it will be found possible to bring the student along, by natural stages, to the point where he will

attack a simple passage from Caesar or Nepos, not as a Chinese puzzle by laborious effort to be tortured into something remotely resembling sense, but as a story from the reading of which some pleasure and profit is to be derived.

For the development of a system of Latin-English exercises so graded as to serve the purpose for which the Reader is made, of course no Latin author was available; and the text, therefore, is necessarily for the most part original. With the idea of stimulating interest, and to bring into play the necessary vocabulary and syntax while yet meeting halfway the many who do "not care for (foreign) war," the first hundred lessons have been made to deal almost entirely with matters of American history, the initial series (1-45) summing up briefly and chronologically the main events of the years 1492-1783, and the second group (46-100) comprising short anecdotes assembled without regard for chronological sequence. Next follow two narratives from Caesar simplified (101-125), and the concluding series (126-140) is made up of selections from the original text of Caesar, Nepos, Suetonius, Sallust, and Cicero. This final group, of course, is not a part of the gradatim plan, but was added that the student might have the satisfaction of reading some "real Latin." The passage from Suetonius (131), chiefly because of its large vocabulary, will probably be found too difficult for most pupils; if so, the intrinsic interest of the passage may make it seem worth the teacher's while to undertake a translation for the class.

With a view to discouraging the habit of constant recourse to the general vocabulary, a series of lesson preparations has been provided in the form of a word list showing the important new words in each successive exercise: moreover, with the exception of proper names and

numerals, all words which are used in but a single lesson are defined in the footnotes on that exercise. For teachers who are using the Reader as a text for sight reading, the cross references of the notes may prove helpful as providing a means of locating familiar material with which to elucidate the lesson of the day.

In preparing the Latin text, I have derived some help from the handbooks in common use, but my main reliance has been Merguet's "Lexikon zu den Schriften Cäsars." I would also acknowledge gratefully the generous help of my colleague, Dr. M. E. Deutsch, who has read a large part of the text and given me the benefit of several valuable suggestions.

H. C. N.

BERKELEY, CALIFORNIA.



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## LATIN-ENGLISH EXERCISES

### EARLY AMERICAN HISTORY

PAGE		PAGE			
1.	Christopher Columbus . . . . .	1	23.	William Penn and the Friends . . . . .	26
2.	Christopher Columbus ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	2	24.	Nathaniel Bacon in Virginia . . . . .	27
3.	Christopher Columbus ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	3	25.	Nathaniel Bacon ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	28
4.	Christopher Columbus ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	4	26.	Nathaniel Bacon ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	30
5.	The Cabots . . . . .	5	27.	The Boyhood of George Washington . . . . .	31
6.	Captain John Smith . . . . .	6	28.	Experiences on the Frontier . . . . .	32
7.	Captain John Smith ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	6	29.	A Dangerous Mission . . . . .	33
8.	Captain John Smith ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	7	30.	A Dangerous Mission ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	34
9.	Captain John Smith ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	10	31.	The Beginning of the French and Indian War . . . . .	35
10.	Pocahontas . . . . .	11	32.	Braddock's Defeat . . . . .	36
11.	Henry Hudson . . . . .	12	33.	Later Events of the War . . . . .	37
12.	Henry Hudson ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	13	34.	The Outbreak of the Revolution . . . . .	38
13.	Colonization in New England . . . . .	14	35.	Operations about Boston . . . . .	39
14.	A Soldier's Courtship . . . . .	16	36.	The Battles of Long Island and Trenton . . . . .	41
15.	Unrest among the Indians . . . . .	17	37.	The Retreat from Trenton . . . . .	42
16.	Old Friends become Enemies . . . . .	18	38.	Burgoyne's Campaign . . . . .	43
17.	The Outbreak of King Philip's War . . . . .	20	39.	Valley Forge . . . . .	44
18.	A Remarkable Deliverance . . . . .	21	40.	Help from France . . . . .	45
19.	Philip finds Allies . . . . .	22	41.	Benedict Arnold . . . . .	46
20.	Captain Church . . . . .	23	42.	A Roman who fought against his Country . . . . .	48
21.	The Death of Philip . . . . .	24	43.	The Surrender of Cornwallis . . . . .	49
22.	End of the War . . . . .	25	44.	Washington retires to Private Life . . . . .	51
		vii	45.	The Father of his Country . . . . .	52

## TALES OF LAND AND SEA

PAGE		PAGE	
46. The Settler's Daughter . . .	54	74. The Treasure Seekers . . .	88
47. The Trials of War . . . . .	55	75. A Dangerous Conspiracy .	90
48. The Attempt to surprise De- troit . . . . .	56	76. A Dangerous Conspiracy <i>(continued)</i> . . . . .	91
49. The Attempt to surprise De- troit ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	57	77. A Quick-Witted Messenger	92
50. A Successful Ruse . . . . .	58	78. Fortune favors the Brave .	93
51. How the Town was Saved .	59	79. Andrew Jackson . . . . .	94
52. An Example of Fortitude .	61	80. Pirates Ashore . . . . .	95
53. A Hasty Leave-Taking . .	62	81. Carrying the Tribute . . .	97
54. The Capture of a Man-of- War . . . . .	63	82. A Successful Ambuscade .	98
55. The Fall of New London . .	64	83. An Intrepid Commander .	99
56. The Fall of New London ( <i>con- tinued</i> ) . . . . .	65	84. Burned at the Stake . . .	101
57. Captivity among the Indians .	67	85. An Early Morning Surprise	102
58. A Fresh Supply of Powder .	68	86. Some Very Distinguished	
59. A Battle against Great Odds .	69	Geese . . . . .	103
60. A Night Attack . . . . .	70	87. An Army of Two . . . . .	104
61. A Choice of Evils . . . . .	71	88. Horatius at the Bridge .	105
62. Lost in the Woods . . . . .	72	89. A Favor Repaid . . . . .	108
63. The Battle of Saratoga . . .	73	90. An Earthquake in Colonial	
64. Unwelcome Visitors . . . . .	74	Times . . . . .	109
65. The Boyhood of Daniel Boone	76	91. Evils of the Slave Trade .	110
66. The End of the Pequots . .	78	92. A Pirate Outdone . . . . .	111
67. The End of the Pequots ( <i>con- tinued</i> ) . . . . .	79	93. Colonization in Africa . .	112
68. A Difficult Escape . . . . .	80	94. A Prize Won and Lost . .	113
69. Stories about Daniel Boone .	81	95. A Prize Won and Lost ( <i>con- tinued</i> ) . . . . .	114
70. An English Privateer . . . .	82	96. A Mysterious Disappear- ance . . . . .	116
71. A Roman Vandal . . . . .	83	97. Early Days in Liberia . .	118
72. Indian Vengeance . . . . .	86	98. An Experience with Rob- bers . . . . .	119
73. A Tale of Brave Women . .	87	99. The Capture of Stony Point	120
		100. Nathan Hale . . . . .	121

## STORIES FROM CAESAR RETOLD

## THE WINTER OF 54-53 B.C.

101. Unexpected Trouble . . .	123	103. Division of Opinion in the	
102. A Parley with the Enemy .	125	Roman Camp . . . . .	126

PAGE	PAGE		
104. The Advice of the Enemy is Taken . . . . .	127	III. A Messenger eludes the Enemy . . . . .	137
105. The Romans are Ambushed . . . . .	128	112. Caesar heads a Relief Force . . . . .	138
106. The Enemy Prevail . . . . .	130	113. The Besieged learn of Caesar's Approach . . . . .	139
107. Annihilation of the Roman Force . . . . .	131	114. The Enemy raise the Siege . . . . .	141
108. The Gauls attack a Second Camp . . . . .	133	115. They are Outgeneraled by Caesar . . . . .	142
109. The Besieged attempt to Communicate with Caesar . . . . .	134	116. Arrangements for the Rest of the Winter . . . . .	143
110. Heroic Defense of their Camp . . . . .	135		

## AN AFRICAN CAMPAIGN

117. Caesar lands a Force in Africa . . . . .	145	122. Narrow Escape of their Commander . . . . .	152
118. Operations about Utica . . . . .	147	123. King Juba marches to the Relief of Varus . . . . .	154
119. Curio gains an Initial Advantage . . . . .	148	124. The Numidians resort to Strategy . . . . .	155
120. He maintains his Army's Loyalty to Caesar . . . . .	149	125. Curio's Army is Annihilated . . . . .	156
121. The Pompeians suffer a Second Reverse . . . . .	151		

## SELECTED PASSAGES FROM LATIN PROSE AUTHORS

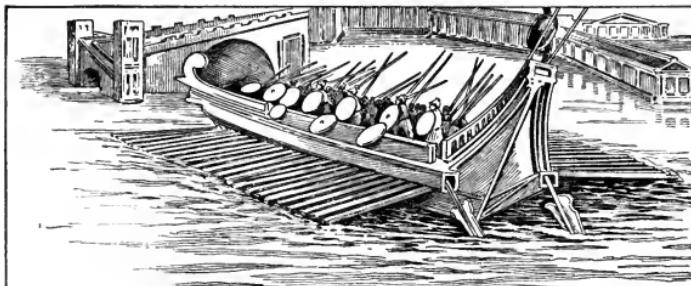
126-128. An Episode from the Gallic War . . . . .	158	131. The Death of Caesar . . . . .	166
129-130. An Episode from the Civil War . . . . .	163	132-133. The Fate of Hannibal . . . . .	169
		134-136. Catiline's Conspiracy . . . . .	172
		137-140. On the Eastern Frontier . . . . .	178

WORD LIST . . . . .	186
---------------------	-----

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	199
------------------------------------	-----

## LIST OF MAPS

Gallia . . . . .	124
The Scene of Curio's Campaign in Africa . . . . .	146
Asia Minor . . . . .	179



NĀVIS

The above illustration is taken from a Pompeian wall painting. It is interesting particularly as showing the rather primitive steering-gear used by the Romans even for heavy ships of war. In large vessels two helmsmen worked together, each controlling a single sweep. On small boats one man attended to the steering, using either one oar or two, according to the construction of the craft.

# LATIN-ENGLISH EXERCISES

## EARLY AMERICAN HISTORY

### LESSON I

#### *Christopher Columbus*

Quōdam in oppidō Italiae ōlim nātus est puer, quī Columbus appellābātur. Diū in patris officinā labōrāvit. Sed prope erat mare, puerque saepe ad lītus ībat, ut vidēret nāvēs, quae ē portū ad terrās exibant dīversās. In 5 nāvibus erant hominēs multī, et Columbus mare trānsīre saepe voluit; tum autem pecūniām nūllam habēbat. Sed posteā, cum iam iuvenis esset, usque ad Britanniam et Africam nāvigāvit.

Illis temporibus nautae timēbant mare Atlanticum, cur-  
10 sumque prope lītus tenēbant. Interdum autem secundum Africāē ōram longē nāvigātum erat, quod Henricus, rēx Lūsitāniae, invenīre viam volēbat, quā nāvēs circum Africāē prōgressae, ad Asiam pervenīre possent.

Line 2. officinā: officina, -ae,  
F., workshop.

7. usque ad: all the way to,  
lit. even to.

9. illis temporibus: in those  
days.

10. interdum: not interim.

11. ōram: i.e. lītus (ōra, -ae,  
F.). — nāvigātum erat: people had

sailed, lit. it had been sailed (impersonal passive).

12. quā: by which; antecedent, viam.

13. possent: could; subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose. In translating the verb possum, some other rendering than "be able" should often be chosen.

Quidam tum crēdēbant terram esse rotundam, Columbusque etiam spērāre cooperat se trānsire mare Atlanticum posse, et ita ad Asiam pervenīre; nēmō enim intellegēbat terram tam magnam esse, nec Columbus ipse suspicātus est Americam interpōnī.

## LESSON 2

*Christopher Columbus (Continued)*

Interim Henricus rēx mortuus erat. Columbus tamen in Lūsitāniā profectus est, ut rēgī tum ibi rēgnum obtinēt cōsilium suum aperīret; sed pecūniā, quam petēbat, dare nōlēbat rēx. Ex Lūsitāniā igitur in Hispāniā iter fēcit Columbus; ubi rēx Ferdinandus Isabellaque bellum cum Maurīs gerēbant, nec quisquam advenam libenter audiēbat. Itaque ille, ubi cōgnōvit rēgem et rēginam nōlle ea facere quae spērāverat, ad Galliam versus profectus est; cum autem montēs trānsīret, nūntius est cōsecūtus, quī dixit velle iam Isabellam parāre nāvēs pecūniāmque dare. Quā rē audītā, Columbus laetus rediit, nautāsque validōs quaerere coepit; sed paene omnēs, periculum veritī, cum eō nāvigāre nōlēbant.

Postrēmō autem ē portū exiit tribus cum nāvibus parvīs, quae Pinta, Nīna, Santaque Marīa appellābantur; cumque

1. *quidam*: masc. pl., used as a noun. — *rotundam*: *rotundus*, -a, -um, *round*, or *spherical*.

4. *nec*: *and . . . not*.

5. *interpōnī*: lit. *to lie between*.

7. *obtinētī*: pres. part. modifying *rēgī*.

10. *ubi*: (*but*) *there*.

11. *nec quisquam*: *and nobody*.

12. *ubi*: temporal conjunction.

13. *ea*: (neut. pl.) *the things*.

15. *velle*: *was willing*.

16. *laetus*: *gladly*, or *with joy*.

A Latin adj. is often best translated by an adverb or a phrase.

17. *veritī*: perf. part. of *vereor*; to be translated as a present, the Latin use being somewhat inexact.

paucōs diēs nāvigāset, ad īsulās quāsdam pervēnit, in quibus inveniuntur plūrimae avēs, quārum cantus est pulcherrimus. Tum per ignōtum mare fortiter prōgressus est.

## LESSON 3

*Christopher Columbus (Continued)*

Cum multa mīlia passuum Columbus nāvigāset neque 5 terram vidisset ūllam, nautae vehementer timēre coepērunt, quod multa audiverant dē nāvibus, quae longē per mare Atlanticum prōgressae domum numquam posteā redierant; in Hispāniā igitur statim redire volēbant, dux tamen nōluit. Quārē illī pīmō habuērunt in animō Co- 10 lumbum etiam in mare iacere; postrēmō autem eōrum animī irātī ā duce mītigātī sunt.

Ōlim nauta quīdam crēdēbat sē terram vidēre, et omnēs gaudēbant; nūbem autem vīderat ille, nōn terram. Sed paucīs post diēbus rāmum invēnērunt et bācās in marī 15 natantēs, ac Columbus sēnsit sē iam terrae appropinquāre. Mox noctū ignem quoque in lītore vīdērunt, ac māne ad īsulam pervēnērunt parvam, ubi laetī in harēnam ēgressī paucōs diēs morātī sunt.

Inde profectus, Columbus aliās quoque īsulās adiit, in 20 quibus erat ea, quae Cūba appellātur. Gazās tamen invenīre nōn potuit, quās quaerēbat. Putābat enim sē iam ad

1. nāvigāset: *i.e.* nāvigāvis-set.

2. plūrimae: see multus.

4. neque: cf. nec, p. 2, l. 4.

6. multa: *many (stories).*

11. mītigātī sunt: *were calmed (mītigō, 1).*

13. nūbem: *nūbēs, -is, F., cloud.*

14. paucīs post diēbus: *a few days later, lit. afterward by a few days (abl. of degree of difference).*

15. natantēs: *pres. part. of natō. — iam: at length.*

21. potuit: *see the note on possent, p. 1, l. 13.*

Asiam pervenisse; quārē incolās eārum īsulārum, quās adierat, Indōs appellāvit.

## LESSON 4

*Christopher Columbus (Concluded)*

Indī Columbum amābant; isque, cum ad Hispāniām reditūrus esset, in īsulā quādam colōniām parvam reliquit.  
5 Colōnī tamen iniūriās mox Indīs fēcērunt ac brevī ad ūnum ab eīs interfectī sunt.

Interim Columbus ipse domum properābat; subitō autem, cum laetus per mare nāvigāret, tempestāte maximā coortā, nāvēs fluctibus paene complētae sunt. Tum ille scripsit 10 litterās, quās in dōlia conditās in mare iēcit; crēdēbat enim nūllam iam esse spem, putābatque dōlia posse ad lītus ventis ferri, cīvēsque suōs ita certiōrēs fieri dē eīs īsulīs, quās ipse invēnerat. Sed maris violentiam nāvēs sustinuērunt, et Columbus in Hispāniām incolumis pervenīt, ubi rēx et 15 rēgīna eius rēbus gestīs gaudēbant, eumque fēcērunt īsulārum praefectum.

Posteā ad Americam Columbus semel atque iterum nāvīgāvit. Rem autem haud fēliciter gessit, inopsque postrēmō mortuus est. Etiam tum terrās, quās invēnerat, 20 Asiae partem esse crēdēbat.

3. reditūrus esset: was about to return.

5. brevī: i.e. mox.—ad ūnum: to a man.

8. laetus: cf. p. 2, l. 16.

10. dōlia: dōlium, -ī, N., cask.—conditās: freely, he placed . . . (and); lit. what?

12. certiōrēs fieri: be informed, or learn, lit. be made more certain. Supply posse with this clause.

13. violentiam: violentia, -ae, F., force.

14. incolumis: for rendering, cf. laetus, l. 8.—ubi: there.

15. eius rēbus gestīs: in his exploits.

16. praefectum: cf. the predicate accusative (Indōs) with appellāvit, l. 2.

18. inops (-opis, adj.): in poverty.

## LESSON 5

*The Cabots*

Interim vir quidam, nōmine Cabot, ā Britanniā cum nāve parvā nautisque paucis profectus est atque ad Americam pervenit. Qui nōn sōlum īsulās adiit, sed etiam eam terram, quae nunc Canada appellātur. Posteā īdem cum filio ad Americam iterum nāvigāvit, ac multa milia passuum secundum litus prōgressus, Indōs vīdit multōs. Interim nautae prope īsulās quāsdam morābantur, ut piscis caperent. Qui, cum domum incolumēs redīsset, amīcis suis multa nārrāvērunt dē rēbus mīris, quās vīderant; quīn etiam dīxērunt sē ursās vīdisse in mare prōgredientēs, ut piscis raperent.

Cabot filius posteā omnīs in partēs nāvigāvit, ac diū cōnātus est viam invenīre, quā circum Eurōpam nāvigāre atque ita ad Asiam pervenīre posset; eam tamen viam numquam invēnit, neque nunc nōta est. Olim, cum iam esset senex neque ipse diūtius nāvigāre posset, dōna magna dīcitur dedisse nautīs quibusdam, quōs forte cōgnōverat parvā in nāve ad terrās ignōtās profectūrōs esse; adeō nāvīs nautāsque semper amāvit.

1. *ā*: *from*.

3. *qui*: *he*. — *eam*: *the*.

8. *qui, cum*: (*and*) *when they*.

— *incolumēs*: cf. p. 4, l. 14.

9. *multa*: cf. ea, p. 2, l. 13, and *multa*, p. 3, l. 6. This noun use of the neuter of adjectives and pronouns is exceedingly frequent in Latin. The English rendering varies with the context.

10. *ursās*: *ursa, -ae, F., bear*.

12. *filius*: *the younger*.

13. *quā*: abl. of way by which;

cf. *quā*, p. 1, l. 12.

15. *neque*: cf. *nec*, p. 2, l. 4.

16. *diūtius*: (*any*) *longer*.

17. *dīcitur*: lit. *he is said*. This personal passive construction is common in the present, imperfect, and future tenses of verbs of saying, thinking, and the like.

18. *profectūrōs esse*: cf. *reditūrus esset*, p. 4, l. 3.

## LESSON 6

*Captain John Smith*

Quod colōnī, quī ex Hispāniā in Americam dēductī erant, aurum multum et argentum ibi inveniēbant, Britannī quoque colōnōs quōsdam mīsērunt, quī castra pōnerent eā in terrā, quae Virginia appellātur. Quōs colōnōs Indī mox adortī sunt, sagittīsque occidērunt paucōs; castra tamen prope rīpam posita erant, ac nautae ē nāvibus tēla plūrima inmīsērunt in hostēs, quī sē celeriter in silvās recipere coāctī sunt.

Brevī autem erat perīculum etiam maius; nam paene omnis cōnsūmptus est cibus, quem colōnī ā Britanniā nāvibus vēxerant. Statim igitur eōrum dux, nōmine Faber, vir fortis, cum scaphā paucīsque mīlitibus adversō flūmine longē prōgressus est, ut frūmentum quaereret, quod incolae libenter dabant prō nūgīs quās colōnī sēcum ferēbant.

Posteā dux idem, cum iterum p̄fectus esset ut inveniret viam, quā ad Asiam nāvēs pervenire possent (omnēs enim iam intellegēbant Americam nōn esse Asiae partem), fortier pugnāns ab Indīs captus est.

## LESSON 7

*Captain John Smith (Continued)*

Postrēmō tamen in colōniam incolumis reductus, Faber posteā per lītora omnia iter fēcit; spērābat enim semper

3. pōnerent: cf. the note on possent, p. 1, l. 13.—eā: modifier of terrā: for translation, cf. eam, p. 5, l. 3.

4. quōs: *these* (adj.).

10. nāvibus: freely, *in their ships*; strictly, abl. of means.

12. adversō flūmine: *up stream*; lit. what?

14. nūgīs: nūgae, -ārum, F., trifles.

16. omnēs: *everybody*; cf. the note on quīdam, p. 2, l. 1. The noun use of the masc. pl. is very frequent.

sē flūmen esse inventūrum, quō Americam trānsire et ita ad Asiam pervenīre posset. In itineribus et dux et mīlitēs noctū saepe frīgora maxima ferre cōgēbantur; tum, remōtō ignī et haud procul collocātō, humī iacēre solēbant eōdem 5 locō, ubi ignis modo fuerat. Interdum aquam dulcem nōn habēbant, eōrumque pānis fluctibus corruptus est.

Ōlim in eōs, cum prope litus quoddam nāvigārent, ab incolis sagittae subitō ex arboribus missae sunt; mīlitēs tamen, cum posteā in litorē eōsdem Indōs corbulās manibus 10 tenentēs vīdissent, incolās velle frūmentum sibi dare crēdi-dērunt. Dux autem, īsidiās veritus, mīlitēs iussit hostēs prius sonō armōrum terrēre; tum, cum Indī perterriti in silvās fūgissent, colōnī ad lītus vēnērunt, et in harēnā dōna posuērunt multa. Quae cum Indī invēnissent, gaudēbant, 15 ac colōnīs iam factī amīcī, frūmentum eīs libenter dedērunt.

## LESSON 8

### *Captain John Smith (Continued)*

Dum haec fīunt, Indī, quī prope colōniām habitābant, colōnōrum cōpiās saepe rapiēbant; quīn etiam interdum

1. esse inventūrum: *would find*.—quō: cf. quā, p. 1, l. 12.

2. et . . . et: *both . . . and*.

3. maxima: for the various renderings of *magnus*, see the Vocab.—tum: *at such times*.—remōtō: *removeō*, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus, move.

4. humī: *on the ground*; locative case.—eōdem locō: the prepositions *in* and *ex* are often lacking with *locō* and *locīs*.

5. interdum: cf. p. 1, l. 10.—dulcem: *dulcis, -is, -e, fresh*.

6. pānis (-is, M.): *bread*.—

corruptus est: *corrumpō*, 3, -rūpī, -ruptus, *spoil*.

9. corbulās: *corbula*, -ae, F., basket.—manibus: for syntax, cf. nāvibus, p. 6, l. 10.

14. quae: *these* (noun).

15. factī amīcī: *freely, becoming friendly* (*factī* from *fīō*). English often uses a pres. part. where the perfect would be more exact.

16. haec: *these things*.—fīunt: in connection with *dum*, the pres. indic. is rendered as an imperfect.

17. rapiēbant: *would steal*; a common meaning of the impf. indic.

arma quoque ē colōniā raptā sunt, dōnec ūnus ex Indīs, qui ea tractāre nesciēbat, ita ipse sē interfēcit.

Postrēmō ē Britanniā vēnērunt colōnī novī, qui Fabrō, dē quō suprā dīxi, amīcī nōn erant. A quibus domum redīre 5 coāctus, numquam posteā ille ad Virginiam revēnit. Sed per mare Atlanticum saepe navigāvit, atque oīlim pervēnit usque ad terram, quae nunc Britannia Nova appellātūr. Ibi nautae, locō idōneō complūrīs diēs morātī, piscēs cēpērunt multōs, quōs sāle conditōs posteā in Britanniam 10 reportāvērunt. Interim dux parvā in scaphā multa mīlia passuum secundum lītus prōgressus, frūmentum pellēsque ab incolīs emēbat.

Quī, cum dēmum in Britanniam redīre vellet, Indōs complūrīs in nāvēs accēpit ac sēcum domum redūxit. Quō ubi 15 est perventum omnēsque iam ē nāvībus ēgressī sunt, ūnus ē praepositīs Indōs paucōs sē sequī nāvemque iterum cōscendere iussit; tum clam ad Hispāniā cum captivīs miserīs profectus est. Ibi autem cum Indōs vēndere cōnārēt, sacerdōtēs quīdam, qui dē eius cōnsiliō certiōrēs factī 20 erant, ad nāvem statim properāvērunt; ā quibus captivī servātī sunt.

1. ex: of.

2. tractāre: (*how*) to handle.

— ipse . . . sē: freely, *his own self*.

4. domum: *i.e.* to England.

5. revēnit: the prefix re- often means "back"; cf. reportāvērunt (l. 10), redūxit (l. 14), and re(d)-ire (l. 4).

7. usque ad: as far as.

8. locō: cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

9. sāle conditōs: *salted down* (condiō, 4, *season*; sāl, sālis, M., salt); conditōs modifies quōs.

11. pellēs: pellis, -is, F., skin, or *pelt*.

13. quī, cum: *when . . . he*. — vellet: was ready; for other meanings of the word see the Vocab.

14. in nāvēs accēpit: translate freely. — sēcum: *i.e.* sē + cum. — quō: there; lit. whither.

15. est perventum: cf. the impersonal passive on p. 1, l. 11, and translate according to the context here. — omnēs: cf. p. 6, l. 16.

16. praepositīs: praepositus, -ī, M., *officer*.

19. certiōrēs factī erant: cf. p. 4, l. 12.



SACERDOS

Above is shown the statue of a Vestal Virgin found at Rome in the ruins of the Temple of Vesta, a goddess upon whose altar a pure bright fire was always kept burning, and whose public worship was in the hands of virgin priestesses chosen in childhood for a term of thirty years' service. The Vestal Virgins were held in the highest honor, even the consuls yielding them precedence when they appeared in public; and a condemned criminal was saved, if he were but fortunate enough to meet some of them as he was being led away to execution.

## LESSON 9

*Captain John Smith (Concluded)*

Faber interim colōniam in Britanniam Novam dēdūcere parābat, brevīque cum militibus ac nautīs sēdecim ad Americam versus profectus est. Cum autem mare trānsīret, subitō tempestās magna est coorta, ac nāvēs fluctibus paene 5 frāctae sunt; quārē domum redire coāctus est.

Sed paulō post cum ūnā nāve parvā iterum profectus, multōs diēs ad Americam versus fēlīciter nāvigāvit. Tum, pīrātīs procul vīsīs, frūstrā effugere cōnātus est. Pīrātē tamen inventī sunt mīlitēs esse, quōs ipse oīlm in Eurōpā 10 dūxerat; quī igitur ducem suum veterem volēbant sēcum nāvigāre, is autem ad Americam cursum tenēre māluit. Sed paucīs post diēbus Gallī quīdam, quī per maria omnia prae- 15 dam quaerēbant, eius nāvem cēpērunt, ipsumque suam nāvem longam coēgērunt cōscendere. Ibi cum morārētur, eius nautae, quī domum redire iam diū volēbant, clam dedērunt vēla, incolumēsque in Britanniam pervēnērunt. Ubi tamen poenās posteā dedērunt cum dēmum redīsset Faber, quī cum Gallis diū nāvigāre coāctus erat. Numquam posteā ille colōniam dēdūcere cōnātus est.

2. ad . . . versus: *for*; cf. p. 2, l. 13.

6. paulō post: *a little later*, lit. *afterward by a little*; cf. pau- cīs post diēbus, p. 3, l. 14. — profectus: cf. the note on factī, p. 7, l. 15.

9. inventī sunt . . . esse: *i.e.* proved to be; lit. what? — Eurōpā: note the case.

14. morārētur: *was detained*.

15. iam diū: in connection with such adverbial words and phrases as *iam*, *iam diū*, etc., an imperf. has almost the force of a pluperf. — dedērunt vēla: sc. *ventīs*, *i.e. set sail*.

16. incolumēs: cf. p. 4, l. 14. — ubi: see the note on p. 4, l. 14.

## LESSON 10

*Pocahontas*

Prope colōniam, quam Britannī in Virginiam dēdūixerant, habitābat quīdam rēx Indus, cui erat filia pulchra. Puella, quae Pōcahonta appellābātur, colōnōs amāvit, oīlīque servāverat eum ducem, dē quō suprā multa dixī; nam trāditum est, cum ille ab Indīs captus esset, hostēsque eum interficere vellent, rēgis filiam suum corpus interposuisse. Id tamen multī crēdunt numquam esse factum, Fabrumque posteā mentītum esse. Sed frūmentō certē et carne Pōcahonta colōnōs saepe iūvit, et quondam ad oppidum nūntium misit, cum hostēs oppidānōs occidere parārent.

Interdum colōnī, quōrum cōpiae semper parvae erant, fame paene periērunt; quīn etiam oīlim, quamquam libenter equōs quoque edēbant, hominēs multī mortuī sunt. Tum, impetum Indōrum timentēs, oppidānī ipsam rapuērunt 15 Pōcahontam mēnsēsque multōs prō obside tenuērunt, ut pater, filiā captā, amīcus esse cōgerētur. Puellam, dum in oppidō morātur, ūnus ex colōnis amāre coepit. Qui, cum eam in mātrīmōnium dūxisset, ad Britanniam cum uxōre est profectus; ubi paulō post Pōcahonta mortua est.

2. *cui erat*: freely, *who had*;  
lit. what?

4. *multa*: *much*; cf. *multa*,  
p. 5, l. 9.—*trāditum est*: *it is related* (*trādō* is short for *trānsdō*,  
lit. *hand over, pass along*).

6. *suum*: emphatic position,  
*her own*. When a possessive adj.  
is employed for clearness merely,  
it is apt to follow the modified

noun; when it precedes the noun,  
it is often best rendered as *suum*  
here.

7. *id*: *i.e.* the incident.—  
multī: cf. the note on *quīdam*,  
p. 2, l. 1.

15. *prō*: *as*.

17. *morātur*: for the force of  
the tense, see the note on *fiunt*,  
p. 7, l. 16.

## LESSON 11

*Henry Hudson*

Hoc ferē tempore Batāvī, qui volēbant viam invenīre, quā circum Eurōpam ad Asiam nāvigārī posset, parāvērunt nāvem, cui erat nōmen Lūna Dīmidia, et Hudsōnem, virum Britanniūm, ducem fēcērunt.

5 Ille prīmō circum Eurōpam nāvigāre frūstrā cōnātus, ad Americam deinde profectus est, quod ibi audiverat esse freta, quibus nāvēs in Asiam trānsīre possent. Quō ubi perventum est, multa mīlia passuum secundum lītus nāvigāvit; cumque loca multa explōrāsset, postrēmō pervēnit ad īnsulā, ubi nunc est oppidum, quod Eborācum Novum appellātur. Hic Indī subitō adortī sunt nautās, qui cum scaphīs portum explōrābant, sagittisque hominem interfēcērunt unum.

Quō factō, dux duōs Indōs rapuit nāvemque cōnscedere 15 coēgit. Tum īsulā relictā, adversō flūmine profectus est; cum autem haud longē nāvigāsset, captivī ē nāvī sē iēcērunt in aquam, et nandō ad rīpam incolumēs pervēnērunt. Interim nāvis lēniter prōgrediēbātur, moxque in cōspectū erant montēs, quōrum incolae frūmentum cōpiāsque aliās 20 nautīs libenter vēndidērunt.

1. *hōc . . . tempore*: for syntax, cf. illīs temporibus, p. 1, l. 9.

2. *nāvigārī posset*: lit. *it could be sailed*; cf. the impersonal passive *nāvigātum erat*, p. 1, l. 11.

3. *Dīmidia*: *Half* (*dīmidius, -a, -um*).

7. *quō*: cf. p. 8, l. 14.

9. *cum explōrāsset*: *having explored*. For the form of the verb, cf. *nāvigāsset*, p. 3, l. 1.

14. *quō*: *this* (noun).

15. *adversō flūmine*: cf. p. 6, l. 12.

17. *nandō*: gerund, *by swimming*; the phrase *nandō . . . pēvēnērunt* may be rendered freely “swam.”

## LESSON 12

*Henry Hudson (Continued)*

Cum inde diēs paucōs flūmine adversō nāvigātum esset, dux ipse ē nāvī in ripam ēgressus incolās convēnit, qui libenter sagittās suās frēgērunt omnīs, ut advenae intellegerent sē esse amicōs. Ibi haud diū morātus, Hudsō 5 iterum lēniter prōgressus est; sed postrēmō flūmen invēnit angustius fierī, ac sēnsit sē hāc ad Asiam pervenīre nōn posse. Itaque ad mare rediit, brevīque domum profectus est.

Paucīs post mēnsibus Batāvī nāvēs aliās et hominēs misērunt, quī cum Indīs negōtiārentur; ac posterō annō dux 10 idem, cum ā Britanniā ad Americam iterum profectus esset, mare maximum sub septentrīōnibus invēnit, quod nunc eius nōmine appellātur. Ibi mēnsēs multōs hiemāre coāctus est. Tum dēmum, cum cibus iam omnis cōnsūmptus esset, nautae scelerātī, duce in scaphā relictō, in altum vēla dedērunt.

15 Hudsōnem nēmō posteā vīdit; sed nautae, paucīs āmissīs, incolumēs domum pervēnērunt: — quamquam prīmō fame omnēs paene perierant; paucīs enim avibus exceptīs, nōn habēbant quod ēssent, dōnec in cōspectum vēnit nāvis, cuius magister eōs frūmentō aliisque rēbus iuvāre potuit.

4. *haud diū*: freely, but a short time.

6. *angustius*: predicate adj., agreeing with *flūmen*, l. 5. — *hāc*: sc. *viā*; cf. the note on *quā*, p. 5, l. 13.

9. *negōtiārentur*: cf. the note on *possent*, p. 1, l. 13.

10. *cum . . . profectus esset*: cf. p. 12, l. 9, and the note.

11. *mare*: bay. — *maximum*: mighty; absolute use of the superlative. In a similar way, com-

paratives may indicate a high degree in general, without distinctly comparing one thing with another. — *sub septentrīōnibus*: i.e. toward the north (septentrīōnēs, -um, M., the "Great Bear").

14. *altum*: the deep (sea).

15. *āmissīs*: i.e. by death.

17. *paucīs . . . exceptīs*: freely, with the exception of a few.

18. *quod ēssent*: (anything) to eat (ēssent from edō). As antecedent for the relative, supply *id* (acc.).

## LESSON 13

*Colonization in New England*

Paucis post annis Britannī complūrēs, quī apud Batāvōs diū habitāverant, in Americam cum liberis atque uxōribus ēmigrāre cōstituērunt. Qui, cum pervēnissent ad litus eius terrae, quae nunc Britannia Nova appellātur, impetum Indōrum veritī, lēgātum, nōmine Standisium, cum mīlitibus paucis misērunt, quī loca undique explorāret. Illi 5 igitur multa milia passuum secundum litus prōgressi sunt, cum nāvigārent interdiū, noctēsque autem in litore agerent.

10 Prīmō terrae incolās rārō vīdērunt; oīlm tamen, cum māne proficīsci parārent ūnusque ex mīlitibus omnium arma in scaphā iam collocāvisset, Indī subitō ē silvā magnō clāmōre ērūpērunt, sagittisque vulnerāvērunt paucōs. Sed mīlītēs statim ad scapham cucurrērunt, ut arma caperent, 15 hostēsque celeriter fugere coācti sunt.

Postrēmō ad portum tūtum pērventum est, ubi tribus ante annis multī habitāverant Indī; quī iam ad ūnum morbō perierant. Quā dē rē certiōrēs factī, colōnī reliquī quoque ad eum locum vēnērunt, ibique ē nāvi in litus ēgressī, dīs 20 ēgērunt grātiās castraque posuērunt. Est in litore etiam nunc saxum, quod Americānī semper coluērunt colentque

2. liberis atque uxōribus: sc. suis.

3. quī, cum: cf. p. 5, l. 8.

6. explorāret: note the mood.

8. cum nāvigārent: translate by a participial phrase.

10. rārō: adv., seldom.

11. omnium: used as a masc. noun, modifier of arma.

14. ut arma caperent: i.e. to arm themselves.

17. ad ūnum: utterly; cf. p. 4, l. 5.

18. quā dē rē: i.e. dē hāc rē.

19. dīs: from deus.

21. coluērunt: colō, 3, coluī, cultus, venerate.



IŪNŌ, RĒGĪNA DEŌRUM

The chief deities worshiped by the Romans were twelve in number: namely, Jupiter, Neptune, Vulcan, Mars, Mercury, Apollo, Juno, Minerva, Vesta, Ceres, Venus, and Diana. Besides these, many minor divinities were recognized.

semper, quod hīc dēmum ē nāvī ēgressī sunt Britanni illi,  
quī posteā maiōrēs peregrīnantēs appellātī sunt.

## LESSON 14

*A Soldier's Courtship*

Hieme proximā morbō aut fame colōnī complūrēs periērunt, quōrum in numerō erat Standisī quoque uxor. Ille, 5 uxōre mortuā, in mātrimōnium volēbat dūcere quandam puellam pulchram, cui erat nōmen Prissilla; sed, cum sē sentīret mīlitem asperum esse, rem ipse tractāre nōluit, iuvenemque quendam mīsit, quī puellae patrem convenīret.

Iuvenis, qui forte ipse quoque Prissillam amāre cooperat, 10 amīcō tamen deesse nōlēbat. Quārē maestus profectus est, lēniterque per litus ad puellae domum versus ambulāvit. Quō cum pervēnisset rēsque esset prōposita, pater statim sē nōn nōlle dīxit. Cum autem iuvenis cum Prissillā ipsā dē virtūte lēgātī eiusque rēbus gestīs loquerētur, illa diū 15 tacitā audīvit, tum rīdēns: “Nōnne prō tē,” inquit, “dictūrus es?” Quā vōce ille vehementer commōtus domum ad lēgātūm rediit. Qui primō amīcum verbīs acerbīs

1. *quod*: conjunction.

2. *maiōrēs*: as noun, *Fathers*.

— *peregrīnantēs*: *Pilgrim* (*peregrinor*, 1, *travel abroad*).

4. *quōrum* in *numerō*: *i.e.* among whom. — *Standisī*: filius and proper names in -ius and -ium have regularly this short form of the gen.; so also some common nouns in -ium. Accent, *Standisī*.

6. *cum*: causal conjunction; cf., however, the note on p. 14, l. 8.

10. *maestus*: cf. the rendering of *laetus*, p. 2, l. 16.

11. *domum*: *residence*; with *domum* in this meaning, the preposition cannot be omitted (as in 1. 16).

12. *quō*: cf. the note on p. 8, l. 14. — *rēs*: (*his*) errand.

13. *nōn*: with *nōlle*. — *cum Prissillā*: we would say “*to* Priscilla.”

14. *eius*: *i.e.* of *Standish*. — *rēbus gestīs*: cf. p. 4, l. 15.

15. *nōnne*: *i.e.* *nōn + ne*. — *dictūrus es*: *going to speak*; cf. *reditūrus esset*, p. 4, l. 3.

accēpit, postrēmō tamen sēnsit nōn illīus culpā rem ita cecidisse. Itaque paucis post mēnsibus ā iuvene Prissilla in mātrimōnium ducta est, Standisius autem sibi uxōrem aliam sūmpsit.

## LESSON 15

*Unrest among the Indians*

5 Indī, quī prope colōniam habitābant, paene omnēs inimici erant, sed vehementer timēbant lēgātum Standisium, dē quō suprā dīxī; nam is, dux fortissimus, libentissimē bellum semper gessit, neque umquam perīculum ūllum recūsāvit. Quī tamen nōn erat crūdēlis; oīlim enim, cum ad oppidum 10 Indōrum inimicōrum profectus esset hostēsque vīcisset, trēs Indōs vulnerātōs domum sēcum redūxit, ut eōrum vulnera ibi cūrārentur.

Hōc ferē tempore colōnī alii, ā Britanniā profectī, haud procul condidērunt oppidum alterum. Tum dēmum Indī 15 vehementer commōtī, conciliō convocātō, oppida ambō incendere colōnōsque ipsōs interficere cōnstituērunt; sed rēx, quīdam, qui colōnōs amābat, ad Standisium properāvit, eumque dē hostium cōnsiliō certiōrem fēcit. Periculō cōgnitō, lēgātus statim cum mīlitibus paucīs ad alterum oppidum 20 profectus est. Ibi Indī, cum vīdissent mīlītēs esse paucōs, arbitrātī sē facile Standisium terrēre posse, ei ostendērunt

1. illīus culpā: through (any) fault of his, i.e. of the iuvenis (culpa, -ae, f.). — rem: the affair.

8. neque umquam: and . . . never; cf. the rendering of nec quisquam, p 2, l. 11. In translation, nec (neque) should always, if possible, be resolved thus into connective and negative.

15. conciliō: contrast cōnsiliō, l. 18.

18. periculō cōgnitō: freely, having learned of the danger. A literal rendering of cōgnitus in the abl. absol. construction would often be awkward.

21. arbitrātī: cf. the use of veritī, p. 2, l. 17.

sīcās, ac verbōrum quoque contumēliās adiūnxērunt. Sed paucis post diēbus, cum quīdam Pecsuet cum lēgātō loquerētur, is, sīgnō militibus datō, Pecsuetis sīcam subitō rapuit, eāque ipsum interfēcit; simul militēs, comitēs Pecsuetis 5 adortī, eōs omnēs occidērunt. Quō factō, Indī reliquī perterriti fūgērunt, nec diūtius dē caede colōnōrum cōgitābant ullī.

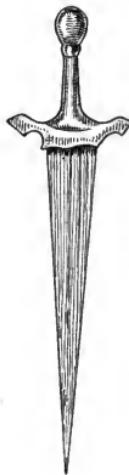
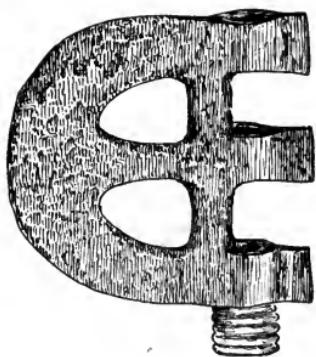
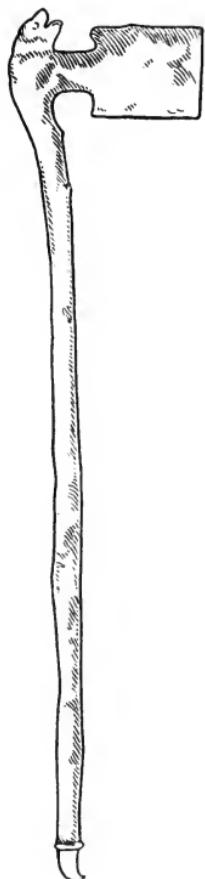
## LESSON 16

*Old Friends become Enemies*

Eī rēgī, ā quō colōnī dē suō periculō cōnsiliisque Indōrum certiōrēs factī sunt, duo erant filii, quī quoque colōnīs diū 10 amīcī erant. Patre autem mortuō, iuvenēs suspicārī coepērunt bene ēmissē colōnōs, quibus silvās Indī vēndiderant; tum novam religiōnem cīvēs suōs amplectī haud libenter vīdērunt: itaque mox dē bellō cōgitābant.

Quod ubi cōgnitum est, ē colōniā militēs missī sunt, quī 15 frātrem maiōrem, nōmine Alexandrum, prō obside in oppidum sēcum redūcerent. Ille autem ibi morbō affectus est gravī; cumque posteā domum redīset, apud suōs brevī mortuus est. Quō factō, Alexandrum venēnō periisse arbitrāti, Indī sīcās secūrēsque suās acuere statim coepērunt.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. verbōrum . . . contumēliās :<br><i>i.e. insulting words</i> ; lit. what?   | 10. patre . . . mortuō : translate by a clause introduced by "when" or "after."                    |
| —adiūnxērunt : adiungō, 3, -iūnxi,<br>-iūnctus, add.  | 11. bene ēmissē : <i>i.e. had made a good bargain</i> ; lit. what?                                 |
| 2. quīdam : <i>a certain</i> .  | 12. tum : <i>furthermore</i> . — cīvēs   |
| 3. is : <i>i.e. Standish</i> .  | suōs : subject of the infin.   |
| 4. eā : note the case.— ipsum :<br>him. The intensive pronoun<br>points a contrast between Pecsuet<br>and his companions (comitēs). | 13. cōgitābant : note the tense.   |
| 5. quō : cf. p. 12, l. 14.  | 14. quod : cf. quō, l. 5.  |
| 6. nec diūtius : <i>and no longer</i> ;<br>cf. the note on p. 17, l. 8.—caede :<br><i>a massacre</i> .                              | 17. gravī : modifying morbō.<br>— suōs : as noun, <i>his own people</i> .                          |
|   | 19. acuere : acuō, 3, acuī, acūtus, <i>sharpen</i> . This proceeding,<br>of course, portended war. |



## SECŪRĒS ET SīCA

Two ancient battle-axes are shown above, one complete, the other lacking a handle. The dagger was found in a tomb in Etruria.

Tum dēmum oppidānī alterum frātrem, quī Philippus appellābātur, ad colōniam dēdūxērunt, eumque coēgērunt arma omnia trādere, quae ipse comitēsque ferēbant; nec vērō dīmīsērunt hominem, dōnec pollicitus est sē reliqua 5 quoque arma trāditūrum, quae domī Indī habēbant.

## LESSON 17

*The Outbreak of King Philip's War*

Philippus, quī patre et frātre mortuīs iam ipse rēx erat, irātus domum profectus, Indōs ad arma vocāvit. Quī eum libenter secūtī sunt; quīn etiam oīlim quendam cīvem suum interfēcērunt, quod rēgis cōnsilia colōnīs prōdiderat.

10 Complūra iam erant colōnōrum oppida; sed Indī pīmō tantum villis admōvērunt ignīs bovēsque rapuērunt: nam, ā sacerdōtibus monitī, hominem occīdere nūllum ausī sunt, dōnec ā colōnīs ūnus ex ipsōrum numerō vulnerātus est. Tum dēmum, omnibus oppidīs oppugnātīs, caedēs maxima 15 est facta, ac colōnī miseri, alīi cum aquam peterent, alīi cum ā villīs in oppida fugerent, undique occīsī sunt.

Ōlim hostēs, cum in castellum quoddam impetum fēcis-  
sent sagittāsque ārdentēs mīssissent in tēctum, postrēmō  
ipsī quoque castellō ignem admovēre cōnātī sunt. Quā rē  
20 animadversā, colōnī, quī sē fortiter multās hōrās dēfende-

4. hominem: *the man.*13. ipsōrum: *their own.*

5. trāditūrum: sc. esse.—

15. alīi . . . alīi: *some . . .*domī: *at home;* for the case, cf.others.—cum: *as.*

humī, p. 7, l. 4.

17. hostēs, cum: *when the*8. suum: *of theirs.*

enemy. Note the changed order

12. hominem: standing in con-  
trast to villīs and bovēs of the  
preceding clause.of the English.—in: *upon.*

19. ipsī: modifying castellō.—

quā rē: *this.*

rant, omnem salūtis spem iam dēpōnēbant; sed subitō imber coortus est maximus, quō ignēs sunt extīcti. Quārē Indī cōnātū dēsistere coāctī sunt.

## LESSON 18

*A Remarkable Deliverance*

Hōc ferē tempore aliō in oppidō latēbat imperātor quīdam, 5 qui ē Britanniā paulō ante fūgerat, quod rēx Britannōrum eum volēbat interficere. Homō scilicet nōlēbat oppidānōs cōgnōscere sē ibi latēre. Sed oīlim, cum colōnī in templō adessent omnēs, tūtō sē ē latebrīs exīre posse crēdēbat; itaque ē fenestrā prōspēxit. Prīmō nēminem vīdit; tum subitō 10 animadvertisit multōs Indōs per agrōs clam properantēs, ut oppidum oppugnārent.

Quibus ille rēbus vehementer commōtus, ex aedibus statim ērūpit ac colōnōs ad arma vocāvit. Qui cum celeriter ē templō cucurrisserint, advenā duce cum Indīs fortiter 15 pugnāvērunt, hostēsque postrēmō in silvās fugere coāctī sunt.

Imperātor interim, postquam Indōs fugere intellēxit, ad latebrās statim sē recēpit, nec posteā ā colōnīs invenīrī potuit. Qui igitur crēdidērunt ducem ē caelō ā dīs missum 20 esse, qui sē adiuvāret, sicut multis ante annis Castor et Pollūx oīlim subitō adfuērunt in aciē auxiliumque Rōmānīs

1. dēpōnēbant: note the tense.  
— imber (-bris, m.): shower.

3. cōnātū dēsistere: give up  
(lit. desist from) the attempt.

6. homō: cf. hominem, p. 20,  
l. 4.

12. quibus . . . rēbus: transl.  
as singular (cf. quā rē, p. 20, l. 19).

13. cum . . . cucurrisserint: cf.  
the note on p. 14, l. 8.

14. advenā duce: abl. absol.,  
lit. the stranger (being) leader;  
transl. freely.

18. invenīrī: note the last letter  
of the word.—potuit: for the transla-  
tion, cf. the note on possent,  
p. 1, l. 13.

19. quī: cf. the rendering of  
quī in the note on p. 5, l. 3.—  
ducem: a leader.

tulērunt, cum illī hōrās multās pugnāssent cum hostibus, neque eōs in fugam dare potuissent.

## LESSON 19

*Philip finds Allies*

Dum haec geruntur, Indī quidam longinqui, quibus erat castellum maximum, armis aliisque rēbus Philippum iuvāre coepērunt. Quō cōgnitō, colōnī, quamquam iam hiems erat, id castellum statim oppugnāre cōstituērunt; nam putābant hanc quoque gentem prīmā aestāte bellum gerere parāre, cōnsiliaque hostium ipsi praeoccupāre volēbant.

Itaque viā nivālī cum exercitū validō profecti, per silvās ad castellum iter fēcērunt. Ibi ācerrimē est pugnātū, ac colōnī multī interfectī sunt; castellum tamen expugnātū est, Indōrumque cōpiae omnēs ignī sunt cōnsūmptaē: quibus rēbus factis, colōnī vulnerātōs sēcum ferentēs domum lēniter sē recēpērunt.

Hōc dētrīmentō vehementer commōtī, Indī iam undique convēnērunt, oppidaque colōnōrum oppugnārē coepērunt singula. Subitō veniēbant in cōspectum; tum, colōnis occīsīs vīllīsque incēnsīs, celeriter in silvās sē recipiēbant, cum interim militēs, quī arma graviōra ferēbant, nūllō modō cōsequī poterant. Itaque diū colōnī miserī undique

3. dum, etc.: cf. p. 7, l. 16.

5. quō: neuter.—cōgnitō: cf. the note on p. 17, l. 18.

7. prīmā: *the early*, lit. *the first (part of)*.

8. ipsī: may be omitted in translation.

9. viā: for syntax, cf. quā, p. 5, l. 13.—nivālī: *nivālis*, -is, -e, *snowy*.

10. ācerrimē est pugnātū: freely, *a desperate battle was fought*; lit. what?

13. vulnerātōs: as noun, *the wounded*.—ferentēs: nom. case.

17. singula: modifying *oppida*.—veniēbant: for the translation, cf. the note on *rapiēbant*, p. 7, l. 17.

19. cum: *while*.

20. cōsequī: sc. eōs (*i.e.* Indōs).

interfecti sunt; Standisius enim iam pridem mortuus erat: sed postremo dux alius inventus est, qui feliciter cum Indis bellum gerere sciēbat.

## LESSON 20

*Captain Church*

Cercās, qui iam dux colōnōrum factus est, nōn modo cum hostibus feliciter bellum gerere sciēbat, sed etiam Indōs interdum sociōs sibi ascīscere potuit. Quō cōnsiliō oīlī profectus, ad quandam gentem pervēnit haud longinquam, cuius rēgīnae diū fuerat ipse amīcus; quārē spērābat eius cīvibus facile sē persuādēre posse, ut colōnōs adiuvārent. Ibi tamen ab Indīs impetus acerrimus in Cercam eiusque comitēs facta est; qui igitur in palūde coācti sunt latēre, dōnec in scaphā vēnērunt mīlitēs complūrēs, qui eōs ex periculō ēriperent.

Cercās, quamquam cōnsilium tūm perficere nōn potuerat, convenire tamen rēgīnam iterum cōnārī cōnstituit. Itaque paucīs post mēnsibus ūnō cum mīlite Indisque tribus profectus, in eiusdem gentis fīnēs dēnuō iter fēcit; quō ubi est pērventum, comitibus in scaphā relictīs, ad rēgīnam ipse prōgressus est. Cum eā dum loquitur, Indī multī, qui per

3. gerere: cf. the use of the infin. with *nesciēbat*, p. 8, l. 2.

4. Cercās: gen. Cercae, etc. — modo: the adv., *only*.

5. etiam: *also*.

6. sociōs: (*as*) allies. — cōnsiliō: *design*.

8. rēgīnae: dat. case. — ipse: he. — eius: *i.e.* the queen's.

9. persuādēre: *persuade*, lit. make (*it*) agreeable (hence the dat.

cīvibus). — posse: replacing the fut. infin., which is lacking in this verb.

14. Cercās, quamquam: cf. the note on *hostēs*, *cum*, p. 20, l. 17.

15. convenire: dependent on cōnārī.

17. dēnuō: *i.e.* iterum. — quō: cf. p. 8, l. 14.

19. cum: preposition. — per: around in.

herbam latuerant, subitō armātī exsiluērunt. Quī tamen, cum intellēxissent Cercam minimē esse territum, humī tum sēdērunt conciliōque habitō polliciti sunt sē colōnōs adiūtūrōs in bellō, quod illī cum Philippō gerēbant.

## LESSON 21

*The Death of Philip*

5 Cercās cum his sociis suīsque mīlitibus iam omnēs in partis iter fēcit per silvās, et undique hōstes in fugam dedit. Quārē postrēmō Philippus ipse paucis cum comitibus per vallis multa mīlia passuum in palūdēs longinquās fugere coāctus est; numquam enim colōnīs sē dēdere cōnstituerat: quīn etiam ōlim, cum quīdam ex eius amīcis dicere ausus esset pācem cum eīs faciendam esse, rēx īrātus hominem suā manū occīdit. Cuius reī acerbitatē comōtus, frāter mortuī statim ad colōnōs perfūgit eōsque certiōrēs fēcit dē palūde, ubi Philippus tum latēbat.

15 Itaque dux colōnōrum, quī multōs diēs frūstrā quaesiverat rēgem modoque domum redierat ut uxōrem cōnsolārētur, iterum celeriter profectus est, mīlitesque suōs prope illam palūdem sine morā īstrūxit. Quā rē animadversā, Philippus eiusque comitēs per vallēs longius fugere cōnātī sunt; 20 rēx vērō infēlix, interceptus ā militibus quī in silvā collocāti

1. quī tamen, cum: *but when . . . they*; cf. quī, cum, p. 8, l. 13.

2. humī: cf. p. 7, l. 4. — tum: may be omitted in translation.

5. suīs: *his own*; cf. suum, p. 11, l. 6, and the note.

10. quīdam: *a certain one*.

12. hominem: cf. p. 20, l. 4. — suā: cf. suīs, l. 5. — reī: for

the various meanings of rēs, see the Vocab.—acerbitatē: acerbitās, -ātis, f., *harshness*.

13. mortuī: *of the dead (man)*; part., used as a noun, masc. sing.

16. modo: *(but) just*.

18. quā rē: cf. p. 20, l. 19.

20. vērō: *i.e. tamen*. — infēlix (-īcīs, adj.): *ill-starred*.

erant, ā frātre eiusdem Indī interfectus est, quem ipse occīderat. Caput Philippi secūrī abscīsum colōnī sēcum domum tulērunt; ubi suprā portam positum est, ut omnēs vidērent rēgēm rē vērā mortuum esse.

## LESSON 22

*End of the War*

5 Quō dētrīmentō perterritus lēgātus Philippī, quī paucis cum comitibus ē palūde effūgerat, in silvīs procul latēbat. Quem Cercās diū frūstrā quaesivit; sed postrēmō Indum senem cēpit et puellam, quōs viam ostendere coēgit: quō modō in lēgātī castra subitō perventum est.

10 Ibi Cercās, quamquam comitēs perpaucōs sēcum habēbat, arma Indōrum, quae humī collocāta erant, audācter rapuit. Quō factō, lēgātus magnā vōce: "Captus sum," inquit. Cercās vērō: "Ubi est cēna? nam vēnī ut vobīscum cēnārem." Tum lēgātus: "Equīnam carnem māvīs," inquit, 15 "an būbulam?" Quō auditō, Cercās scilicet dixit sē mālle būbulam.

Carne sine morā cōnsūmptā, reliquī (noctū enim impetus factus erat) mox humī iacēbant sōpitī; sed Cercās et lēgātus diū vigilābant. Postrēmō Indus surrēxit et silentiō ēgres-

2. abscīsum: agreeing with caput.

12. magnā: *i.e. loud.*

13. Cercās vērō: sc. inquit.

3. suprā: preposition, *over*.  
4. rē vērā: *in very fact* (*vērus, -a, -um*, lit. *true, or actual*).

14. equīnam: *equinus, -a, -um, (of) horse.*—māvīs: what form of mālō?

5. lēgātus: *lieutenant.*  
7. quem: *him.*  
8. senem: *aged* (from *senex*).  
10. perpaucōs: the prefix per- is intensive.

15. an: conjunction, *or.*—būbulam: *būbulus, -a, -um, (of) cow.*

19. Indus: *the Indian.*—silentiō: *abl.*, used as adv.

sus est; quārē alter crēdēbat eum exīsse ut arma alia sū-  
meret. Brevī autem aderat lēgātus manibus ferēns insīgnia  
quae quondam Philippus gesserat. "Haec nunc tua sunt,"  
inquit, insīgniaque ante Cercae pedēs humī posuit. Ita  
5 bellum cōfectum est.

## LESSON 23

*William Penn and the Friends*

Dum haec in Britanniā Novā geruntur, in aliās Americae partēs ex Eurōpā veniēbant colōnī multi; in quibus erant complūrēs, quī sē Amīcōs appellābant. Cuidam virō clārō, quī hanc religiōnem erat amplexus, rēx Britannōrum tum 10 magnam pecūniā dēbēbat; quod aes aliēnum ut solveret, in Americā prōvinciam novam hōc ferē tempore cōnstituit, virumque illum lēgātūm fēcit; quae prōvincia ē nōmine lē-  
gātī Pennsylvēnia appellāta est.

Lēgātus, quod religiō Amīcōrum gentibus Eurōpae grāta 15 nōn erat, colōnōs plūrimōs statim ad Pennsylvēniām p̄aemīsit, paucisque post mēnsibus in prōvinciam ipse profectus est; ubi urbem condidit, quae Philadelphia appellātur. Propter religiōnem Amīcī crēdunt bellum gerere nefās esse, atque omnibus cum hominibus cōmiter vivere volunt; itaque

- 1. *alter*: *the other* (*i.e.* Church). — *dēbēbat*: *dēbeō*, 2, -uī, -itus, *owe*. — *quod*: *this* (*adj.*). — *ut*: the acc. preceding belongs to this purpose clause:
- 2. *aderat*: *was back (again)*.
- *manibus*: for syntax, cf. *nāvibus*, p. 6, l. 10. — *insīgnia*: *trappings (insigne, -is, N.)*.
- 3. *gesserat*: *had worn*. — *tua*: *tuus, -a, -um, yours*.
- 6. *dum haec*, etc.: cf. p. 7, l. 16.
- 7. *veniēbant*: note the tense.
- *in*: *among*.
- 10. *magnam*: (*a*) *large (sum*
- 11. *cōnstituit*: *established*.
- 12. *lēgātūm*: *governor*. — *ē*: freely, *after*.
- 14. *grāta*: freely, *popular (with)*; lit. what?
- 17. *ubi*: *there*.
- 18. *nefās esse*: *that it is a crime (nefās, indeclinable noun)*.

per multōs annōs continuōs in prōvinciā erat pāx, etiam cum lēgātus ille mortuus esset.

Dē cōmitāte lēgātī multa nārrantur; quīn etiam trāditum est illum, cum ōlim per prōvinciam iter faceret, parvam 5 puellam vīdisse ad templum euntem, eamque in ipsius equō positam ad templum ita dēdūxisse.

## LESSON 24

### *Nathaniel Bacon in Virginia*

Dum in Britanniā Novā bellum gerit Philippus, in Virginiā quoque Indī impetūs saepe in colōnōs faciēbant, multosque agricolās, quī procul ab oppidis habitābant, cum 10 cruciātū occidērunt. Quō periculō commōti, colōnī multa mīlia passuum nūntiōs ad caput prōvinciae mīsērunt, quī lēgātum ūrārent, ut mitteret mīlītēs, quī hostīs coercērent. Lēgātō autem nūllō modō persuādērī potuit ut colōnōs adiuvāret, quod cum Indīs ipse negōtiābātur nec quaestum 15 dīmittere volēbat; quīn etiam iuvenis quīdam, nōmine Bēcō, quī ā Britanniā tribus ante annīs in prōvinciam vēnerat, cum dīxisset sē velle in Indōrum finīs dūcere colōnōs pau- cōs, quī iam ipsī arma cēperant, ā lēgātō domī est iussus manēre.

20 Iuvenis autem, sine morā ad castra colōnōrum clam pro-

1. *per*: freely, *for*. — *continuōs*: continuus, -a, -um, consecutive. — *cum*: after.

3. *multa*: cf. p. 5, l. 9.—*trāditum est*: cf. p. 11, l. 4.

5. *euntem*: from *eō*. — *eam*: her. — *ipsius*: his own.

6. *positam*: part. (from *pōnō*), agreeing with *eam*.

11. *caput*: capital.

13. *persuādērī potuit*: lit. could it be made agreeable; cf. *persuādērē*, p. 23, l. 9.

15. *volēbat*: cf. *velle*, p. 2, l. 15.

17. *cum*: translate much earlier in the English sentence.

18. *ipsī*: on their own motion, i.e. without waiting for the governor to act.

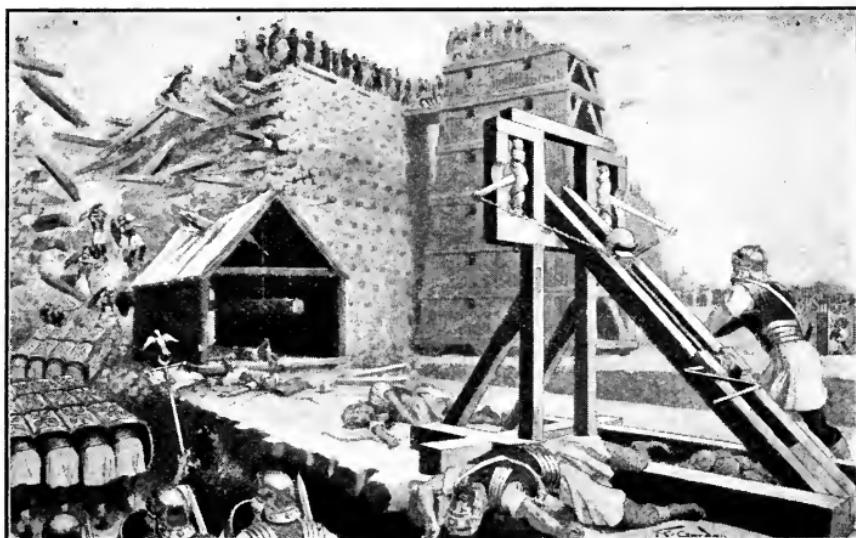
fectus, cum primum in eorum cōspectum vēnit summō assēnsū omnium dux factus est. Quī igitur, quamquam sciēbat lēgātum posteā īrātum sē fortasse interfectūrum, in finīs tamen Indōrum cōpiās dūxit, hostēsque in fugam 5 undique dedit. Quod ubi est auditum, lēgātus ex oppidō celeriter profectus est, ut Bēcōnem caperet suppliciumque dē eō sūmeret, quod iniussū suō bellum cum Indīs gereret.

## LESSON 25

*Nathaniel Bacon (Continued)*

Brevī autem ad caput prōvinciae lēgātus celeriter redīre est coāctus; nūntiātum enim est oppidānōs, quōs domī re-  
liquerat quīque iuvenī ducī amicissimī erant, rēs novās ibi  
agitāre. Quibuscum lēgātus tum pācem fēcit; postquam  
vērō Bēcō dēmum ē bellō longinquō domum rediit, colōni,  
lēgātum adhūc esse īrātum arbitrātī, noctēs diēsque ducis  
cāri aedēs custōdiēbant; eumque, cum paulō post decuriō  
15 factus esset, multī comitēs armāti ad oppidum secūtī sunt.  
Ibi tamen lēgātus, qui quoque cōpiās coēgerat, Bēcōnem  
statim rapuit, mox autem ab oppidānīs īrātis dīmittere co-  
āctus est. Sed iuvenis, paucīs post diēbus certior factus

- 1. *cum primum*: *i.e. as soon as.*
- 2. *omnium*: as (masc.) noun, modifying *assēnsū*. — *quī*: cf. p. 5, l. 3.
- 3. *īrātum*: *in (his) anger.* — *fortasse*: adv., *perhaps.* — *interfēctūrum*: sc. *esse.*
- 4. *cōpiās*: *(his) troops.*
- 5. *quod*: *this* (noun).
- 6. *supplicium*: *supplicium, -ī, punishment.*
- 7. *dē*: lit. *from.* *supplicium sūmere* is the converse of *poenās dare.*
- 10. *iuvenī*: here as adjective.—*rēs novās*: *revolution*; lit. what?
- 11. *agitāre*: *agitō, I, plan.* — *quibuscum*: cf. *sēcum*, p. 8, l. 14.
- 13. *arbitrātī*: cf. the use of *veritiō*, p. 2, l. 17.—*noctēs diēsque*: *night and day.*
- 14. *decuriō (-ōnis, M.)*: *member of the legislature.*
- 16. *coēgerat*: *had called together.*



BALLISTA

Ancient "artillery" was not very formidable, as may be seen from the above illustration, which gives a modern artist's conception of an attack upon a walled town. Roman "cannon" were simply huge catapults, some of which threw stones or masses of metal, others projected heavy darts.

lēgātum parāre sē iterum in custōdiam dare, clam noctū fūgit ex oppidō, nec posterō diē ab inimicīs suīs invenīrī potuit.

Colōnī scilicet undique libenter convēnērunt, ut ducem cārum adiuvārent; isque iam mēnsēs multōs, modo cum 5 Indīs modo cum lēgātō, fēlīciter bellum gessit. Olim, cum obsidēret urbem, quod erat caput prōvinciae, ballistāsque circum mūrōs collocāre vellet, uxōres inimicōrum ē praediīs proximīs dēductas ante mīlitēs suōs posuisse dicitur, ut sine periculō suōrum opus perficerētur.

## LESSON 26

### *Nathaniel Bacon (Concluded)*

10 Lēgātus, cum eā in urbe multōs diēs obsessus esset, postrēmō cum comitibus omnibus nāvis cōncendit, quae in flūmine propinquō ad ancoram cōsistēbant, ac sine morā profectus est, ut auxilium peteret. Quō factō, Bēcō, qui sentiēbat lēgātum mox cum sociīs esse reditūrum, urbem statim incendit; ipse autem, labōribus periculīsque frāctus, paulō post mortuus est.

Tum eius comitēs, cum intellegerent lēgātum solēre inimicōs etiam mortuōs contumēliis afficere, corpus ducis cāri tulērunt ad flūmen et in aquam mersērunt; quārē lēgātus, 20 cum redīsset ad urbem amicōsque Bēcōnis multōs interfēcisset, ipsius iuvenis corpus invenīre nōn potuit.

2. *invenīrī*: note the last letter of the word.

4. *modo . . . modo*: at one time . . . at another.

6. *quod*: relative, agreeing with the predicate noun.

8. *dīcitur*: cf. p. 5, l. 17, note.

9. *suōrum*: to (lit. of) his men.

10. *lēgātus*, cum: cf. *hostēs*, cum, p. 20, l. 17.

17. *cum intellegerent*: cf. the note on p. 14, l. 8.—*solēre*: cf. *solēbant*, p. 7, l. 4.

18. *mortuōs*: (when) dead.

19. *mersērunt*: *mergō*, 3, *mersī*, *mersus*, bury, lit. sink.

20. *multōs*: many (of).

Paucis post annis ille lēgātus pessimus quoque poenās dedit; nam ā rēge domum revocātus, summā ignōminīā affectus ibi mortuus est. Interim Virginia reliquaeque prōvinciae paulatim validiōrēs fīebant. Sed antequam dē 5 bellō loquor, quod posteā ā colōnīs cum Britannīs gestum est, quaedam dīcenda sunt de puerō, qui imperātor summus Americanōrum futūrus erat.

## LESSON 27

*The Boyhood of George Washington*

Hic puer, qui Vasingtō appellābātur, in Virginīā nātus est sexāgintā ferē annis post bellum, quod cum lēgātō eius 10 prōvinciae gesserat Bēcō ille, dē quō modo dixi. Puerō erat frāter maior, qui tribūnus mīlitum factus ad bellum abierat, quod Britannī cum Hispānīs tum gerēbant eīs in īnsulīs, ad quās Columbus prīmū nāvēs appulit.

Vasingtō, postquam frāter ad exercitū profectus est, dē 15 bellō saepe cōgitābat; cumque lūdēbant puerī ac simulābant sē esse mīlītēs, semper erat ille imperātor. Posteā vērō, puer magnus et validus factus, celerrimē dīcitur currere potuisse neque equum timuisse ullum.

Frāter iam volēbat Vasingtōnem nautam fierī, māter 20 autem nōluit; itaque ille domī aliquamdiū mānsit et didicit omnia, quae ibi in lūdō trādēbantur. Sed paucis post an-

4. fīebant: note the tense.
6. quaedam: (neut. pl.) *something*.
7. futūrus erat: *was destined to be*; cf. p. 4, l. 3, and p. 16, l. 15.
8. nātus est: cf. p. 1, l. 1.
9. post: here preposition.

16. imperātor: pred. nom.
17. vērō: *moreover*.—et: omit in translation.—factus: render by a clause introduced by “when.”—dīcitur: cf. p. 30, l. 8.
21. omnia: *everything*.—lūdō: lūdus, -ī, M., *school*.—trādēbantur: i.e. *was taught*; lit. what?

nīs vir quidam, cui erat maximum praedium longinquum, hominem condūcere voluit, qui terminos praediī suī cōstiueret; ac Vasingtō, qui hanc quoque artem didicerat, ab eō conductus in praedium missus est.

## LESSON 28

*Experiences on the Frontier*

5 In praediō, quod īstar prōvinciae erat, habitābant agricolae paucī, at multī Indī. Hīc Vasingtō mēnsēs multōs per silvās et montēs longē iter fēcit, ac saepe equō vectus rīvōs et flūmina trānsiit; noctū autem solēbat sub caelō prope ignem humī iacēre, quod casās colōnōrum nōn amā-  
io bat. Olim cum ita sōpītus iacēret, subitō ignis in foenum cecidit, ex quō lectus eius factus erat; quō ex periculō ipse tamen servātus est ab agricolā quōdam, qui tum vigilābat.

Trēs annōs in praediō morātus est Vasingtō, ibique mōrēs Indōrum cōgnōscere coepit; quārē, ubi domum ūndēvīgintī 15 annōs nātus rediit, ā lēgātō Virginiae tribūnus militum factus est: nam Virginīa tōtā reliquīsque prōvinciīs colōni arbitrābantur bellum cum Gallīs mox gerendum esse. Britannī enim multī iam trānsierant montēs cōnsēderantque in vallibus, quae a Gallīs prius explōrātae erant; quibus rēbus

2. terminos: terminus, -ī, M., boundary.

3. hanc . . . artem: i.e. of surveying.

6. hīc: the adverb.

8. autem: moreover.

9. humī: cf. p. 7, l. 4 — amā-  
bat: fancy; for other meanings of  
this word, see the Vocab.

10. foenum: foenum, -ī, N., straw.

11. ex quō: (*out*) of which. —  
quō ex periculō: for word order,  
cf. eā in terrā, p. 6, l. 3.

14. ūndēvīgintī annōs nātus:  
at nineteen years of age, lit. having  
been born nineteen years.

15. tribūnus militum: a major.

16. Virginīa tōtā: throughout  
all Virginia. The prep. in is often  
omitted when the abl. is modified  
by tōtus.

Gallī commōtī, cum hanc regiōnem dīmittere nōllent, ca-stella complūra ibi pōnēbant, quae Britannōs arcērent.

## LESSON 29

*A Dangerous Mission*

Quamquam spēs pācis iam paene sublāta erat, lēgātus Virginiae cōnstituit tamen nūntium mittere, sī ūllō modō rēs sine bellō compōnī possent. Itaque Vasingtō, sine morā dēlēctus quī hanc rem difficilem tractāret, paucis cum comitibus per silvās fortīter profectus est; cumque montēs quoque trānsisset, Indis quibusdam ad concilium vocātis persuāsit ut ad Gallōrum castra sē sequerentur.

10 Quō ubi perventum est, Gallī nūntium cōmiter accēpērunt, respondērunt tamen sē numquam nisi bellō coāctōs ex illīs fīnibus discessūrōs. Quārē Vasingtō, quī Gallōrum cōpiās maximās summā sollicitūdine animadverterat, domum statim properāre coepit; cum vērō ad montēs per-15 ventum esset, impedimentis relictis, ūnō cum comite et duce Indō etiam celerius prōgressus est.

Via scilicet erat ipsa perīculōsa (nam hiems iam erat): alterum autem fuit perīculum maius; colōnīs enim inimīcus erat dux. Quī oīlim, cum advesperāsceret, tēlum subitō

1. *cum . . . nōllent*: translate by a participial phrase.

2. *pōnēbant*: note the tense.—arcērent: note the mood.

4. *sī*: (*if*) *perchance*.

5. *compōnī*: *compōnō*, 3, -*posui*, -*positus*, *settle*.

6. *tractāret*: note the mood.

8. *Indis*: cf. the note on *persuādere*, p. 23, l. 9.—*vocātis*: modifier of *Indis*.

11. *nisi*: introducing the part. coāctōs.

13. *cōpiās*: *stores*, or *supplies*.—*sollicitūdine*: *sollicitūdō*, -inis, F., *anxiety*.

14. *vērō*: *and*.

16. *duce*: *guide*.

18. *alterum*: *another*; contrast the commoner meaning of *alter* on p. 34, l. 1.—*colōnīs*: construe with *inimīcus*.

in Vasingtōnem misit. Quō factō, colōnus alter Indum interficere volēbat. At Vasingtō, quī tēlō vulnerātus nōn erat, hominem discēdere incolumem passus est; iam autem nōn sōlum interdiū sed noctū quoque iter faciendum 5 arbitrābātur, quod perīculum sentiēbat maximum esse.

## LESSON 30

*A Dangerous Mission (Continued)*

Paulō post ad flūmen magnum perventum est; quod cum rate trānsirent, Vasingtō forte in aquam frīgidam cecidit, ūnāque cum comite in īsulā parvā morārī coāctus est, dōnec diēs postera illūxit: tum dēmum per glaciem, 10 quae in flūmine natābat, summō cum perīculō ad rīpam alteram ambō vēnērunt. Deinde, equō ab Indīs emptō, facilius fēcērunt iter, et postrēmō incolumēs domum pervaērunt. Ubi lēgātus, cum dē pertināciā Gallōrum certior factus esset, molestē ferēns illōs tam audācter respondisse, 15 Vasingtōnem iussit mīlitēs trāns montēs dūcere ad castella eisdem in locīs pōnenda, ē quibus ipse modo redierat.

Interim colōnī aliī, ē prōvinciā clam per montēs profectī, in illīs regiōnibus longinquīs locum quendam, castris maximē idōneum, audācter occupāvērunt. Qui vērō brevī 20 à Gallis sē dēdere coāctī sunt; nam Vasingtō, quamquam iam cōgēbat cōpiās atque intellegēbat omnia sibi esse facienda

1. *in: at.*7. *rate: ratis, -is, F., raft;*  
for syntax, cf. nāvibus, p. 6, l. 10.10. *in: upon the surface of.—*  
*natābat: cf. natantēs, p. 3, l. 15.*11. *ab: from.*12. *facilius: i.e. more com-*  
*fortably.*13. *ubi: cf. ubi, p. 4, l. 14.*14. *illōs . . . respondisse: that*  
*they had replied.*15. *ad castella . . . pōnenda:*  
*to establish forts.*16. *quibus: the antecedent is*  
*locīs.*21. *sibi: dat. case, this being*  
*the regular agency construction*  
*with the gerundive. The whole*

ut hīc locus dēfenderētur, cīvibus tamen suis satis mātūrē auxilium ferre nōn potuit.

## LESSON 31

*The Beginning of the French and Indian War*

At paucīs post diēbus, per loca aspera summō labōre prōgressus, in hostium finēs pervēnit Vasingtō, castraque ibi parva posuit. Deinde paulō longius profectus explōrātōrēs cēpit paucōs; tum autem certior factus Gallōs Indōsque adesse plūrimōs, iterum sē in castra recēpit. Quō factō Galli, cum sociīs Indis celeriter cōsecūti, in castra impetum fēcērunt acerrimum; sed postrēmō, colōnīs multās hōrās frūstrā oppugnātīs, ē castrīs Vasingtōnem cum armīs eā condicōne exīre passī sunt, ut exercitum ex hīs finib⁹ statim redūceret. Ille igitur invitus domum iter facere coāctus est.

Posterō autem annō ē Britanniā legiōnēs complūrēs missae sunt ad Gallōs expellendōs ex eīs locīs, unde illī modo Vasingtōnem discēdere coēgerant. Imperātor factus erat vir Britannicus, nōmine Braddoc, dux fortis, qui tamen cum Indis bellum gerere nesciēbat. Crēdēbat vērō sē omnia scīre, neque ā Vasingtōne aut reliquīs colōnīs sē monērī volēbat; quārē, cum ad bellum profectus esset, quamquam multa milia passuum per viās perīculōsās silvāsque maximās iter legiōnibus erat faciendum, explōrātōrēs praemittere

phrase may be rendered freely  
*that he must exert himself to the utmost for the defense, etc.*

14. **ad Gallōs expellendōs**: purpose clause; cf. the similar phrase on p. 34, l. 15.

17. **gerere**: cf. the infinitive with **nesciēbat**, p. 8, l. 2.—**sē**: omit in translation.—**omnia**: all (about the subject).

21. **legiōnibus**: for syntax, cf. **sibi**, p. 34, l. 21.

1. **suīs**: modifier of **cīvibus**.

8. **Indīs**: here as adj.

10. **eā condicōne . . . ut**: on these terms, that.

12. **invitus**: cf. the note on **laetus**, p. 2, l. 16.

nōluit, nec grātiās colōnīs ēgit, quī operam suam ultrō pollicitī sunt: nam nē cōnspectum quidem legiōnum suārum putābat Indōs esse lātūrōs.

## LESSON 32

*Braddock's Defeat*

Postrēmō vērō, cum in finēs hostium longē iter factum esset, subitō in silvīs Indōrum ululātus est audītus; tum tēla plūrima inmissa sunt, ac mīlitēs Britannicī, quī hostem nūllum vidēbant, undique cadere coepērunt. Colōni interim in silvam celeriter inrūpērunt, arboribusque interpositīs cum Indīs āriter pugnābant; at imperātor legiōnēs in viā habēbat instrūctās, nec suōs locō cēdere passus est, quamquam caedem maximam fierī sentiēbat. Itaque illi paene omnēs aut interfectī sunt aut vulnerātī, ac Braddoc ipse vulnus accēpit, ex quō paulō post mortuus est. Vasingtō mīlitēs perterritōs prīmō cohortārī cōnātus, imperātōre vulnerātō exercitūs reliquiās ad caśtra redūxit, ubi impedimenta maxima relicta erant. Ibi, conciliō convocātō, tribūnī centuriōnēsque celeriter ē fīnibus hostium sibi discedendum esse statuērunt.

Quō proeliō admoneor ut dīcam dē incommodō maximō, quod ā Rōmānīs acceptum est apud lacum Trasumennum,

7. vidēbant: we would say  
“could see.”

8. arboribus . . . interpositīs: freely, getting behind trees; lit. what?

10. habēbat: kept.—suōs: cf. suōrum, page 30, l. 9.—locō: from their places; cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

12. aut . . . aut: either . . . or.

14. imperātōre vulnerātō: translate by a phrase introduced by “after.”

17. discēdendum esse: impersonal use of the gerundive.

19. ut: to.

20. apud: at.—lacum Trasumennum: in north central Italy.

cum Hannibal, dux Poenōrum, ibi īnsidiās clam fēcisset. Secundum lītus est via angusta, tum agrī apertī. In locō apertō Hannibal castra posuit, mīlēs autem multōs in latebrīs prope viam collocāvit. Tum, cum Rōmānī temerē 5 viā angustā ad Hannibalis castra versus iter facerent, subitō Poenī ē latebrīs ērūpērunt et hostīs perterritōs in lacum compulērunt.

## LESSON 33

*Later Events of the War*

Etsi in proeliō, dē quō suprā dīxī, Gallī victōriam erant adeptī Britannīque ex illīs regiōnibus celerrimē sē recēperant, Vasingtōnis tamen virtūtem omnēs laudābant. Quem 10 igitur colōnī, cōpiīs tōtā ex prōvinciā coāctīs, summum fēcērunt ducem et in montēs cum exercitū ad hostīs arcēdōs mīsērunt; ubi bellum cum Gallīs eōrumque sociīs mēn-sēs multōs fēlīciter gessit: tribusque post annīs, cum iam 15 imperātōrēs complūrēs ē Britanniā ad Americam missī essent, ūnā cum lēgātīs aliīs legiōnēs quāsdam ille ē Penn-sylvēniā trāns montēs dūxit atque hostēs ex eīs locīs discēdere coēgit, ubi illī quondam Britannīs tantum dētrīmentum intulerant.

20 Quō incommodō acceptō, Gallī tamen minimē animō dēmissī bellum alibi āriter gessērunt; nam Indī, quī erant paene omnēs amīcī, eōs omnibus modīs adiuvābant. Sed

2. in locō apertō: freely, *in the open*; lit. what?

5. viā angustā: for syntax, cf. the note on *quā*, p. 5, l. 13; here the abl. may be rendered "along."

8. erant adeptī: adipiscor, 3, *adēptus sum*, gain, or secure.

10. quem: not relative in the English translation.

18. Britannīs: dat. case; translate "upon."

20. animō dēmissī: lit. *cast down in mind*, i.e. *discouraged*. The abl. case here expresses specification.

postrēmō, multīs dētrimentīs frāctī, pācem petiērunt; quam mox adeptī sunt, Canadā aliisque regiōnibus Britannīs trāditīs.

Vasingtō interim ab exercitū domum redierat, ubi in mā-  
5 trimōnium dūxit mātrōnam quandam, quae Marta appellā-  
bātur; tum annōs paucōs in praediō suō mānsit ōtiōsus.

## LESSON 34

### *The Outbreak of the Revolution*

Nunc mihi dīcendum est dē bellō, quod colōnī paucīs post annīs cum Britannīs ipsīs gessērunt. Diū rēx senātusque Britannōrum ā prōvinciīs vectīgālia quaedam exigere  
10 erant cōnāti, etsī hae lēgēs lātae erant in conciliō, in quō suffrāgium ferre Americānō nūlli licēbat. Id colōnī molestē ferēbant; ac postrēmō, cum iam tanta iniūria nōn diūtius ferenda vidērētur, omnibus ex prōvinciīs in ūnum locum virī dēlēctī, in eīs Vasingtō, ad cōnsilium commūne capiendum  
15 convocātī sunt. Hī, conciliō habitō, litterās ad rēgem Britannōrum mīsērunt, quibus postulābant ut colōnīs iūra eadem concēderentur, quae domī cīvēs reliquī obtinēbant. Quibus litterīs acceptīs, rēx irātus nōn sōlum iūra concēdere

1. petiērunt: *i.e.* petivērunt.

—quam: *this* (noun).

2. adeptī sunt: cf. the note on p. 37, l. 8.—Britannīs: dat. case.

6. ōtiōsus: translate by another part of speech.

9. vectīgālia: vectīgālia, -ium, N., taxes.

10. lēgēs: lēx, lēgis, F., measure, or law.

11. suffrāgium ferre: cast a vote (suffrāgium, -ī, N.).—id: *this (state of affairs)*.

13. ferenda: bearable; lit. what?

—in ūnum locum: with convocātī sunt, l. 15.

14. in eīs: cf. in, p. 26, l. 7.

—cōnsilium . . . conciliō: contrast the meaning of the two words.

15. litterās: for the force of the plural, see the Vocab.

16. quibus: in which; strictly, abl. of means.

17. obtinēbant: freely, enjoyed.

nōluit, sed etiam in Americam mīsit mīlitēs multōs, quī ā colōnīs audāciae poenās repeterent.

Apud oppidum parvum, nōmine Lexingtonem, prīmū pugnātūm est, magnā cum caede Britannōrum; nam agri-  
colae, murīs interpositīs, tēla plūrima inmīserunt in hostēs,  
quī ita sex mīlia passuum sē recipere coāctī sunt ad urbēm,  
unde paulō ante profectī erant. Quibus rēbus factīs, con-  
ciliū idem, quod ad rēgem litterās mīserat, quaerere coepit  
imperātōrem, quī omnīs cōpiās Americānās dūceret. Cī-  
vēs scilicet memoriā tenēbant rēs gestās Vasingtōnis in  
bellō, quod paucīs ante annīs cum Gallis Indīsque gestum  
erat; quārē ille summō assēnsū omnium dux brevī factus  
est.

## LESSON 35

### *Operations about Boston*

Sed antequam Vasingtō in Britanniam Novam pervenire  
potuit, iterum āriter pugnātūm est in quōdam colle, ubi  
posteā Americānī columnam maximam eōrum nōmine  
statuērunt, quī ibi prō libertātē vītam suam largītī sunt.  
Eō in proeliō Britannī vīcērunt; sed nē hostēs quidem satis  
laudāre poterant virtūtem colōnōrum, quī impetum veterā-  
nōrum tam audācter excēperant.

Vasingtō, postquam illūc pervēnit, hostīs mēnsēs multōs

2. audāciae: *for* (lit. *of*) their insubordination.

3. apud: *near*.—prīmū: the adverb.

6. ita: *i.e.* under a hot fire.

7. conciliū: (*deliberative*) body.

9. cīvēs: (*his*) fellow-citizens.

10. memoriā tenēbant: *i.e. had not forgotten*.

16. columnam: column, -ae, f., monument. — nōmine: in honor.

17. statuērunt: *i.e.* posuērunt. — vītam: translate as though the noun were plural.

18. eō: modifier of proeliō.

21. Vasingtō, postquam: cf. the note on hostēs, cum, p. 20, l. 17.—illūc: adv., *thither*.



COLUMNA

In the picture is shown a monument about a hundred feet in height, erected at Rome in 104 A.D., in honor of the emperor Trajan. On its sides are sculptured scenes descriptive of one of Trajan's important campaigns, a fact which makes this column a very important source of information about the details of Roman military life.

intrā mūnitiōnēs Bostōnis continuit. Tum, cum eius cōpiae maiōrēs factae essent, subitō noctū prope urbem clam collem quendam occupāvit, atque ibi vāllum summā celeritāte exstrūxit; quīn etiam ubi diēs illūxit duxque hostium mūnitiōnēs novās animadvertisit, vehementer commōtus ille: “Hī colōnī ūnā nocte,” inquit, “tanta opera perfēcērunt, quanta meus exercitus mēnse tōtō perficere nōn potest.” Hōc vāllō exstrūctō, cum cotīdiē tēla plūrima ballistis Americanōrum in urbem mitterentur, hostēs brevī nāvēs cōscendere atque ē portū fugere coācti sunt.

Colōnī adhūc bellum gesserant ut iūra cīvium Britanicōrum sibi concēderentur; iam vērō, cum neque rēx neque senātus eōs audire vellet, dē Britanniā dēscīscere novamque condere rem pūblicam cōnstituērunt.

## LESSON 36

### *The Battles of Long Island and Trenton*

15 Interim Britannī Novum Eborācum terrā mariquē oppugnārē parābant. Haud procul est magna īnsula, quae Longa appellātur. Ibi ē nāvibus ēgressī hostēs cum Americānīs āriter pugnāvērunt. Quō proeliō victus Vasingtō nōn sōlum ex īnsulā discēdere sed etiam Novum Eborācum 20 dīmittere coāctus est. Hīs rēbus factīs, colōnī omnēs animō

6. *tanta . . . quanta*: *such . . . as*.

7. *potest*: *could*, a common idiomatic use of the pres. indic. of this verb.—*hōc vāllō*, etc.: the abl. absol. may be translated by a “when” clause, and the following words by a participial phrase.

8. *ballistis*: abl. of means.

12. *cum*: causal.—*neque . . . neque*: *neither . . . nor*.

13. *dē*: *from*.—*dēscīscere*: *dēscīscō*, 3, -scīvī, -scītūm est, *separate*.

14. *rem pūblicam*: *commonwealth*.

15. *terrā mariquē*: *by land and sea*, the abl. expressing place where.

20. *animō . . . dēmissī*: cf. the note on this same phrase, p. 37, l. 20.

vehementer erant dēmissi; quārē Vasingtō, quamquam tōtō cum exercitū Britannicō in aciē pugnāre nōn audēbat, putāvit tamen aliquid sibi faciendum esse, quod spem cīvibus suis adferret. Quam facultātem mox nactus est. Nam 5 Britannī, quī invitī cum Americānīs ipsī pugnābant, multōs Germānōs condūxerant, quī in exercitū stīpendia facerent; quōrum Germānōrum pars quaedam haud procul ā Novō Eborācō in hibernīs iam collocāta erat. Quō cōgnitō, Vasingtō noctū profectus, etsī erat tempestās maxima flūmen-  
10 que quoddam trānseundum erat, ad eōrum castra versus audācter iter fēcit; quō in itinere duo hominēs frīgore periērunt. Hostēs, quī nihil suspicābantur diemque fēstum celebrābant, ab Americānīs facillimē captī sunt. Tum dēmum colōnī iterum spem magnam habēre coepērunt.

## LESSON 37

*The Retreat from Trenton*

15 Paulō post Vasingtō, cum ausus esset iterum prōgredi ad eundem locum ubi Germānōs illōs cēperat, periculum adiit maximum. Nam subitō aderant Britannī plūrimī, nec propter natantem glaciem flūmen trānsire Americānī pote-  
rant. Tum imperātor Britanicus, quī Cornivallis appellā-  
20 bātur, cum Vasingtōnem crēderet iam dēmum circumventum esse, glōriāns, "Crās," inquit, "ā mē iste vulpēs capiētur."

2. aciē: *regular engagement.*

4. adferret: note the mood.

—quam facultātem: freely, *an opportunity for which.*

5. invitī: *with reluctance.* — ipsī: *in person.*

9. erat: *there was.*

12. diem . . . fēstum: *a holiday (fēstus, -a, -um).*

16. illōs: *i.e. those mentioned in l. 7.*

20. cum . . . crēderet: translate by a participial phrase; so also on the next page, l. 11. In Latin the pres. part. is used much less freely than in English.

21. crās: *adv., to-morrow.* — vulpēs (-is, c.): *fox.*

At Vasingtō suōs iussit sub vesperum in castrīs ignīs facere, ut cotidiē solēbant, cum interim paucī maximō cum strepitū circum vāllum opus fēstīnārent; quod eō cōnsiliō iussit, ut Britannī arbitrārentur ibi impetum hostium <sup>met</sup> excipere 5 Americānōs parāre. Nocte tamen intempestā colōni, sine strepitū ullō ex castrīs ēgressī, viīs dēviīs iter fēcērunt circum exercitum Britannicum, atque in agrōs apertōs incolumēs pervēnērunt. Itaque māne imperātor Britannōrum “vulpem istum” invenīre nōn potuit; Vasingtō enim etiam 10 tum oppidum oppugnābat alterum, ubi quīdam Britannī aliī castra posuerant. Quārē Cornivallis, cum sentiret sē ēlūsum esse, celeriter sē recēpit, ut impedimenta cōservāret sua, quae ad pugnam profectus post tergum longē reliquerat.

## LESSON 38

*Burgoyne's Campaign*

Posterō annō alias imperātor Britannicus ex Canadā per 15 prōvinciam Noveborācēnsem legiōnēs quāsdam dūcere cōnātus est. Cui omnia prīmō fēlīciter ēvēnērunt; Taeconderōga enim capta est ūnā cum cōpiīs omnibus, quās eō Americānī comportāverant. Cum autem Germānī multī ē Britannicō exercitū in proximam prōvinciam 20 missi essent ut equōs aliāsque cōpiās colōnōrum raperent,

2. *ut* : *as.* — *solēbant* : *sc.*  
facere. — *paucī* : here used as a  
(masc. pl.) noun.

3. *vāllum* : of course, of their  
own camp. — *fēstīnārent* : *fēstīnō*,  
*i., hurry along.* — *quod* : *i.e.* *id*  
*quod, a thing which.* — *cōnsiliō* :  
*design.*

10. *oppugnābat*: note the  
tense.

13. *ad pugnam*: *for a battle*  
(merely), *i.e.* not for a campaign.

16. *cui*: *for whom.* — *omnia* :  
note the gender.

18. *eō*: *there, lit. thither;* cf.  
the note on *quō*, p. 8, l. 14.

agricolae, quī ā pueritiā arma ferre solitī erant, undique statim convēnērunt; Germānisque magnō cum dētrimentō ex illā prōvinciā discēdere coāctīs, imperātōrem ipsum mox ācerrimē adortī sunt Americānī, quōrum in diēs cōpiae 5 maiōrēs fiēbant.

Quō proeliō victi hostēs, quī iam omnibus ex partibus obsidēbantur, in Canadā redire prīmō frūstrā cōnātī, postrēmō Americānīs in dēditiōnem vēnērunt. Tum scīlicet colōnī omnēs ecfrēnātē gaudēbant, quod periculum 10 maximum effūgisse vidēbantur. Sed alibī hostēs ācriter gerēbant bellum; cuius ēventus adhūc maximē dubius erat.

## LESSON 39

### *Valley Forge*

Dum geruntur haec, dē quibus modo dīxī, Britannī Philadelphiā oppugnāre parābant, quae urbs tum erat caput reī pūblicae Americānae. Unde Vasingtō, cuius cōpiae 15 numerō erant multō inferiōrēs, hostēs nūllō modō arcēre poterat; quārē senātus ad aliud oppidum sē recēpit, ac Philadelphia nūllō dēfendente ā Britannīs capta est.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 4. in diēs: <i>from day to day.</i><br>6. omnibus ex partibus: <i>on all sides.</i><br>8. Americānīs: <i>dat. case.</i><br>9. quod: <i>conjunction.</i><br>10. vidēbantur: <i>sc. sibi, i.e. they seemed to themselves; freely, they thought that they, etc.</i><br>11. gerēbant: <i>note the tense.</i><br>— maximē dubius: <i>by the prefixing of maximē, an adj. (or adv.) is raised to the superlative degree.</i><br>12. haec: <i>neut. pl.</i> | 13. quae urbs: <i>the city which ; lit. what?</i><br>15. numerō: <i>for syntax, cf. animō, p. 37, l. 20. — multō: (by) much.</i><br>16. senātus: <i>Congress.</i><br>17. nūllō: <i>supplying the missing abl. of nēmō. — dēfendente: sc. eam (i.e. Philadelphiā). For the pres. part., being active in meaning, may take an object even when used, as here, in the abl. absol. construction.</i> |
|--|--|

Paucis post diēbus circiter quinque mīlibus passuum ab ēadem urbe āriter pugnātum est, sed tum quoque Vasingtō discessit īferior. Qui igitur, cum hiems iam adesset, mīlītēs suōs in hibernīs collocāvit in quādam valle, ubi mēnsēs 5 multōs summā cum inopiā omnium rērum necessāriārum miserrimē vīctum est. Nam nōn sōlum in aerāriō nūlla erat pecūnia, sed in castrīs mox frūmentum quoque dēficere coepit; mīlītēsque miserī, quibus erant saga nūlla, saepe noctēs tōtās prope ignem vigilāre coācti sunt. Quīn etiam 10 trāditum est, cum agmen in hiberna iter faceret, multōrum pedēs nūdōs in nive vestīgia cruenta fēcisse.

Sed iam dēmum ex Eurōpā socii Americānis auxilium ferre parābant; multī enim etiam aliis ex gentibus molestē ferēbant Britannōs iūra cīvium colōnīs concēdere 15 nōluisse.

## LESSON 40

### *Help from France*

Ita hōc ferē tempore factum erat ut Gallī, qui Britannōs minimē amābant, cum Americānis facerent foedus atque trāns mare imperātōrem cum classe mitterent, quī colōnōs

1. quīnque mīlibus passuum: abl. of degree of difference.— ab: (*away*) from.

2. pugnātum est: *a battle was fought*; lit. what?

3. cum: as, or since.

5. cum: freely, under the stress of.

6. miserrimē: miserē (adv.), wretchedly.— vīctum est: impersonal pass. (from vīvō).— aerāriō: aerārium, -ī, N., *public treasury*.

8. quibus: dat. case; cf. cui, p. 11, l. 2.

10. multōrum: as (masc.) noun; cf. multī, l. 13.

12. Americānis: indirect obj. with auxilium ferre.

13. aliis ex gentibus: *i.e. of other nationalities*.

16. factum erat: *it had come to pass*.

17. cum: preposition.— foedus: foedus, -eris, N., *alliance*.

adiuvāret. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, Britannī illi, quī Philadelphiae cōnsēderant, cum sentirent flūmine classe obsessō sē undique oppugnārī posse, celeriter sēsē coniūnxērunt cum cōpiis aliīs, quae in prōvinciā proximā collocātae erant. Ita 5 Philadelphia rursus in Americānōrum potestātem pervēnit.

Adhūc Britannī crēdiderant colōnōs facile vincī posse: sed iam dēmum sēnsērunt sē rem difficillimam tractāre; cumque in prōvinciīs, quae ad merīdiem spectant, colōnī rārī multīs cum servīs in praediīs maximīs habitārent, in 10 eās cōnstituērunt exercitūs suōs mittere, sī ibi rem gerere fēlīcius possent. Nec vērō eōs cōnsilium fefellit; nam Gorgia ūnā cum aliīs quibusdam prōvinciīs brevī est occu-pāta, et ubicumque in aciē pugnātum est, Americānī victī sunt. Quibus dētrīmentīs minimē animō dēmissī, colōnī 15 iam manūs parvās coēgērunt, quae in silvīs palūdibusque latēbant, dōnec occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae nancī-scerentur; tum subitō impetū factō aut capiēbant Britannōs aut eōs in fugam dabant.

## LESSON 41

### *Benedict Arnold*

Dum haec geruntur, in prōvinciā Noveborācēnsī quīdam 20 imperātor Americānus, nōmine Arnoldius, dux audāx ac

1. *quibus rēbus*: *this*. — *Philadelphiae*: locative case.

2. *flūmine . . . obsessō*: translate by a conditional clause.

3. *oppugnārī*: note the last letter of the word. — *posse*: *could*. — *sēsē*: *i.e.* *sē*.

8. *cum*: *since*, or *inasmuch as*.

10. *eās*: referring to *prōvinciīs*, 1. 8. — *sī*: cf. *sī*, p. 33, l. 4.

11. *nec vērō*, etc.: *freely, and the plan was successful*; lit. what?

13. *ubicumque*: *conjunction, wherever*.

15. *manūs*: *companies, or bands*.

16. *latēbant*: cf. the note on *rapiēbant*, p. 7, l. 17. — *rei bene gerendae* (gen. case): *freely, successful action*. — *nancīscerentur*: translate the subjunctive “*could*.”

strēnuus, Britannīs parābat prōdere castra, quae colōnī in rīpā flūminis Hudsōnis posuerant, quōque ab Americānīs comportāta erant omnia, quae ad bellum necessāria erant; nam castra nātūrā locī mūnitissima erant, ac fūnis quoque ferreus ibi trāns flūmen ductus erat, nē nāvēs hostium longius adversō flūmine nāvigāre possent.

Britannī, cum iam diēs prōditiōnis appropinquāret, nūntium mīsērunt, quī ducem convenīret Americānum, littērāsque ab eō reportāret. Incolumis ad Arnoldium pervēnit nūntius; sed cum ad Britannōs redīret, ab Americānīs tribus captus est: quī captīvum sine morā in castra proxima dēdūxērunt, quamquam ille miser omnibus modis ab eīs salūtem impetrāre cōnātus est. Quā dē rē certior factus, Arnoldius ad Britannōs quam celerrimē perfūgit; quōrum in exercitū imperātor brevī factus est.

Nūntius interim, causā cōgnitā, capitīs est damnātus; litterās enim, quās manū ducis Americānī scriptās ferēbat; dēlēre nōn potuerat, antequam in castra ā colōnīs tribus ductus est. Arnoldius, cum contrā suōs cīvēs ācerrimē belum gessisset, postrēmō apud Britannōs mortuus est, etiam eīs ipsīs invīsus quōs tantā perfidiā adiuvāre cōnātus erat.

1. *castra, quae, etc.*: namely, West Point.

2. *quōque* : *i.e.* *quō + que, and into which*; for *quō*, cf. the note on p. 8, l. 14.

3. *omnia*: note the gender.  
— *ad* : *for*.

4. *nātūrā*: note the case.—  
*fūnis (-is, M.)*: *chain*.

5. *ferreus (-a, -um)*: *iron*.  
— *ductus erat*: *had been stretched*.

7. *prōditiōnis*: *prōditiō, -ōnis, f., betrayal*; cf. the verb *prōdō*, l. 1.

12. *ille miser*: *he, poor fellow*.

14. *quam celerrimē*: *as quickly as possible*. — *quōrum in exercitū: and in their army*.

16. *cōgnitā*: *tried*. — *capitis: i.e. to death*. The charge or (less often) the penalty may be expressed, as here, by the genitive.

17. *manū*: abl. of means with *scriptās*.

19. *cum . . . gessisset*: *after waging*. — *suōs*: observe the emphatic position (cf. the note on *suūm*, p. 11, l. 6).

21. *eīs ipsīs*: dat. case; construe with *invīsus*.

## LESSON 42

*A Roman who fought against his Country*

Quibus rēbus admoneor ut pauca dicam dē Coriolānō, clārō duce Rōmānō; quī imperātor fortissimus, ā cīvibus iniūriā damnātus, ab urbe discessit sēque coniūnxit cum hostib⁹, quī anteā bellum Rōmānīs saepe intulerant.

5 Dēnuō mox bellō indictō, hostibus prīmō rēs undique feliciter ēvēnērunt, Rōmānīque lēgātōs pācis petendae causā ad Coriolānum mittere coācti sunt. Qui autem, propter iniūriam ā cīvibus inlātam adhūc irātus, asperius respondit lēgātōsque maestissimōs domum dīmisit; quīn etiam idem 10 nūntiū ā senātū iterum missī nē in castra receptī quidem sunt.

Quibus rēbus cōgnitī, Rōmānī graviter permōti etiam sacerdōtēs mittere cōnstituērunt, sī ab eīs saltem Coriolānī animus ferōx flectī posset; cum vērō nē hī quidem quicquam impetrāre potuissent, tum māter ipsa uxorque Coriolānī ūnā 15 cum aliis mātrōnīs complūribus ad hostium castra maestae profectae sunt.

Quō ubi perventum est, mātris verbis vehementer commōtus Coriolānus pollicitus est sē sine morā cum exercitū ē fīnibus Rōmānōrum discessūrum. Posteā apud hostīs mul-

1. pauca : *a few (words).*

2. quī : *this (adj.).*

3. iniūriā : abl. used adverbially.—urbe : *the city, i.e.* Rome, often thus designated as being *the city par excellence.*

4. Rōmānīs : dat. case.

5. dēnuō : *i.e.* iterum.

6. pācis petendae causā : *i.e.* ad pācem petendam. Literally causā means “for the sake of.”

8. asperius : *rather harshly* (*asperē* : adv., *harshly*) ; for the

rendering of the comparative, cf. the note on **maximum**, p. 13, l. 11.

9. lēgātōs : *envoys or ambassadors.* — maestissimōs : pred. adj. — idem : pl.

13. ferōx (-ōcis, adj.) : *fierce.* — flectī : *flectō, 3, flexī, flexus, influence.* — vērō : *and.* — quicquam : *any concession, lit. anything.*

15. maestae : *in (the garb of) mourning.*

tōs annōs vīxit, nec libenter; nam trāditum est eum esse solitum dicere senī miserrimum esse exsiliū.

## LESSON 43

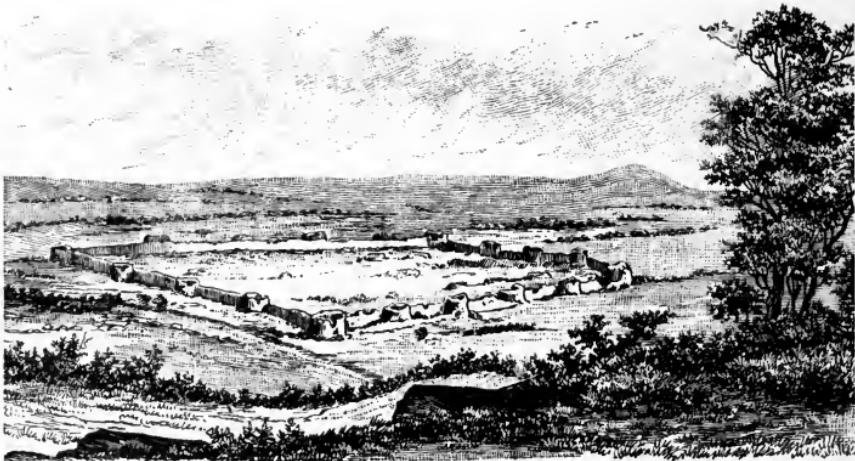
*The Surrender of Cornwallis*

Sed ut ad Americānōs redeāmus, ab eīs diū ac variā fortūnā bellum cum Britannīs gestum est. At paulātim oppida 5 prōvinciārum, quae ad meridiem spectant, rursus in potestātem Americānōrum venērunt, ac Cornivallis, quī iam ibi bellum gerēbat, in Virginiam postrēmō sē recipere coāctus est; quā in prōvinciā summā cum licentiā rapere et agere coepit omnia.

10 Vasingtō autem iam aderat cum exercitū sociīsque Gallicis; et Cornivallis in urbe mūnitissimā, quae Eborācopolis appellātur, undique obsessus, oppugnatiōnem duōs mēnsēs aegrē sustinuit. Tum hostēs, cum frūstrā <sup>weak thre</sup> ērumpere cōnātī essent parsque mūnitioñum ab Americānīs esset expugnāta, 15 sē suaque omnia Vasingtōnī dēdidērunt. Cornivallis autem ipse, nē suīs oculīs ignōminiam exercitūs vidēret, eō diē sē esse aegrū simulābat, atque in tabernāculō, dōnec dēditiō est facta, maestus morātus est.

Hāc victoriā nūntiātā, Americānī ecfrēnātē gaudēbant; 20 ac senātus in templum convocātus dīs grātiās maximās ēgit.

- 1. vīxit: from vīvō. — nec libenter: cf. the note on p. 17,
- 1. 8. 2. senī: *for an old man*; senī is from senex.
- 3. ut . . . redeāmus: *to return*.
- 6. ibi: *in that region*.
- 8. licentiā: licentia, -ae, f., *lawlessness*. — rapere et agere: freely, *rob and plunder*; strictly,
- steal (goods) and drive off (live stock).
- 11. mūnitissimā: *strongly fortified*.
- 13. hostēs: *i.e. the English*.
- 16. nē . . . vidēret: freely, *in order to avoid seeing*.
- 16. suīs: cf. again suum, p. 11,
- 1. 6. 20. dīs: cf. p. 14, l. 19.



MUNITIONES

Above may be seen the remains of a Roman camp, showing still very well the nature of its defenses ; namely, a *vallum*, strengthened at short intervals by small towers.

Omnēs enim sentiēbant Britannīs pācem iam dēmum esse petendam.

## LESSON 44

*Washington retires to Private Life*

Pāce factā, Carletō, dux Britannicus, quī tum Eborācum Novum praesidiō tenēbat, cum exercitū nāvēs cōnsendere 5 domumque redire ā rēge iussus est.

Illam in urbem Vasingtō lēgātōs suōs paulō post convocāvit. Cumque pauca locūtus eōs valēre iussisset, lēgātī, quī eō duce annōs circiter octō stīpendia fēcerant, lacrimās nōn potuērunt diūtius continēre, sed flētēs imperātōrem 10 dextrā tenuērunt. Lēgātīs dīmissīs, Vasingtō, ut imperium suum dēpōneret, ad urbem statim profectus est, ubi senātus tum habēbātur.

Cum iter faceret, multitudinēs maximaē ex oppidis omnibus ēgressae flōrēs in viā sparsērunt; et inter fausta nōmina 15 etiam pater patriae est appellātus. Sic prōgressus est usque ad urbem, ubi eum senātus exspectābat; tum, imperiō dēpositō, domum sine morā contendit, arbitrātus sē iam in prae- diō iūre ōtiōsum vivere posse, sicut fēcerat, antequam bellum indictum est.

i. *Britannīs*: cf. the note on sibi, p. 34, l. 21.

freely, *Congress was . . . in session.*

6. *lēgātōs*: *staff officers.*

13. *cum* : *as.*

7. *eōs valēre iussisset*: *had bidden them (to) fare well (valeō, 2, valuī).*

14. *sparsērunt*: *spargō, 3, sparsī, sparsus, scatter.* — *fausta*: *faustus, -a, -um, complimentary.*

8. *eō duce*: cf. *advenā duce*, p. 21, l. 14. — *circiter*: cf. p. 45, l. 1. — *stīpendia fēcerant*: cf. p. 42, l. 6.

16. *exspectābat*: note the tense.

17. *arbitrātus*: cf. the note on veritī, p. 2, l. 17.

10. *ut*: *for the purpose (of).*

18. *iūre*: abl. of *iūs*, used adverbially; cf. *iniūriā*, p. 48, l. 3. — *ōtiōsum*: cf. p. 38, l. 6, note.

11. *senātus . . . habēbātur*:

## LESSON 45

*The Father of his Country*

Laus maxima Vasingtōnī tribuenda est, quod sē rēgem facere nōluit. Sed eius nōmen manet semperque mānsūrum est in animis hominum, in aeternitāte temporum, neque aliud umquam ab Americānis aequē amābitur. Quod ille pater patriae appellātus est, hīc est honor, quī paucis contigit. Nam abhinc multōs annōs Cicerō ita est vocātus, cum vī- cisset cīvīs pessimōs, quī rem pūblicam perdere voluerant; et antiquitus hoc idem cōgnōmen Camillō ā cīvibus grātīs iūre datum est.

Nam ille vir Rōmānus, dux fortis clārusque, iniūriā in iūs vocātus, abierat in exsilium, vīvēbatque apud Ardeātēs, cum Galli plūrimī trāns montēs in Ītaliā subitō profecti, proeliō ācrī vīcērunt Rōmānōs, urbemque ipsam incendērunt. Tum Camillus, conciliō convocātō, Ardeātēs hortātus est ut audācter fīnēs dēfenderent suōs, Rōmānīsque fortiter auxilium ferrent. Itaque, illō duce, oppidānī noctū clam profecti, in quōsdam Gallōs, quī sine custōdiīs in agrō apertō

1. laus (*laudis*, F.): credit. — tribuenda est: is due (*tribuō*, 3, *tribuī*, *tribūtus*, give, or ascribe).

— quod: that (conjunction).

2. mānsūrum est: cf. futūrus erat, p. 31, l. 7.

3. aeternitātē: aeternitās, -ātis, F., endless extent. — temporum: the ages. — aliud: (any) other.

4. aequē: adv., equally. — quod: as for the fact that.

5. hīc est: this is; for the gender, cf. the note on quod, p. 30, l. 6. — paucis: (only) a

few; masc., as noun. — contigit: contingō, 3, -tigī, fall (to the lot of), or happen (to).

7. perdere: perdō, 3, perdidī, perditus, ruin.

8. cōgnōmen: cōgnōmen, -inis, N., title. — grātīs: grateful.

11. Ardeātēs: people of Ardea (a town about twenty miles south of Rome).

12. Gallī: the Gauls, a people inhabiting the country now known as France.

13. urbem: cf. the note on urbe, p. 48, l. 3.

humī iacēbant sōpītī, maximō clāmōre fēcērunt impetum,  
eōsque in fugam dedērunt. Ac paulō post reliquī quoque  
hostēs, quī in castrīs ad Rōmam morātī erant, ā Camillō  
paene ad ūnum occīsī sunt.

3. **ad Rōmam:** *near (or at) Rome.*    4. **ad ūnum:** cf. p. 4, l. 5.

# TALES OF LAND AND SEA

## LESSON 46

### *The Settler's Daughter*

In Britanniā Novā quondam agricolae, quī semper impetūs timēbant Indōrum, in agrōs cotidiē sēcum arma ferre solēbant; ac prope quendam vīcum in colle ēditō castellum quoque positum erat, quō, sī quandō opus esset, colōnī liberōs uxōrēsque statim dēdūcerent. Quō ex castellō oīlim sīgnūm subitō datum est Indōs adesse. Hōc audītō, agricultorū, equīs in agrīs sine morā relictīs, ad vīllās cucurrērunt, et mulierēs ac liberōs quam celerrimē in castellum dēdūcere coepērunt.

10 At vir quīdam, cui erat filia tantum, ad castellum cum eā pervenīre nōn potuit, priusquam Indī in cōspectum vēnērunt; itaque puellam parvam in arbore cavā collocāvit, nē hostēs eam invenīre possent, ipseque, ut auxilium cīvibus suīs ferret, per agrōs fortiter contendit.

15 In proeliō, quod est ibi commissum, ab Indīs captī, in silvās longinquās dēductī sunt agricultorū paucī, in eīs ille vir, dē quō modo dīxī. Oppidānī scīlicet crēdidērunt filiam ūnā cum patre captam esse: sed ille multis post mēnsibus

3. ēditō: ēditus, -a, -um, *high*.

4. quō: cf. quō, p. 47, l. 2.

—sī quandō: if at any time, or whenever. —opus esset: there should be need.

7. sine morā: i.e. instantly.

8. quam celerrimē: cf. p. 47,

l. 14.

11. priusquam: i.e. antequam.

15. est . . . commissum: i.e. commissum est.

16. in eīs: cf. p. 38, l. 14.

ex Indōrum vīcō clam effūgit; cumque postrēmō domum pervēnisset neque in oppidō filiam potuisset invenīre, cīvīs suōs ad arborem cavam dēdūxit. Ibi reperta sunt ossa tantum et sagitta ūna.

## LESSON 47

*The Trials of War*

5 Ab hostibus trānsmarīnīs quī ōlim bellum cum colōnīs Americānīs multōs annōs gessērunt, facinora atrōcia facta esse dīcuntur plūrima. Nam cuidam colōnō erant duo equī pulcherrimī, quōs ille maximā diligentia cūrābat; at imperātor hostium, quī hoc oppidum praesidiō tenēbat, 10 quīque erat omnibus oppidānīs superbiā maximē invīsus, illōs equōs quondam ad sē dūcī iussit, quod nūntium cum litterīs ad castra longinqua mittere vellet. Sed ūnum ex equīs nēmō posteā vidit, alterque paucis post hōris in viā moribundus haud procul repertus est.

15 Praedam quoque ē vīllīs undique rapere solēbant hostēs; sed eōs quondam duo servī Āfrī callidē ēlūsērunt; postquam enim militēs appropinquāre nūntiātum est, hī servī fidēlēs, tabulā abreptā, argentum dominī celeriter sub aedibus condidērunt. Unus autem ex eīs sub aedibus argētum vix ab alterō accēperat, cum subitō hostēs in cōspectum vēnērunt. Itaque ille, quī suprā stābat, tabu-

3. ossa : os, ossis, N., *bone*.

5. trānsmarīnīs : trānsmarīnus, -a, -um, *from across the sea*.

6. atrōcia : atrōx, -ōcis, adj., *dastardly*.

7. dīcuntur : note the pl. verb.

10. quīque : *i.e.* quī + que. — omnibus oppidānīs : dat. case;

construe with invīsus. — superbiā : abl. of cause.

11. quod . . . vellet : *on the ground that he wanted*.

16. callidē : adv., *cleverly*.

18. tabulā : *tabula, -ae, F., board*.

21. ille : *the one*. — tabulam : cf. l. 18.

lam statim dēmīsit, nē quid hostēs suspicārentur; ac servus alter, quī nūllō modō ēvādere poterat, trīs diēs noctēsque sub aedibus dīcitur sine aquā cibōve mānsisse.

## LESSON 48

### *The Attempt to surprise Detroit*

Postquam bellum, quod ā Britannīs cum Gallīs Indīsque gerēbātur, paene cōfectum est, multaque castella longinqua in potestātem Britannōrum vēnērunt, quidam rēx Indōrum, nōmine Pontiac, dux fortis et ācer, castella illa recipere Britannōsque ita ex eīs regiōnibus expellere sē posse spērāre coepit; quārē, conciliīs undique convocātīs, Indōs hortātus est ut sē fortiter sequerentur atque hostīs invīsōs ad ūnum interficerent.

Cum iam ad caedem faciendam Indī omnia expedīrent, ē castellō quōdam mulier forte ēgressa barbarōs in tabernāculis arma parāre animadvertisit. Quā rē nūntiātā, lēgātus Britannicus, quī ibi praeerat, nihil tamen verēbātur, dōnec puella Inda, quae eum amābat, castellum maesta intrāvit, cōsiliumque tōtum Indōrum ostendit. Tum vērō castellum custōdiīs maiōribus fīrmātum est, nec nimis mātūrē; nam posterā nocte procul in silvīs audīrī poterat cantus

1. dēmīsit: not dīmīsit.—  
quid: *i.e.* aliquid. After nē and sī, the short forms quis, quid, etc., are regularly used.

3. dīcitur: cf. dīcuntur, p. 55,  
l. 7.

4. bellum, quod, etc.: namely,  
the French and Indian War.

8. recipere: a compound of  
capiō. This and the following  
infīn. depend on posse, l. 9.

9. posse: *could.*  
10. sē: *him.*  
14. quā rē: *this observation.*  
15. nihil . . . verēbātur: freely,  
*felt no concern;* lit. what?  
18. nimis: adv., *too.* The  
whole phrase may be rendered  
freely *and none too soon.*  
19. audīrī: note the last letter  
of the word.—cantus: cf. p. 3,  
l. 2.

hostium, quī circum ignēs saltābant: sīc enim Indī sē ad caedem incitāre solēbant.

## LESSON 49

*The Attempt to surprise Detroit (Continued)*

Māne ad castellum cum comitibus circiter sexāgintā vēnit Pontiac, conciliumque postulāvit. Haud magnō intervallō sequēbātur reliqua multitūdō Indōrum, quī simulābant sē extrā mūnītiōnēs pilā lūsūrōs.

Portis castellī patefactīs, Pontiac, quī nihil suspicābātur, ūnā cum comitibus, quī omnēs arma vestimentīs tēcta ferēbant, sine morā intrāvit; deinde autem vehementer permōtus mīlitēs omnēs et complūrēs negōtiātōrēs cum armīs circumstāre animadvertisit. Postquam vērō ad prīcipia dēductus est ac vīdit duōs trēsve tantum adesse centuriōnēs, audācter cum lēgātō loquī coepit.

Priusquam ad castellum perventum est, comitēs rēx monuerat sē, cum pauca prius dē pāce locūtus esset, lēgātō zōnam datūrum; quō sīgnō impetum statim in lēgātūm centuriōnēsque faciendum esse, cum interim Indī cēterī, quī extrā mūnītiōnēs relictī erant, per portās inrumperent praeſidiumque adorīrentur.

2. caedem: (*the business of murdering.*)

4. intervallō: translate the abl. "at" (strictly, abl. of manner).

6. pilā: (*at) ball;* abl. of means (*pila, -ae, F.*). — lūsūrōs: sc. esse.

8. quī omnēs: *all of whom.* — vestimentīs: abl. of means; but translate "under."

10. cum armīs: i.e. (*fully armed.*)

11. circumstāre: i.e. in such a way as to encircle Pontiac and his followers. — prīcipia: prīcipia, -ōrum, N., *headquarters.*

15. pauca: note the gender; cf. multa, p. 5, l. 9.

16. zōnam: zōna, -ae, F., *belt.* — datūrum: *would offer.* — quō sīgnō: abl. of time when; translate "at."

17. cēterī: i.e. reliqui.

Cum vērō porrígere zōnam ille cōnārētur, lēgātus sīgnū dedit, et subitō p̄rincipia sonō armōrum complēta sunt. Tum dēmūm barbarī, qui iam plānē sentiēbant omnia cōnsilia sua patefacta esse, vultū dēmissō ē castellō silentiō sunt 5 ēgressī, atque in silvās properāvērunt; ubi ē cōnspectū Britannōrum mox āmissī sunt.

## LESSON 50

*A Successful Ruse*

Colōni, cum bellum gererent, hostis saepe fallāciis ēlūsērunt. Sicut dux quīdam Americānus, qui mēnsēs multōs cum exercitū fuerat, uxōris conveniendae causā ōlim clam 10 domum profectus est. Cuius adventū cōgnitō, oppidānī, qui paucī hostibus favēbant, certiōrem fēcērunt lēgātū Britannicum, qui castris praeerat proximīs, ducem illum in oppidō latēre.

Itaque sine morā cum legiōne noctū profectus, lēgātus ad 15 oppidum celeriter contendit; ubi statim aedibus Americānī ignēs admōtī sunt. Quō animadversō, ille scīlicet crēdēbat spem omnem iam esse sublātam: sed filia ex aedibus for-  
titer ēgressa lēgātō, “Māter mea,” inquit, “aegra est. Dā mihi, obsecrō, salūtem eius saltem miserae.”

1. *zōnam*: see p. 57, l. 16. — *sīgnū dedit*: *i.e. made a motion.*

2. *p̄rincipia*: see p. 57, l. 11.  
7. *fallāciis*: *tricks or trickery*  
(*fallācia, -ae, F.*).

8. *sīcut*: *as, for instance.*  
9. *causā*: cf. the note on p. 48,  
l. 6.

10. *oppidānī*: (*his*) *townsmen.*  
11. *qui pauci*: cf. *qui omnēs*,  
p. 57, l. 8.  
12. *praeerat*: cf. p. 56, l. 15.

The word means literally “to be before” or “to be over,” notions which, in Latin, call for the dative.

14. *legiōne*: (*his*) *regiment.*  
15. *Americānī*: as noun, gen.  
sing.

16. *ignēs*: translate as sing., and turn the whole phrase into the active form. — *quō*: neuter.

19. *obsecrō*: *I beg (you) (ob-*  
*secrō, 1).* — *eius . . . miserae*: *of*  
*her, poor woman.*

Quā rē impetrātā, mulier cum lectō lēniter ēlāta est; mīlitēs autem, nē dux ipse ūllō modō effugere posset, aedēs interim omnibus ex partibus circumstābant: quīn etiam haud procul sunt morāti, dōnec aedēs tōtae ignī cōnsūmpta sunt. Tum laetī ad castra sē recēpērunt, inter sē glōriantēs ūnum saltem Americānum scelerātum poenās dedisse. At incolumis erat ille; nam, cum uxor efferrētur, sub lectō manibus genibusque ambulāverat, neque eum vīderat quisquam. Sic astūtiā filiae servātus mox ad exercitum tūtō rediit.

## LESSON 51

*How the Town was Saved*

Multīs post annīs, quam ea, quae modo dīxī, facta sunt, duae puellae Americānae, quae aliō in oppidō prope mare habitābant, facinus memorābile ausae sunt. Olim enim, cum pater eārum longē abesset, in cōspectum subitō vēnit nāvis longa Britannica; ex quā, cum in portum pervēnisset, mīlitēs multī scaphis vectī ad litus celeriter contendērunt atque Americānōrum coēpērunt incendere nāvigia, quae tum forte in portū ad ancoram cōsistēbant.

Fugam iam parābant oppidānī cēterī; at puellae illae,

1. rē: *concession*. — ēlāta est: from efferō.

3. omnibus ex partibus: cf. p. 44, l. 6.

4. tōtae: cf. the note on laetus, p. 2, l. 16.

5. inter sē: *among themselves*.

8. manibus, etc.: abl. of means; translate "upon" (genū, -ūs, N., knee). — neque . . . quisquam: cf. p. 2, l. 11.

9. astūtiā: *astūtia, -ae, F., quick wit*.

11. post . . . quam: *i.e. post-quam*. — ea: *the events*.

13. facinus: not as on p. 55, l. 6 (see the Vocab.). The phrase, as a whole, should be rendered freely.

19. parābant: *were making preparations for*. What are other meanings of this word?



MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS

Among the ancients, music was a comparatively undeveloped art. The scantiness of the music of the stage is indicated by the above scene from a comedy, where the actor in the foreground is manipulating a tambourine (*tympanum*), while another in the rear plays upon double pipes (*tibiae*).

In the Roman army, music was not employed as an accompaniment for the march ; but various trumpets were used for sounding signals. In the picture below may be seen the long straight trumpet (*tuba*) used by the infantry.



tibīā tympanōque arreptīs, secundum lītus clam properāvērunt, ac colle parvō interpositō clārē canere coepērunt. Quō sonō audītō, Britannī vehementer commōtī armātōs plūrimōs appropinquāre arbitrābantur (nam Americānī multaeque gentēs aliae tibīā tympanōque canere solent, cum in proelium prōgrediuntur). Quārē, veritī nē interciperentur, hostēs, nāvigiis oppidānōrum relictīs, celerrimē sē ad suam nāvem longam recēpērunt; nam nōn diūtiū de iniūriis īferendīs cōgitābant, sed sine morā nāvem solvērunt atque in mare apertum prōgressī sunt. Ita ā puellis duābus oppidum servātum est.

## LESSON 52

*An Example of Fortitude*

Indī Americānī summum cruciātum sine gemitū patī possunt, atque Indī Asiāticī nūdī dīcuntur inter nivēs vītam agere, neque ēdere gemitum, etsī ignēs admoveantur. Illī tamen cruciātū fortiter ferendō Rōmānōs nūllō modō superant. Nam oīlim, cum diū neque fēlīciter bellum cum rēge

1. .tibīā: tibia, -ae, F., flute.—  
tympanō: tympanum, -ī, N., drum.

2. interpositō: cf. p. 36, l. 8.  
—clārē: adv., loudly.

5. tibīā tympanōque: see 1. 1;  
for syntax, cf. manibus, p. 59, l. 8.

6. nē: (after a verb of fearing) that.

7. suam: cf. suum, p. 11, l. 6.

8. īferendīs: inflicting; cf.  
the force of the gerundive as seen  
in the use with *ad* and *causā* in  
purpose clauses.

9. solvērunt: lit. loosed, or  
released; see the Vocab.

13. nūdī: pred. adj. — vītam:  
translate as pl.

14. ēdere: not edere. — etsī:  
*even though.* — ignēs: translate as  
sing. — admoveantur: sc. eīs;  
subjunctive, because part of the  
indirect discourse. Render the  
whole phrase freely.

15. ferendō: *in (the matter of)*  
*bearing;* cf. īferendīs, l. 8.  
The ablative expresses specification.

16. neque fēlīciter: *and unsuc-*  
*cessfully;* cf. the note on p. 17,  
l. 8.

Porsinnā gestum esset, C. Mūcius, clārus iuvenis Romānus, Tiberim cōstituit sōlus trānsire rēgemque hostium, sī posset, interficere. Itaque tēlō veste tēctō profectus est; cumque flūmen clam trānsisset, in castra hostium incolumis 5 pervēnit. Ibi tamen rēgem ā comitibus internōscere nōn potuit, ac prō Porsinnā scrībam occīdit; deinde frūstrā effugere cōnātus ad rēgem ipsum dēductus est. Qui cum vellet penitus cōgnōscere cōnsilia, quae in sē inita erant, ignēs iussit admovērī, ut iuvenis omnia prōdere cōgerētur. 10 Ille autem ultrō dextram in ignem porrēxit, cruciātumque sine gemitū passus est. Quō visō rēx, tantam fortitūdinem admirātus, captivum incolumem dīmisit, ac paulō post ā Rōmānīs pācis condiciōnēs petīvit, quod cum gente, ex quā erant iuvenēs tantae virtūtis, diūtius bellum gerere nōllet.

## LESSON 53

*A Hasty Leave-Taking*

15 Prīmō bellō, quod Britannī cum Americānīs gessērunt, hostēs, cum ex Canadā per prōvinciam Noveborācēensem

1. Porsinnā: king of Etruria, a district of Italy just north of Latium.—C.: *i.e.* Caius (*Gaius*).

2. Tiberim: acc. sing. of Tibēris.—sī: *if*.

3. veste: *i.e.* vestimentō: cf. p. 57, l. 8.

5. internōscere: internōscō, 3, -nōvī, -nōtus, *distinguish*.

6. scrībam: scrība, -ae, M., *clerk*.

7. ad: *before*.—qui: the king.  
—cum vellet: translate by a participle phrase.

8. penitus: adv., *fully*. — in: *against*. — inita erant: ineō, -ire, -ii, -itus, *enter into*.

9. omnia: *everything*.  
11. quō: *neut.*

13. quod: *because (as he said)*.  
—ex quā . . . iuvenēs: *freely, the young men of which*.

14. tantae virtūtis: the gen. expresses characteristic or quality; translate first literally and then freely.

15. prīmō bellō: abl. of time when.

ad mare iter facere cōnābantur, ā sociīs Indīs multum adiūtī sunt; barbarī enim paulum ante exercitum prōgressī, villīs undique incēnsīs, colōnōs summā crūdēlitāte occidēbant. Quārē agricolārum omnium suspēnsī erant animī.

5 Dum rēs ita sē habent, in praediō quōdam servus Āfer ūlīm subitō ex hortō perterritus fūgit, dominumque certiōrem fēcit sē Indum in herbā latētem vīdisse. Quō audītō, dominus statim ad frātris vīllam profectus est, ut cum eō cōnsilium commūnicāret; interim uxor filium iussit 10 equōs carrumque parāre. Tum, postquam rediit pater, pauca in carrum imposuērunt, aedibusque ac bōbus relictīs, ad rīpam flūminis satis magnī, quod prope fluēbat, sine morā prōgressī sunt. Id cum trānsīssent, celeriter inde per agrōs contendērunt ūnā cum colōnīs aliīs, quī in 15 his regiōnibus diūtius morārī nōn audēbant. At nē sīc quidem sine labōribus periculīsque effūgērunt; nam in itinere, tempestāte subitō coortā, māter liberīque sub caelō noctem agere coāctī sunt: sed postrēmō in prōvinciam proximam incolumēs pervēnērunt.

## LESSON 54

*The Capture of a Man-of-War*

20 Ōlim multī armātī Americānī ad Canadām versus iter faciēbant, ut ibi cum Gallīs pugnārent. Quī postrēmō pervēnērunt ad lacum, quī trānseundus erat, sī longius prō-

1. Indīs: here adj.

11. pauca: note the gender.

3. occidēbant: cf. rapiēbant,

— bōbus: from bōs.

p. 7, l. 17.

12. satis: *quite*.

5. rēs: *matters*.

14. aliīs: not reliquīs or cēterīs.

8. vīllam: *farm*; cf. the commoner meaning of the word in l. 3.

18. noctem agere: cf. vitām

9. commūnicāret: commūnicō,  
I, make . . . jointly.

agere, p. 61, l. 13.

20. armātī: strictly, noun; but the phrase may be rendered freely.

gredī vellent; in lacū autem ultrō citrōque nāvis longa Gallica nāvigābat, nē quis ibi scaphīs trānsīre posset.

Americānī scilicet nāvem longam sibi statim capiendam esse intellēxērunt. Conciliōque convocātō, cum variae sententiae dictae essent, subitō lēgātus quīdam, maximae virtutis vir, imperātōrī “Ego,” inquit, “sī mihi mīlītēs sex et cuneōs complūrīs dabis, celeriter rem cōnficiam.” Mīlitib⁹ cuneīsque datīs, lēgātus nocte intempestā ad nāvem longam clam scaphā vectus est; ubi cuneōs sīc īseruit, ut gubernācula nūllam in partem movērī possent.

Māne Americānī lacum trānsīre coepērunt. Quō animadversō, Gallī, quī nihil suspicābantur, vēlīs passīs in hostēs impetum facere cōnātī sunt; at nāvis, ventīs statim ad lītūs dēlāta, facile capta est ā quibusdam Americānīs, quī ad id ipsum in litorē morātī erant. Nāve longā captā, scaphae Americānōrum sine ūllō incommodō ad lītūs ulterius pervēnērunt, mīlītēsque rursus ad Canadām per montēs silvāsque lēniter prōgressī sunt.

## LESSON 55

### *The Fall of New London*

Cum Britannī Novum Eborācum praeſidiō tenērent,  
20 colōnī classis onustās rēbus omnibus, quae ad bellum necessāriae sunt, secundum lītūs Novae Britanniae ad

- 1. ultrō: not as on p. 62, l. 10; see the Vocab.
- 2. nē quis: *so that no one*; cf. the note on *quid*, p. 56, l. 1.
- 3. sententiae: cf. *sentiō*.
- 4. nocte intempestā: cf. p. 43,
- 5. īseruit: īserō, 3, -seruī, -serthus, *force in.* — ut: introduc-
- ing a clause of result. — gubernācula: cf. the illustration facing p. 1.
- 10. movērī: note the last letter of the word.
- 11. passīs: from *pandō*.
- 12. ventīs: abl. of means.
- 13. id ipsum: *this very purpose.*
- 14. ulterius: modifier of lītūs.

occidentem nāvigantēs interdum vidēbant; tum, ē portibus liburnicīs celerrimē vectī, onerāriās capiēbant, sī quae forte, tardius prōgressae, intervallō maiōre sequēbantur nāvēs longās, quae eīs praesidiō missae erant. Id Britannī diū mo-  
5 lestē tulerant; cumque īnsula Longa iam tōta subācta esset, nē posteā umquam colōnī in nāvēs suās impetum facere audērent, Novum Londinūm dēlēre cōnstituērunt.

Itaque ab īnsulā noctū profectī, fretum clam trānsiērunt; sed ventīs adversis impedītī portum nōn potuērunt intrāre, 10 dōnec diēs postera illūxit. Tum celeriter ē castellis sīgnū colōnīs datum est hostēs adesse, et agricolae armātī omnibus ex partibus in oppidum convēnērunt. Quī, cum Britannī ē nāvibus ēgressī essent, ad lītūs vērsus fēcērunt iter, mūrīsque interpositī tēla plūrima in hostēs inmīsērunt. 15 At Britannī, quī numerō erant multō superiōrēs, mox inrūpērunt in oppidum atque ignēs undique aedibus templisque admōvērunt. Quō vīsō, colōnī, ut uxōrēs liberōsque in loca tūta dēdūcerent, ex oppidō in agrōs sē recēpērunt.

## LESSON 56

### *The Fall of New London (Continued)*

Prope oppidum erant castra quaedam, quae Americānī 20 praesidiō haud magnō tenēbant. Quō cum hostēs pervē-

1. nāvigantēs: modifying clas-  
sīs, p. 64, l. 20.—interdum: not  
interim.—vidēbant: *used to sight*.

2. capiēbant: cf. rapiēbant,  
p. 7, l. 17.—sī quae: *if any*; cf.  
the note on quid, p. 56, l. 1.

3. tardius . . . maiōre: ab-  
solute comparatives (cf. the note  
on p. 13, l. 11).—intervallō: cf.  
p. 57, l. 4.

4. eīs praesidiō: *as an escort*

*for them, lit. for a protection to  
them, praesidiō being a dat. of  
service.—id: i.e. this preying  
upon their shipping.*

5. subācta: subigō, 3, -ēgī,  
-āctūs, *subdue*.

6. nē . . . umquam: *so that  
never*.

8. fretum: *sound*.

15. numerō: cf. p. 44, l. 15.

16. ignēs: translate as sing.

nissent, colōnōs statim sē dēdere iussērunt. Datō autem respōnsō minimē grātō, ācerimē ibi pugnātum est: sed Britannī, quī, ut suprā dixī, numerō multō erant superiōrēs, postrēmō cōnscendērunt mūnitōnēs, castraque expugnā-  
5 vērunt; quīn etiam virtūte colōnōrum, quī animō obsti-  
nātō restiterant, adeō exacerbātī sunt, ut summā crū-  
dēlitātē occiderent dēditōs quōsdam, quī arma iam prōiē-  
cerant.

Deinde tamen, castra funditus dēlenda esse arbitrātī,  
10 vulnerātōs prius efferre coepērunt; sed id tantā saevitiā,  
ut hominēs miserī in carrum aliis super alium abicerentur.  
Tum ā Britannīs circiter vīgintī carrus dūcī coeptus est ad  
vīllam quandam, ubi vulnerātī ab amicīs cūrārī possent.  
At praecēps erat via, ac postrēmō ā militib⁹ carrus diūtius  
15 retinērī nōn poterat, sed per dēclīve celeriter dēlātus, in  
arborem inlīsus est. Ipsā concussiōne quīdam ē vulnerātīs  
interfectī esse dicuntur; ac cēterōrum ululātus etiam trāns  
portum audītus est.

Sed iam undique colōnī plūrimī ad oppidum auxili ferendī  
20 causā properābant, hostēsque celeriter ad nāvīs sē recipere  
coācti sunt.

2. respōnsō: noun, derived from respondeō.

3. ut: as.

6. adeō: cf. p. 5, l. 18.—exacerbātī sunt: exacerbō, i., exasperate.

7. dēditōs: as noun; cf. vulnerātōs, l. 10.

9. funditus: adv., totally, or utterly.—arbitrātī: cf. veritī, p. 2, l. 17.

10. id: sc. fēcērunt.

12. coeptus est: the passive forms of this verb are used

when the dependent infinitive is passive.

13. possent: note the mood.

14. praecēps (-cipitis, adj.): steep.

15. per dēclīve: along the slope; dēclīve being used as a neut. noun (from dēclīvis, -is, -e, steep).

—dēlātus: i.e. rolling down; lit. what?

16. concussiōne: concussiō, -ōnis, F., shock.—ē: of.

19. auxili: cf. the note on Standisi, p. 16, l. 4.

## LESSON 57

*Captivity among the Indians*

Priusquam prōvinciae Americānae validae sunt factae, Indī oppida longinqua saepe adoriēbantur; miseraque erat fortūna eōrum colōnōrum, quī ab eis captī sunt. Ē quibus ūnus haec ferē dē sē commemorat:

5 "Ōlim," inquit, "cum barbarī subitō in cōspectum vēnissent, ego cum oppidānis cēteris fugā petīvī salūtem, et in palūdem proximam quam celerrimē contendī. Sed in lutō prōlapsus, ā tribus Indīs captus sum, atque ūnā cum reliquīs captīvis in silvās longē sum dēductus; ubi diēs multōs 10 per montēs summō cum labōre fēcimus iter, cum interim contumēliās acerbissimās cotīdiē ferre cōgēbāmur.

"Noctū hostēs captīvōs humī supīnōs collocābant, cu neīsque in terrā dēfixīs, manūs pedēsque artē religābant, nē quis nostrum per tenebrās effugere cōnārēt. Interdum 15 autem tanta erat inopia cibī, ut barbarī, veritī nē frūmentum dēficerēt, nōs etiam ignī mandāre semel iterumque in animō habērent. At ego, postquam frīgore fameque sum paene necātus, paucīs post mēnsibus ā dominō novō emp̄tus, postrēmō domum incolumis pervēnī."

2. adoriēbantur: cf. capiēbant,  
p. 65, l. 2.

4. haec: neut. pl. — commemorat: *i.e.* narrat. The whole phrase may be rendered freely *discourses somewhat as follows*, etc.

5. inquit: present tense.

6. fugā: abl. of means; we would say, "*in flight*"; cf. other renderings of this abl., p. 57, ll. 6 and 8.

7. quam: cf. p. 47, l. 14. — lutē: lutum, -ī, N., mud.

11. contumēliās: cf. p. 18, l. 1.

13. artē: adv., *tightly*. — nē quis: cf. the same phrase on p. 64, l. 2.

14. nostrum: from ego.

15. autem: *moreover*. — nē: cf. p. 61, l. 6.

16. mandāre: mandō, I, *consign*. — semel iterumque: see the Vocab.

## LESSON 58

*A Fresh Supply of Powder*

Ōlim puella, quae Elizabēta appellābātur, oppidānīs suis ita salūti fuit. Subitō ab Indīs oppidum erat oppugnātum, colōnīque statim sē recēperant in castellum parvum, quod barbarī diū expugnāre frūstrā cōnātī sunt. At dēficere iam 5 cooperat pulvis ille paene magicus, quō celeritāte exitiālī tēla Americānōrum aliārumque gentium multārum longissimē feruntur. Quārē colōnī vehementer erant animō dēmissī; quamquam enim in villā haud longinquā cōpia pulveris satis magna relictā erat, nēmō eam putābat 10 ullō modō ad castellum tūtō adferri posse, quod Indī in īnsidiīs undique latēbant. Multī tamen periculum subire volēbant, sed Elizabēta: “Ego ibō,” inquit; “puella enim sum, mēque carēre facilius potestis.”

Cōnsiliō ā duce probātō, puella mox ē castellō palam 15 ēgressa est, lēniterque ad villam versus ambulāvit. Quā rē novā permōtī, Indī prīmō ēventum tacitī exspectābant, et Elizabēta nūllō impediente ad villam facillimē pervēnit; cum autem, pulvere arreptō, ad castellum rursus celeriter currere coepisset, tum bárbarī, qui iam sē ēlūsōs sentiēbant, 20 tēla plūrima undique coniēcērunt. Sed puella fortis sine

2. ita: *in the following way.*

—salūti: lit. *for a safety*; cf. praeſidiō, p. 65, l. 4, and see the Vocab. —erat oppugnātum: contrast *expugnāre*, l. 4.

5. quō: abl. of means.

7. animō dēmissī: cf. p. 37, l. 20.

10. modō: freely, *chance*. For other renderings, see the Vocab.

11. subire: subeō, -īre, -īi, -itus, *risk*, lit. *undergo*.

12. volēbant: *were willing*.

13. mē . . . carēre: *spare me*, lit. *be without me*; mē is abl. case.

—potestis: *you could*; cf. potest, p. 41, l. 7.

16. rē: *performance*.

17. nūllō impediente: cf. nūllō dēfendente, p. 44, l. 17.

vulnere intrā portam castellī recepta est, colōnique pulvere sublevātī impetūs Indōrum potuērunt sustinēre, dō nec amīcī auxili ferendi causā ex oppidīs fīnitimīs frequentēs convēnērunt.

## LESSON 59

*A Battle against Great Odds*

5 In quōdam lacū maximō, cuius in lītore positum est oppidum Taeconderōga, ā criter quondam ab Americānis cum Britannīs pugnātum est. Americānis parvae erant nāvēs et paucae; at dux Britannicus, quī facile ē Canadā cōpiās adferre poterat, multās nāvēs longās summā diligentia īstrūctās parāverat; sē enim Taeconderōgam brevī expugnātūrum spērābat.

Imperātor tamen colōnōrum, vir maxima virtūtis, etsī numerō erat multō īferior, committere proelium minimē dubitāvit; sed cum hōrās multās esset pugnātum noxque iam adesset, nāvēs vix nābant Americānae, tēlaque paene dēfēcerant. Quō quidem tempore Britannī, noctem veriti, proeliō dēstitērunt; sed ad ancorām haud procul cōsistēbant, nē colōni per tenebrās effugere cōnārentur.

At Americānī nocte intempestā, lucernīs extīctīs, silentiō dedērunt vēla, et magnō circuitū hostēs vītāvērunt. Itaque māne, cum Britannī proelium redintegrāre vellent, vix in cōspectū erat nāvis ūlla; quārē illī, ancorīs sublātīs, summā celeritāte īsequī coepērunt. Postquam autem Americānōs fugientēs paene adsecūti sunt, cōnstitit ea

2. sublevātī: sublevō, *i*, *help out.*

6. Americānis: dat. case.

9. īstrūctās: *equipped.*

12. maxima virtūtis: cf. *tanta virtūtis*, p. 62, l. 14.

17. proeliō: for syntax, cf. cōnātū, p. 21, l. 3.

19. lucernīs: *lucerna, -ae, F., lantern.*

24. fugientēs: participle as adj.

nāvis, quā vehēbātur dux ipse colōnōrum, et sōla hostium sustinuit impetum, dōnec reliqua classis Americāna in portū mūnitūm pervenīre potuit; quīn etiam nē illam quidem praedam cēpērunt Britannī; nam suō nāvigiō, cum ad lītus 5 appulsum esset, Americānī ipsī ignīs admōvērunt.

## LESSON 60

*A Night Attack*

Bellō prīmō, quod ā Britannīs cum Americānīs gestum est, in flūmine quōdam Carolaenae Ulteriōris īnsula parva praesidiō Britannicō tenēbātur; interim dominus īnsulae, vir locuplēs reīque pūblicae amantissimus, molestē scilicet 10 ferēbat castra hostium in praediō suō collocāta esse, eō magis quod mīlitēs interdum sē insolenter gerēbant.

Postrēmō Americānī cōnstituērunt adversō flūmine nāvīgāre cōpiāsque Britannicās, sī possent, ex īnsulā expellere. Itaque clam profectī, nāvibus nocte intempestā ad īnsulam 15 silentiō appulsis, impetum ācerriūm subitō fēcērunt. Quā rē novā permōti Britannī ad arma celeriter cucurrērunt; et dominus quoque īnsulae, quī nesciēbat amīcōs adesse, impetum ab hostibus factum arbitrātus, ūnā cum uxōre liberīsque in silvās tardius sē contulit; ipse enim pedibus

4. suō : cf. suum, p. 11, l. 6.

5. appulsum esset : cf. appulit, p. 31, l. 13.

6. bellō prīmō : cf. p. 62, l. 15.

7. Ulteriōris : lit. *Farther* (from the point of view of the capital of the United States), i.e. *South*.

9. reī . . . pūblicae amantissimus : *most loyal to his country*, lit. *most loving of the common-*

*wealth* (objective gen.) ; *amantissimus* is the superlative of the part. *amāns*.

10. eō magis : *and all the more*, lit. *on this account (the) more*.

11. insolenter : *adv., insolently, or impudently*.

16. rē : *action*.

19. tardius : *absol. compar.* — *pedibus captus* : *being crippled, lit. being incapacitated in his feet*.

captus ā servīs tum sellā ferēbātur. Ubi sīc ad casam longinquam perventum est, māter subitō clāmāvit puerum infantem in aedibus relictum esse. Quō auditō, filia fortiter per tenebrās profecta celeriter domum cucurrit; cumque 5 inter tēla amicōrum et hostium in aedēs pervenisset, puerum ē cūnīs rapuit incolumemque ad mātrem sēcum redūxit.

## LESSON 61

*A Choice of Evils*

Parvō in oppidō Novae Britanniae habitābat quīdam agricola, cui erant liberī octō. Is oīlim, cum subitō nūntiātum esset Indōs appropinquāre, ex agrīs ad bona liberōsque 10 servandōs summā celeritāte properāvit; aegra enim domī uxor iacēbat.

Quō igitur cum pervenisset, liberīs convocātis atque ad castellum proximum statim praemissīs, ipse uxōrem ad iter parāre cōnātus est. Sed iam in cōspectū erant Indī, 15 neque diūtius ūlla erat salūtis spēs. Itaque uxōre bonīsque relictīs, agricola, qui iam anteā statuerat cum liberīs sibi vivendum aut prō eīs moriendum esse, equum cōncendit, atque ad castellum versus quam celerrimē contendit. Liberōs mox adsecūtus est, et omnēs, etsī Indī vestigiis 20 sequēbantur, in castellum incolumēs pervenērunt; nam

1. sellā: sella, -ae, F., *sedan chair*; for syntax, cf. rāvibus, p. 6, l. 10.

2. clāmāvit: cf. clāmor.

3. infantem: īfāns, -antis, adj., *infant*.

6. cūnīs: cūnae, -ārum, F., *cradle*. — mātrem: (*her*) *mother*.

10. servandōs: agreeing with the nearer noun. For the form of

the phrase as a whole, cf. ad Galloī expellendōs, p. 35, l. 14.—aegra: pred. adj.

17. vivendum: sc. esse. Note that this and the following gerundive are impersonal; but translate *that he must*, etc.

19. vestigiis sequēbantur: *i.e.* were following the trail (lit. *in their footsteps*).

quotiēns propius accesserant barbarī, pater cōsistēbat in viā, eōsque armīs terrēbat. Sed interim uxor aegra, mulier magnae fortitūdinis, ūnā cum captīvis aliīs ab Indīs in silvās dēdūcēbātur.

## LESSON 62

*Lost in the Woods*

5 Multōs abhinc annōs quidam puer parvus mātre īsciente in silvam clam profectus, diū ibi sēcum sub arboribus lūsit. Qui, cum iam advesperāceret, viam reperiēre nōn potuit ac brevī intellēxit sub caelō sibi noctem agendam esse. Itaque ex foliīs lectum fēcit, cumque per arborēs lūnam stellāsque aliquamdiū suspēxisset, postrēmō somnō gravissimō quiēvit. Māne iterum viam invenīre frūstrā cōnātus, famem bācis sustinuit; quō modō quīnque diēs per silvās errāvit. Deinde noctū ignem animadvertisit, et celeriter prōgressus in vīcum Indōrum subitō pervēnit. Ā quibus cōmiter acceptus, mul-  
15 tōs diēs ibi morātus est.

Dum haec fiunt, lēgātus prōvinciae ūnā cum comitibus paucīs puerī quaerendī causā in scaphā profectus erat, oppidaque Indōrum fīnitima adībat omnia. Quae rēs puerō salūti fuit; nam postrēmō reperti sunt quidam barbarī,  
20 quī nūntiāvērunt ipsum incolumem esse viamque ostendē-

1. propius: absol. compar., *too near*. — accesserant: translate as if a perfect. — cōsistēbat: note the tense, and contrast the force of the imperfect dēdūcēbātur, l. 4.

5. abhinc: cf. p. 52, l. 6. — īsciente: īsciēns, -entis, adj.: lit. *not knowing*; translate the abl. absol. freely.

6. profectus: *slipping away*. — sēcum: *i.e. by himself*.

9. stellās: *stella*, -ae, F., star.

10. suspēxisset: *suspiciō*, 3, suspēxi, suspectus, *watch*, lit. *look up at*. — somnō gravissimō: abl. of manner.

18. rēs: *proceeding*. — puerō salūti fuit: cf. oppidānīs . . . sa-  
lūti fuit, p. 68, l. 1.

20. ipsum: *he*. — viam: *i.e. the way to reach him*.

runt. Puerō sīc receptō, lēgātus sīcās dedit eis Indīs, ā quibus ille servātus erat. Barbarī scilicet dōnīs tam grātīs gaudēbant, puer autem domum reductus est.

## LESSON 63

*The Battle of Saratoga*

Saepe prō patriā fortissimē pugnāvit iste Arnoldius, quī 5 posteā Britannīs prōdere cōnātus est ea castra mūnitissima, quae in rīpā flūminis Hudsōnis posita sunt: et nōn numquām etiam salūtī cīvibus suīs fuit; tantopere enim ā militib⁹ amābātur, ut ipsō adventū suō ad victōriam eōs incitāre posset.

10. Olim Saratōgae, cum eius ōrdinem adēmisset imperātor, quōcūm simultātem gerēbat, ille, sonō proeliī ad aurēs adlātō, “Ego,” inquit, “sī dux esse nōn possum, at saltem manipulāris erō;” quae cum dīxisset, iniussū imperātōris equum cōnscedit celerrimēque in proelium vectus est: ubi 15 mīlitēs, duce vetere cōgnitō, clāmōre sublātō laetī secūti sunt, atque impetum acerrimē fēcērunt in eam partem, ubi aciēs hostiū cōfertissima vīsa est. Ibi summā virtūte pugnāns Arnoldius est vulnerātus, victōria autem ab Ameri- cānīs parta est.

2. ille: the boy.

3. gaudēbant: *were delighted.*

—autem: omit in translation.

4. iste: *that* (in the disparaging sense), a frequent meaning of this word; cf. p. 42, l. 21.

6. nōn numquam: *i.e. sometimes.*

8. ipsō: *mere.*

10. Saratōgae: for syntax, cf.

*Philadelphiae*, p. 46, l. 1.—

adēmisset: adimō, 3, -ēmī, -emp-tus, *take away.*

11. quōcūm: *i.e. quō + cum.*

—simultātem gerēbat: *he was at odds* (simultās, -ātis, F., *quarrel*).

13. iniussū imperātōris: cf. iniussū suō, p. 28, l. 7.

16. partem: *direction.*

17. vīsa est: *from videor.*

Etsī vulnera Arnoldi nōn erant exitiālia, tempus tamen mortī opportūnissimum erat. Odium enim perfidiae, quā ille posteā ūsus est, glōriam eius rērum gestārum semper obruet; quīn etiam trāditum est (ut suprā commemorāvī) 5 nē Britannōs quidem, quī eius perfidiā victōriam sē nactūrōs spērāverant, hominem ūllō in honōre habuisse, postquam bellum cōflectum esset.

## LESSON 64

*Unwelcome Visitors*

Britannī, cum iam iterum cū Americānis gererent bellum pugnīsque nāvālibus saepe victī essent, postrēmō cōnstituērunt usque ad Lovisiānam classem mittere, sī ibi fēlicius rem gerere possent. Quārē appulsīs nāvibus ad eum locum, ubi in mare fertur flūmen maximum, quem Indī patrem aquārum vocābant, militēs multī in lītus ēgressi praedia fīnitima explōrāre coepērunt.

15 Sīc factum est ut quīdam adulēscēns Americānus, qui in villā ōtiōsus hōrā diēi ferē quārtā morābātur, militēs complūris in hortō latentēs subitō animadverteret. Quā rē novā graviter commōtus, comitēs ut sine morā latebrās

1. Arnoldī: cf. Standisī, p. 16,  
l. 4.—tempus: *occasion*.—ta-  
men: may be omitted in transla-  
tion.

2. mortī: note the case.—  
odium (-ī, N.): *contempt*.—per-  
fidiae: objective gen.; translate  
“for.”—quā: the case regularly  
used with ūtor.

4. obruet: obruō, 3, -ruī, -rūtus,  
dim, lit. *overwhelm*.

7. cōflectum esset: for mood,  
cf. the note on *admoveantur*, p.  
61, l. 14.

9. nāvālibus: nāvālis, -is, -e,  
naval.

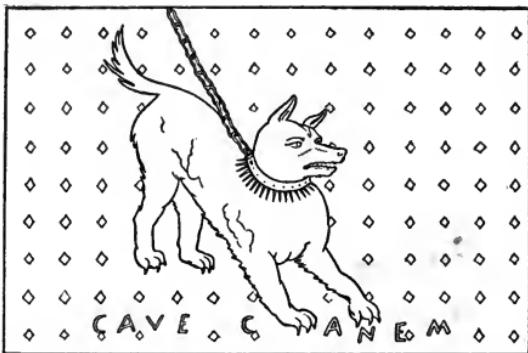
10. usque ad Lovisiānam :  
freely, *to far-away L.*—sī: *in the  
hope that*; cf. sī, p. 33, l. 4.

12. fertur: *rolls*; cf. dēlātus,  
p. 66, l. 15.—quem: for gender,  
cf. the note on *quod*, p. 30, l. 6.

15. factum est ut: *it hap-  
pened that* (*factum est* from *fīō*).

16. hōrā diēi ferē quārtā: *i.e.*  
about 10 A.M. See the note on  
p. 75.

17. rē: *happening*.



CANIS

Just inside the street door of a Pompeian house is found worked into the mosaic of the pavement this representation of a watchdog. The words *Cavē canem* signify "Beware of the dog."



HORAEC

The Romans divided the time between sunrise and sunset into twelve equal hours—long in summer, and short in winter. Above is shown a sundial used to mark the time in the great public baths at Pompeii.

quaererent hortātus est, et ipse p̄imō fugā salūtem petivit; sed ab hostibus statim circumventus, sē dēdere tum nōn dubitāvit. At paulō post fenestrā patefactā ērūpit, cumque tēla hostium undique in eum conicerentur, incolumis 5 pervēnit in palūdem, ubi Britanni armis impeditī summō labōre sequēbantur.

Itaque iuvenis, cum dēmum ab hostibus intervallō satis magnō abesset, arborem nactus idōneam in quā latēret, celeriter cōscendit. Brevī autem sonum exiguum sub 10 arbore audīvit; cumque dēspēxisset, ibi vidit canem, quam maximē amābat. Quārē periculum veritus, comitem fidēlem, quae per palūdem dominum secūta erat, invītus necāvit, multisque cum lacrimīs sub foliīs tēxit. Deinde aliquamdiū tacitus in arbore morātus est; postquam autem Britanni 15 quaerendō dēfessi ad vīllam sē recēpērunt, magnō circuitū custōdiās hostium vītāvit, eōrumque dē adventū certiōrem fēcit imperātōrem Americānum, qui oppidum haud longin-quum praesidiō tum tenēbat.

## LESSON 65

### *The Boyhood of Daniel Boone*

Abhinc annōs circiter ducentōs in Pennsylvēniā nātus est 20 puer, quī posteā factus est explōrātor clārissimus. Quīn etiam ā p̄imā pueritiā ille arma ferre cōnsuēverat, ac in

1. fugā: cf. p. 67, l. 6.

2. tum: *i.e.* for the time being.

3. fenestrā patefactā: abl. of way by which; translate *through*.

— cum: concessive.

7. ab: *from*.

8. abesset: *i.e. was separated*.

10. dēspēxisset: dēspiciō, 3, -spēxi, -spectus, *look down*; cf. suspēxisset, p. 72, l. 10.

12. invītus: cf. p. 35, l. 12.

14. postquam: freely, *when at length*. — quaerendō: cf. nandō, p. 12, l. 17.

15. magnō circuitū, etc.: cf. p. 69, l. 20.

20. factus est: *from fiō*.

21. p̄imā: *early*; cf. p. 22, l. 7. — cōnsuēverat: *i.e.* solēbat.

silvīs ambulāns ferās saepe occidit. Olim, cum vespere prīmō domum nōn redisset, vicīnī, veritī nē puer ab Indīs aut ferīs esset interfectus, frequentēs convēnērunt, complūrīsque diēs errāvērunt per silvās, sī ullō modō eum in-  
5 venire possent; quī postrēmō pervēnērunt ad casam rāmīs caespītibusque aedificātam ā puerō ipsō, quī frūstum carnīs in ignem porrigēns humī sine timōre sōlus sedēbat. Nam ē viā nōn errāverat; sed cōsultō sē longius contulerat in silvās, quod procul ab oppidīs sine comitībus etiam tum  
10 libenter habitābat.

Paucīs post annīs pater multa mīlia passuum ad loca longinqua cōstituit in silvās ēmigrāre, quod ipsī quoque urbēs oppidaque minimē grāta erant. Quās ad sēdēs novās ubi perventum est, puer, cum pater frātrēsque arborēs ex-  
15 cīderent agrōsque ad satūs accipiendōs parārent, ferīs interfectī carnē ē silvā cotidiē domum reportābat. Interdum noctū quoque vēnātus esse dīcitur: quō quidem tempore facibūs ārdentibūs ūtī solēbat; lūmina enim, ut  
20 saepe ab explōrātōribūs audīvimus, ad ferās ē latebrīs elici-

2. nē: cf. the note on p. 61,  
l. 6.

5. rāmīs caespītibusque: abl.  
of means with aedificātam; trans-  
late (freely) "of."

7. sine timōre: i.e. uncon-  
cerned; cf. timeō.

8. longius: absolute compara-  
tive.

9. etiam tum: i.e. even when  
so young.

10. libenter habitābat: i.e. he  
had a liking for living.

11. pater: sc. eius.

12. in silvās: acc., because of  
the verb of motion (ēmigrāre); we

would say "*in the woods.*"—  
ipsī: *him*; construe with grāta.

13. quās: *this*.

15. satūs: satus, -ūs, M., *crop*.

16. reportābat: note the tense.

17. vēnātus: note the case  
(and that dīcitur is personal).

— quō . . . tempore: i.e. at night;  
freely, *on such occasions*. In trans-  
lating, quidem may be omitted.

18. facibūs: fax, facis, F.,  
torch; for syntax, cf. quā, p. 7

l. 2.—ut: *as*.

19. ab: *from*.

20. magnō ūsuī: cf. the note on  
praesidiō, p. 65, l. 4.

## LESSON 66

*The End of the Pequots*

Nātiō Indōrum crūdēllissima, quae haud procul ā Novō Londīniō habitābat, quondam īnsidiās collocāre ac colōnōs singulōs undique interficere subitō coepit. Quibus rēbus nūntiātis, ē prōvinciā proximā manus exigua missa est, quae 5 agricolīs auxiliō esset poenāsque ab Indīs repeteret. At mīlitēs longē ā lītore prōgredī nōn audēbant; quī igitur, parvō frūmentī numerō dīreptō tabernāculīsque paucīs incēnsīs, ē finib⁹ hostium brevi domum sē recēpērunt. Barbarī vērō, hāc iniūriā graviter permōtī, incendia ac caedēs 10 undique etiam crūdēlius iam miscuērunt.

Tum dēnique ē prōvinciā missa est classis, cuius praefectus iussus erat mīlitēs expōnere in quōdam portū parvō, quī haud longē ā castrīs Indōrum aberat. Ille autem, hostēs ita cōnsilium suum facile cōgnōscere posse arbitrātus, 15 praeter illum portum nāvigāvit, cumque classis ē cōspectū barbarōrum longē discessisset, tum dēmum nāvēs ad lītus appulit. Deinde in terram ēgressus, sine morā per silvās viā dēviā cum exercitū profectus est, ut ā tergō hostēs adorārētur. In itinere quāsdam Indōrum nātiōnēs fīnitimās 20 adiit, ē quibus multī armātī operam suam pollicitī sunt.

5. auxiliō: cf. ūsūl, p. 77,  
1. 20, and see the Vocab.—poenās

. . . repeteret: cf. p. 39, l. 2.

7. numerō: amount. — dīreptō: dīripiō, 3, -ripui, -reptus,  
*plunder* (cf. rapiō).

9. incendia . . . caedēs: translate as singulars. With incendium cf. incendō.

10. crūdēlius: crūdēliter, adv., savagely.

11. prōvinciā: i.e. eādem prōvinciā.

12. iussus erat: i.e. was under orders. — expōnere: expōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus, land.

14. ita: i.e. if he followed orders.—posse: cf. note, p. 23, l. 9.

18. viā dēviā: cf. viīs dēviis, p. 43, l. 6. — ā tergō: cf. the use of ex in the phrase omnibus ex partibus.

Sic postrēmō perventum est ad sēdēs hostium, quī, ratī propter timōrem colōnōs praetervectōs esse, iam minus diligenter castra sua custōdiēbant.

## LESSON 67

*The End of the Pequots (Continued)*

Noctū castris appropinquāvērunt colōnī. Intus erant 5 uxōrēs quoque liberīque Indōrum, intusque audīrī poterat cantus barbarōrum, quī, circum ignīs saltantēs, victōriās superiōrēs celebrābant. Colōnī aliquamdiū tacitī exspectāvērunt; tum, cum diēs iam illūcēseret Indīque saltandō dēfessī somnō quiēscerent gravī, subitō in castra portīs 10 duābus inrūpērunt.

Quō impetū repentinō commōti, hostēs tamen celeriter ē lectīs exsiluērunt, tabernāculīsque interpositīs, tēla in mīlitēs conicere fortiter coepērunt plūrima. Quō animadversō, dux colōnōrum statim intellēxit cōnsilium sibi mūtandum esse, 15 suōsque tabernāculis ignēs admovēre iussit, deinde celeriter ēgressōs undique castra circumstāre. Quō modō Indī miseri, ignī ē castrī fugere coāctī, ā colōnīs paene ad ūnum interfecti sunt; et sī quī forte aciem perrūperant, eōs sociī Indī libenter occidērunt.

20 In proeliō multi quoque ē colōnīs sunt vulnerātī, atque exercitus statim Novum Londīnium sē recipere coāctus est;

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. rati: <i>i.e.</i> arbitrātī.                                    | p. 72, l. 10. — portīs: cf. the note on fenestrā, p. 76, l. 3.                               |
| 6. saltantēs: cf. saltābant, p. 57, l. 1.                          | 18. sī quī . . . , eōs: lit. <i>if any . . . , them</i> (cf. the note on quid, p. 56, l. 1). |
| 7. superiōrēs: here, of time.<br>— exspectāvērunt: <i>waited</i> . | 19. Indī: as adj.—libenter occidērunt: <i>freely, were glad to kill</i> .                    |
| 8. saltandō: for syntax, cf. nandō, p. 12, l. 17.                  | 21. Novum Londīnium: town  |
| 9. somnō . . . gravī: cf.  |  |

quō, ut iussum erat, nāvēs iam redierant, ut ibi ducem mīlitēsque exspectārent. Sed hostēs paucīs post mēnsibus alterā pugnā victī sunt, neque umquam posteā iniūriam ūllam colōnīs facere potuērunt; quīn etiam brevī in manūs parvās 5 dīvisī, aliī in aliam nātiōnem ascitī sunt.

## LESSON 68

*A Difficult Escape*

Quondam puerī duo sine timōre in agrīs apertīs cotīdiē laborābant; nam, etsī colōnī tum bellum cum Gallīs Indīsque gerēbant, in hīs regiōnibus nēmō barbarōs ūllōs nūper viderat. Sed ūlīm duo Indī subitō ex arboribus ērūpērunt 10 proximīs, puerīsque arreptīs sē celerrimē in silvam recēpērunt. Quā rē novā perterritus puer minor flēre coepit; sed alter, quī plānē sentiēbat flētum nihil prōfutūrum esse, frātrem hortātus est ut sē fortiter gereret. Per silvam ūnā cum captīvis iam properābant barbarī. Quī, postquam sīc 15 diēs multōs iter fecērunt, ad lacum pervēnērunt longin- quum, ubi cum aliīs cīvibus suīs hiemāre cōnstituerant.

Ibi dum morantur, linguam barbarōrum discere coepērunt puerī. Quō modō maior primā aestāte repperit Indōs in animō habēre in Canadā dūcere captivōs, eōsque ibi in

names in the acc. and abl. do not require prepositions to express the ideas "to" and "from."

1. *iussum erat*: note the gender.
2. *alterā pugnā*: we would say "in" rather than "by."
3. *neque umquam*: cf. the note on p. 17, l. 8.
4. *colōnīs*: dat. case.
5. *aliī in aliam*: *some into one . . . , some into another.*

11. *minor*: *i.e. the younger*; cf. *maior*, l. 18.

12. *flētus*: *flētus, -ūs, M., crying*; cf. *fleō*. — *nihil*: adverbial acc., *not . . . at all*, lit. *in no respect*. — *prōfutūrum esse*: *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, help, or avail*.

16. *suis*: *of theirs*.

18. *maior*: cf. *minor*, l. 11. — *primā aestāte*: cf. p. 22, l. 7.

servitūtem Gallīs vēndere. Quārē, cibō armīsque arreptīs, frātrēs duo ex hibernīs noctū clam fūgērunt; ubi autem diēs illūxit, in arbore cavā sē somnō dedērunt.

Interim Indī cum canibus undique puerōs quaerēbant.  
 5 At frāter maior, cum canēs propius ad arborem accessissent, ē somnō lātrātū excitātus, callidō ūsus cōnsiliō frūstum carniſ eīs prōiēcit. Quae rēs puerī salūtī fuit; cūm enim canēs carnem dēvorārent, barbarī nihil suspicantēs arborem præteriērunt. Quō vīsō, puerī rursus profectī per silvās errā-  
 10 vērunt, dōnec fame labōribusque paene cōnfectī sunt; tum in quoddam oppidum colōnōrum sibi anteā ignōtum subitō pervēnērunt.

## LESSON 69

### *Stories about Daniel Boone*

Ille explōrātor clārus, cuius dē pueritiā paulō ante dīxī, inter ferās Indōsque paene tōtam ēgit aetātem. Olim ē  
 15 Carolaenā Citeriōre trāns montēs ūnā cum aliīs explōrātōribus quīnque audācter in vallēs longinquās contendit; ubi ūnō cum comite ab Indīs captus, postquam ab eīs septem diēs summā diligentiā custōdītus est, noctū clam surrēxit, comiteque ē somnō excitātō, iñcolumis ad casam pervēnit,  
 20 quam ipse cēterīque explōrātōrēs paulō ante fēcerant.

Paucīs post annīs eāsdem in regiōnēs colōnōs cum uxō-

1. servitūtem: servitūs, -ūtis, F., *slavery*; cf. *servus*.

2. autem: *and*.

5. propius: *quite close*; what use of the compar.?

6. lātrātū: lātrātūs, -ūs, M., *barking*. — ūsus: translate as if ūsus est . . . et.

7. quae: *this*.

11. sibi: construe with ignōtum.

13. cuius: modifier of pueritiā.

14. aetātem: not aestātem.

15. Citeriōre: (citerior, -iōr, -ius), lit. *Nearer*, i.e. *North*; cf. the note on Ulteriōris, p. 70, l. 7.

20. cēterī: contrast the force of aliīs, l. 15.

ribus liberisque dēdūxit ad locum, qui castellō maximē idōneus vidēbatur. Ubi aliquamdiū fortūnā prōsperā ūsus est; sed quondam eius filia, quae errābat in agrīs, ut flōrēs carperet, ūnā cum puellis aliīs ab Indīs capta, in silvās comp̄ plūra mīlia passuum ducta est. Dum autem iter faciunt, puellae prūdentēs omnibus locīs aut rāmōs frēgērunt parvōs aut humī pannōs relīquērunt; quae rēs magnō ūsuī erat patribus īrātīs, qui haud longō intervällō vestigiīs īsequēbantur. Barbarīs victīs, puellae laetae domum reductae sunt.

10. Paulō post ille explōrātor ipse iterum captus, diū apud Indōs vivere coāctus est. Sed postrēmō, cum per aquam prōfluentem cucurisset, nē vestīgia ūlla faceret, ad amicōs incolumis pervēnit. Multīs autem ante mēnsibus uxor liberīque, patrem iam p̄idem mortuum ratī, ad propinquōs 15 suōs in Carolaenam Citeriōrem maestī sē recēperant.

## LESSON 70

### *An English Privateer*

Abhinc multōs annōs, etsī illō ipsō tempore bellum iūstum cum Hispānīs nōn gerēbatur, quīdam praefectus Britannicus per maria nāvigābat omnia, gazamque ac nāvēs Hispānōrum omnibus locīs spoliābat; itaque accedit ut, cum

6. prūdentēs: prūdēns, -entis, adj., *wide-aware*. — omnibus locīs: cf. the note on eōdem locō, p. 7, l. 4; translate *everywhere*. — aut . . . aut: cf. p. 36, l. 12.

7. pannōs: pannus, -ī, M., *strip of cloth*.

8. intervällō: cf. the note on p. 57, l. 4. — vestigiīs: cf. p. 71, l. 19.

12. prōfluentem: prōfluēns, -en-

tis, part., *running*, lit. *flowing forward*.

14. ratī: modifying the whole phrase *uxor liberīque*. — propinquōs: here, as noun.

15. in: cf. the note on in silvās, p. 77, l. 12. — Citeriōrem: cf. p. 81, l. 15.

16. illō ipsō: *that particular*.

17. iūstum: iūstus, -a, -um, *regular*.

secundum lītus Americae Ulteriōris nāvigāret, urbēs illiū regiōnis adīret multās, incolāsque magnam vim aurī argen-  
tīque trādere cogeret.

Limae duodecim nāvigia in portū ad ancoram consistē-  
5 bant; quae cum ille spoliāret, certior factus aliam nāvem  
gazā onustam haud procul abesse, praedā ē duodecim nāvi-  
giis cōnfēstīm in suum receptā, ē portū statim solvit, sum-  
māque celeritāte coepit īsequī; dīvitiās enim etiam maiōrēs  
sē iam captūrum spērābat.

10 Mox in cōnspectū erat nāvis fugiēns; quae nūllō modō  
ēvādere potuit, cum Britannī celeritāte tantopere superā-  
bant. Nāve trāditā, dīvitiāe maximaē intus repertae sunt;  
quīn etiam gubernātor ipse duo pōcula argentea habuisse  
dicitur. Quae cum praefectus vīdisset, gubernātōri, "Duo  
15 pōcula tū habēs," inquit; "alterum mihi dandum est."

Tum gubernātor miser, quī omnia trādenda plānē intellegē-  
bat, invītus praefectō in manūs pōcula trādīdit ambō.

## LESSON 71

### *A Roman Vandal*

Quibus rebus admoneor ut dē pessimīs facinoribus Ver-  
ris, hominis plānē scelerātī, pauca nunc dicam. Nam ille,

4. Limae: a town name; what case?

7. suum: sc. nāvium.—sol-  
vit: cf. nāvem solvērunt, p. 61, l.

9.

8. dīvitiās: dīvitiāe, -ārum,  
F., *treasures*.

10. fugiēns: cf. fugientēs, p.  
69, l. 24.

11. cum: causal.—celeritāte:  
for syntax, cf. animō, p. 37, l. 20.  
—tantopere: cf. p. 73, l. 7.

12. dīvitiāe: cf. l. 8.

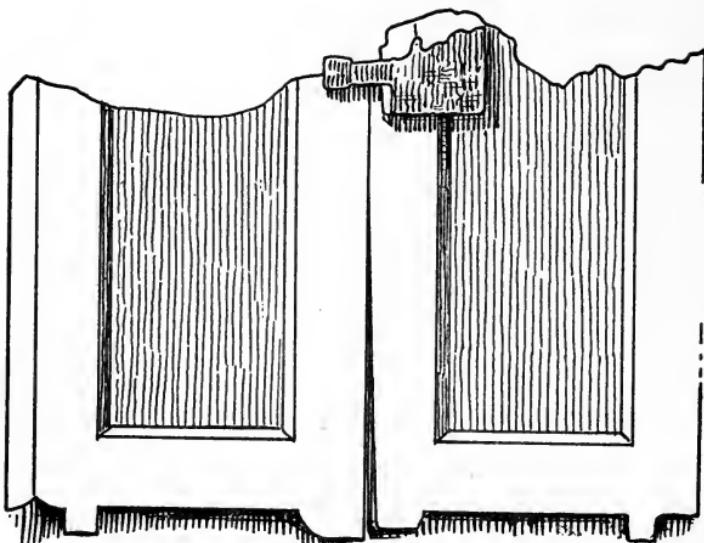
13. gubernātor: cf. gubernā-  
cūlum.—ipse: *even*.

15. alterum: *one* (of the two).

16. trādēda: sc. esse.—  
plānē: *full well*.

17. praefectō: dat. case;  
translate as if a genitive.

19. hominis: in apposition  
with Veris.—plānē: *utterly*;  
cf. the rendering in the note on l.  
16.—pauca: note the gender.



FORĒS

These remnants of a house door serve to show why the word for "door" is plural in Latin. Roman house doors were arranged almost always to open inward rather than outward; on the inside there was a more or less primitive lock or bolt, and sometimes a bar too was used.

cum praetor in Siciliā esset, omnibus locīs oppida templaque spoliāvit; quīn etiam tantae erat avāritiae, ut nē pauperimī quidem Siculī bona vidēre posset, quīn statim ea possidēre vellet. Interdum autem ā suis comitibus est 5 ēlūsus.

Sicut memoriae trāditum est eum ūlim certiōrem factum cuidam Siculō esse duo pōcula argentea; quō audītō, etsī aedēs eiusdem hominis nūper spoliātae erant, nūntium statim mīsit, quī pōcula ad sē sine morā dēferrī iubēret. 10 Siculus igitur, veritus nē sibi malum accideret maius, cōnfēstī cum pōculīs ad praetōrem profectus est. Quō ubi pervēnit, praetor forte iam quiēscēbat; sed ante forēs ambulābant quīdam ex ipsiū amicīs, hominēs improbī, quōrum tamen cōnsiliō ille multum ūtī cōsuēverat: quī Siculō 15 statim, “Ubi sunt pōcula?” inquiunt. Tum homō miser prīmō querī coepit bona omnia sibi ēripī, deinde eōs vehe- menter hortātus est ut sibi auxiliō essent. Quō audītō, illi “Quantum nobis dabis,” inquiunt, “sī pōcula tibi nōn ēri- pientur?” Tum Siculus spē ērēctus, praemium satis ma-

1. **praetor** (-ōris, M.) : (as) *governor*. — **templa** : see the picture of a Sicilian temple shown on p. 96.

2. **tantae . . . avāritiae** : for syntax, cf. p. 62, l. 14. — **pauperimī** : *pauper*, -eris, adj., *poor*.

3. **quīn . . . vellet** : *without wishing*, lit. *but that* (*quīn*) *he wanted*.

4. **possidēre** : possideō, 2, -sēdī, -sessus, *possess*. — **suis** : note the position of the word. — **est ēlūsus** : *was cheated*.

6. **memoriae trāditum est** : *it is recorded*, lit. *it is handed down to remembrance*.

10. **malum** : as noun, modified by *maius*.

11. **ad praetōrem** : *to the governor's residence* (cf. l. 1).

12. **forte** : with the verb, render “chanced to”; cf. *the free treatment of libenter*, p. 77, l. 10.

13. **ipsiū** : *i.e.* *Verris*. — **improbī** : *improbus*, -a, -um, *unprincipled*.

14. **ūtī** : *freely*, *depend upon*. — **cōsuēverat** : cf. p. 76, l. 21.

16. **sibi** : dat. of disadvantage; we would say “*from him*.”

17. **auxiliō** : cf. p. 78, l. 5.

18. **quantum** : as noun.

19. **ērēctus** (-a, -um, part.) : *elated*, or *inspired*.

gnum pollicitus est, pōculaque brevī domum laetus reportāvit comitēs enim praetōris, cum ille ē somnō experrēctus esset, audācī mendāciō ūsī nōn dubitāvērunt cōnfīrmāre pōcula sibi nōn digna vidērī, quae in eius mēnsā pōnerentur.

## LESSON 72

*Indian Vengeance*

- 5 Indī Americānī nōn sōlum cum colōnīs saepe bellum gessērunt, sed inter sē quoque pugnāre cōnsuēvērant ācerrimē. Sicut in Britanniā Novā rēx quīdam, nōmine Miantōnimō, diū per īnsidiās cōnātus est interficere Uncam, rēgem finitimum, ut ipse sōlus duārum nātiōnum rēgnū obtinēret; cum autem ista cōnsilia eum fefellissent omnia, subitō magnō cum exercitū in vīcīnī fīnēs quam celerrimē contendit: Uncās vērō, dē eius adventū ab explōrātōribus certior factus, cōpiās coēgerat et sine morā ad pugnam profectus est.
- 15 Ubi aciēs duae īstrūctae sunt, Uncās, paulum ante suōs prōgressus, sē velle dīxit sōlum cum Miantōnimōne sōlō dīmicāre, ut sine dētrimentō cēterōrum rēs dīiūdicārī posset. Quod cum ille recūsāret, Uncās cōsultō in terram prōlapsus est, eiusque mīlitēs, clāmōre sublātō, super ducem

2. experrēctus esset: experīscor, 3, -perrēctus sum, *wake up.*
3. mendāciō: mendāciūm, -ī, n., lie.—ūsī: translate as if a present.
4. digna . . . quae: with subjunct., *worthy to* (*dignus, -a, -um*).—mēnsā: mēnsa, -ae, F., *table.*
8. īnsidiās: see the Vocab.
9. duārum: *the two.*
10. fefellissent: from fallō.

12. Uncās: for the declension, cf. the note on Cercās, p. 23, l. 4.
16. velle: *was willing.*—sōlum: pred. adj. with dīmicāre; what other part of speech has the same form? (cf. l. 5).
17. cēterōrum: we would say “*to the others.*”—dīiūdicārī: dīiūdicō, 1, *decide, or settle.*
18. quod: *this (proposal).*—ille: Miantonimo.

iacentem sagittās plūrimās coniēcērunt in hostīs; quī repentinā rē perterriti sē cōnfēstī in silvās palūdēsque contulērunt. Quā in fugā periērunt multī, rēxque ab Uncā ipsō captus est. Ab inimīcō salūtem petere dux victus 5 scilicet nōlēbat, et paulō post secūrī percussus est: quō quidem tempore Uncās, cum inimīcum humī moribundū vīdisset, eius umerum sicā appetīvisse dīcitur, frūstumque carnis inde abscīsum vultū laetō dēvorāsse; tantae enim saevitiae sunt mōrēs Indōrum.

## LESSON 73

*A Tale of Brave Women*

10 Abhinc multōs annōs, cum in prōvinciīs, quae ad occidentem spectant adhūc rārī essent colōnī, explōrātōrēs quīdam, domō trāns montēs profectī, per regiōnēs īgnōtās multa mīlia passuum iter fēcērunt, et postrēmō locum idōneum nactī, procul ab amīcīs in rīpā pulcherrimī flūminis 15 castellum parvum collocāvērunt; quibus rēbus factis, nūntiōs mīsērunt, quī eōdem mulierēs līberōsque dēdūcerent.

Hiems iam appropinquābat; omnēs tamen cum nūntiōs libenter domō ēgressī sunt, et nāvigiīs parvī vectī secundō

1. iacentem: *prostrate*; lit. what? — repentinā rē: sc. hāc.

4. ab : *of*.

5. secūrī percussus est: *i.e.* was executed; lit. what?

6. quidem: omit in translation.

7. sicā: abl. of means.

8. inde: *i.e. from it.* — vultū laetō: cf. p. 58, l. 4. — dēvorāsse: for the form, cf. nāvigiāsset, p. 3, l. 1.

10. occidentem: cf. p. 65, l. 1.

12. domō: the acc. and abl. of domus have the construction of town names (cf. the note on p. 79, l. 21).

16. eōdem: bearing the same relation to idem, as eō to is, and quō to quī.

17. omnēs: *i.e.* the women and children.

18. secundō: cf. the force of the prep. secundum, and contrast that of adversō (flūmine).

flūmine ad castellum versus per aquam glaciē impeditam summō labōre contendērunt. Barbarī interim paene cotidē ē rīpis tēla coniciēbant; et postrēmō multī ē colōnōrum numerō exitiālī morbō affectī sunt. Quā rē cōgnitā, hostēs 5 ē rīpā scaphīs audācter prōgressī, nāvigium cēpērunt quō aegrī vehēbantur, hominēsque miserōs interfēcērunt omnēs.

Tantīs in periculīs nōn virī sōlum sed etiam mulierēs virtūtem maximam praestitērunt. Sicut, cum scapha quae-dam in saxō absconditō adhaesisset, mulierēs duae exsiluē-10 runt in aquam frīgidam, scaphamque dē saxō dētrūsērunt, cum alterius vir hostēs armīs dēterrēbat. Atque in liburnicā quādam puella vix adulta omnibus salūtī fuit; cum enim ab Indīs tēla conicerentur plūrima, virīque sē tegere cōnārentur, haec virgō fortis, cum liburnicam vī flūminis 15 ad rīpam dēferrī animadvertisset, gubernāculis arreptis nāvem in cursū tenuit, dōnec vulnerāta est; quīn etiam nē tum quidem gemitum ūllum ēdidiit, neque ē manibus gubernācula ēlābī passa est.

## LESSON 74

### *The Treasure Seekers*

Et hāc et aliīs aetātibus hominēs crēdulī cōnsuēverant in 20 cavernīs maris frūstrā quaerere nāvēs, quae olim gazā

6. aegrī: as noun; cf. vulne-ratī, etc.

11. alterius: *of one* (*of the two*). — vir: *husband*.

12. adulta: *adultus, -a, -um, part., grown up.*

13. sē tegere: *i.e. get under cover.*

14. virgō (-inis, F.): *maiden.* — cum . . . animadvertisset: translate by a partic. phrase.

15. gubernāculis: cf. p. 64, l. 9.

16. in cursū: *i.e. in the chan-nel.*

18. ēlābī: *ēlābor, 3, -lapsus sum, slip;* cf. prōlābor.

19. et . . . et: cf. p. 7, l. 2. — aetātibus: *i.e. temporibus.* — crēdulī: *crēdulus, -a, -um, credu-lous.*

20. cavernīs: *caverna, -ae, F., cavern.*

onustae in mari naufragium fēcisse dīcuntur; interdum autem fortūnā prōsperiōre ūsī sunt. Sīcut abhinc multōs annōs quīdam negōtiātor, ē Britanniā Novā paucis cum comitibus profectus, ad locum nāvigāvit longinquum, ubi 5 gaza maxima multīs ante annīs naufragiō āmissa esse dīcēbātur. Quō cum vēnisset, arborem altissimam statim excīdit scaphamque fēcit, quae ad freta finitima explōranda ūsuī esset.

Aliquamdiū nihil repertum est. Olim tamen, cum nautae 10 tōtō diē diligenter labōrāvissent ac spē omnī paene sublātā ad nāvem sē dēfessī cōferrent, quīdam ex eīs forte submersam animadvertisit algam fōrmōsam, cuius pulchritūdine captus servum Indum ē scaphā exsilīre eamque carpere iussit; ille vērō, ubi cum algā sē ex aquā ēmersit, sub mari 15 cōfirmāvit sēsē multa arma vīdisse. Quō auditō, omnēs ecfrēnātē gaudēbant, cum sentirent sē iam dēmum nāvium invēnisse, quod mēnsēs multōs quaesiverant. Quārē statim in mare exsiluērunt Indi aliī; ā quibus brevī ē nāvīgiō lāminaē argenteae complūrēs ēlātae sunt. Posterō diē 20 nautae, cum eōdem prīmā lūce cum praefectō redissent, ē mari vim argentī incrēdibilem ūnā cum gemmīs plūrimīs facile recēpērunt.

1. naufragium: naufragium, -i, N., *shipwreck* (nāvis + frangō).

2. ūsī sunt: *they have had.*

3. ūsuī esset: see the Vocab.

4. tōtō diē: translate as if acc. — omnī: freely, *entirely*.

5. quīdam: as noun (sing.). — forte: cf. the note on p. 85,

6. 12. — submersam: submersus, -a, -um, part., *submerged*, i.e. under the surface.

7. algam: alga, -ae, F., *seaweed*. — fōrmōsam: fōrmōsus, -a,

-um, *graceful*. — pulchritūdine: pulchritūdō, -inis, F., *beauty*.

8. servum: *helper*.

9. sē . . . ēmersit: *emerged*, or *came up* (ēmergō, 3, -mersī. -mersus).

10. sēsē: i.e. sē.

11. lāminaē: lāmina, -ae, F., *plate*, or *strip*.

12. prīmā lūce: cf. *vespere* prīmō, p. 77, l. 1.

13. gemmīs: gemma, -ae, F., *jewel*.

## LESSON 75

*A Dangerous Conspiracy*

Ōlim in fīnibus Indōrum ab Americānis cōnstitūta est prōvincia maxima, ex quā pars quaedam etiam nunc Indiāna appellātur. Prōvinciā cōnstitūtā rēx Indus, nōmine Tecumsa, qui nē cīvēs suī brevī patriam tōtam dīmitterent 5 timēre cooperat, omnibus locīs palam dicere nōn dubitāvit sine cōnsēnsū omnium nātiōnum Indis agrum nūllum vēndendum esse; ac postrēmō, conciliīs undique convocātīs, barbarōs hortātus est ut sē sequerentur hostīsque invīsōs ē fīnibus suīs expellerent.

10 Deinde, cum ad caput prōvinciae lēgātī conveniendī causā iter fēcisset, quamquam in lēgātī aedium vestibulō ipsī comitibusque subsellia posita erant, ibi sedēre nōluit: terram enim cōnfīrmāvit esse Indōrum mātrem, sēque in eā stāre mālle; itaque lēgātus ad colloquium in silvam 15 prōgredī coāctus est. Ibi dum colloquuntur, Tecumsa vehementer est īrā commōtus, eiusque comitēs secūris cōfēstī arripuērunt. Sed Americānī paucī, qui adstābant, statim expediērunt arma, mīlītēsque summā celeritāte ad lēgātūm dēfendendum adcurrērunt; quibus rēbus territi, 20 Indī nihil tum ausī sunt. At lēgātus, qui plānē sentiēbat cum barbarīs sibi mox dīmicandum esse, cōpiās satis magnās

4. nē: depending on timēre,

1. 5.—tōtam: translate by an adv.

5. omnibus locīs: cf. p. 82, l.

6.

6. cōnsēnsū: cōnsēnsus, -ūs, M., concurrence.—Indis: dat. case.

11. vestibulō: vestibulum, -ī, N., entrance court.

12. ipsī: Tecumseh.—subsellia: subsellium, -ī, N., bench.

17. pauci: the few.

18. expediērunt: i.e. expeditērunt. — ad . . . dēfendendum: cf. the construction with causā, l. 11.

19. adcurrērunt: adcurrō, 3, -curri, -cursum est, run up.

quam celerrimē cōgere coepit. Tecumsa interim, ut omnīs Indōs ad arma vocāret, reliquās gentēs diligenter iam circumibat.

## LESSON 76

*A Dangerous Conspiracy (Continued)*

Priusquam rēx Indus cum sociīs redire potuit, lēgātus,  
 5 sibi initium bellī esse faciendum ratus, cōsiliō callidō  
 ūsus est; nam ex urbe ad pugnam profectus, legiōnēs  
 flūmine adversō pauca mīlia passuum dūxit, tum subitō in  
 rīpam trānsiit alteram. Pūtābat enim (id quod factum est)  
 barbarōs īsidiās collocātūrōs eā in rīpā, in quā prīmō iter  
 10 facere ipse coepisset. Cōpiīs igitur flūmen trāductīs, sine  
 dētrīmentō ūllō contendit ad oppidum, ubi domicilium Te-  
 cumsa habēbat.

Cum lēgātus propius accessisset, rēgis frāter, quī tum  
 oppidō praeerat, nūntium mīsit, quī diceret posterō diē  
 15 Indōs condicōnēs pācis petītūrōs. Itaque Americāni prope  
 oppidum posuērunt castra, armisque expeditīs sē somnō  
 dedērunt. At vigiliā circiter quārtā subitō audītus est  
 ululātus Indōrum, quī undique castra iam obsidēbant;  
 quō sonō ad aurēs adlātō, mīlitēs ē somnō excitātī ignīs

5. *initium*: *initium*, -ī, N., *beginning*. The whole phrase may be rendered freely, *thinking that he ought to take the initiative in the war*; lit. what?

8. *id quod factum est*: *as actually proved to be the case*, lit. *the thing which (actually) happened*.

9. *eā*: modifying *rīpā*. — *in quā*: *upon (or along) which*.

10. *flūmen trāductīs*: *i.e.* *trāns*

*flūmen ductīs* (cf. *trādō* for *trānsdō*).

11. *domicilium*: *domicilium*, -ī, *N., residence*.

14. *praeerat*: cf. p. 58, l. 12, and the note.

17. *vigiliā . . . quārtā*: *i.e.* toward morning, the night being divided into four equal watches.

19. *quō sonō ad aurēs adlātō*: cf. p. 73, l. 11. — *ignīs*: *the (camp) fires*.

cōfēstīm extinxērunt, nē ab hostibū cōnspicī possent. Sīc trīs ferē hōrās in nocte obscūrā ab Americānīs fortissimē pugnātūm est; tum prīmā lūce, ēruptiōne factā, in fugam coniēcērunt hostīs, oppidumque incendērunt.

Oppidō incēnsō Tecumsa, postquam rediit, cōnsilia sua perficere nūllō modō potuit; paucis autem post mēnsibus, cum Americānī Britannī bellum indīxissent, in exercitū Britannīcō lēgātū factus est.

## LESSON 77

### *A Quick-Witted Messenger*

Ōlim, cum in prōvinciīs, quae ad merīdiem spectant,  
10 Americānī cum Britannī diū gessissent bellum ac saepe superātī essent, dux quīdam Americānus ad imperātōrem alium litterās mittere volēbat; at prīmō reperīrī poterat nēmō, qui eās dēferre audēret, quod undique hostēs viās obsidēbant. Postrēmō autem mulier quaedam, “Ego litt  
15 terās adferam,” inquit; “quidvīs audēre mālō, quam domī animō morārī suspēnsō.”

Equō adductō, nūntia sine morā cōncēdit, ac, cōfēstīm profecta, in itinere ab hostibū intercepta est. Quam captam mīlitēs maximā dīligentiā custōdiērunt, dōnec mulier  
20 vocārī posset, quae litterās quaereret, sī quae forte nūntiae vestimentīs tēctae essent.

Dum vērō mulier exspectātur, nūntia litterās celeriter

1. possent: subject, mīlitēs  
(see p. 91, l. 19).

7. cum . . . indīxissent:  
translate by a partic. phrase.—  
Britannīs: translate the dat.  
“upon.”

8. lēgātū: *an officer.*

13. audēret: *would venture.*

15. quam: (*rather*) than.

17. nūntia (-ae, F.): *messenger.*

18. captam: *i.e. after her capture.*

20. posset: *could.* — sī quae: cf.  
p. 65, l. 2.

perlēgit, cumque eās discerpsisset, frāgmenta chartae ēdit singula. Quae rēs eī salūtī fuit: altera enim mulier, cum postrēmō vēnisset, nihil scīlicet invenire potuit; quārē mīlitēs, veniā contumēliae petītā, nūntiam incolumem abīre 5 passī sunt. Illa autem summā celeritātē ad castra Americāna contendit, imperātōremque certiōrem fēcit dē rēbus omnibus, quae in litterīs scrip̄tae erant.

## LESSON 78

*Fortune favors the Brave*

In exercitū Americānō ūlim erat centuriō quīdam, nō mine Iasper, quī semper in perīculīs maximīs libenter ver-  
10 sābātur. Sicut, cum Britannī castra quaedam oppugnā-  
rent, vēillumque Americānum tēlis abreptum in terram  
extrā mūnītiōnēs cecidisset, inter tēla, quae plūrima ho-  
stēs coniciēbant, ē castris ērūpit ille, vēillumque arreptum  
in vällō rursus posuit.

15 Ac paulō post, cum cōgnōvisset Americānōs paucōs ā  
Britannīs capitīs damnātōs Savannam ad mortem dēdūcī,  
ūnō cum comite profectus, ad fontem haud procul ab eā urbe  
in īnsidiīs latēbat, ut cīvibus suīs, sī posset, auxiliō esset.  
Mox in cōspectum vēnērunt captīvī, quōs mīlitēs decem

1. discerpsisset: discerpō, 3,  
-cerpsī, -cerptus, tear up. —  
frāgmenta: frāgmentum, -ī, N.,  
bit. — chartae: charta, -ae, F.,  
paper.

2. fuit: proved to be.  
4. contumēliae: translate the  
gen. "for" (cf. audāciae, p. 39,  
l. 2).  
6. contendit: pushed on.

9. libenter versābātur: freely,  
delighted to be.

11. vēillum (-ī, N.): flag, cf.  
the Roman flags shown on p. 162.

12. plūrima: freely, thick and  
fast.

16. capitīs: cf. p. 47, l. 16, and  
the note. — Savannam: see the  
note on p. 79, l. 21. — ad mortem:  
i.e. to execution.

custōdiēbant; ē quibus octō, ubi ad fontem perventum est, armīs sub arboribus relictīs, aquam haurīre properāvērunt. Tum Iasper eiusque amīcus ērūpērunt ē latebrīs, duōbusque custōdibus occīsīs mīlitēs cēterōs sē dēdere coēgērunt: 5 deinde cum captīvīs Britannicīs atque cīvībus, quōs servāverant, cōfēstīm ad castra Americāna sē contulērunt.

Haud semper autem Iasperō rēs tam fēliciter ēvēnērunt; paucīs enim post annīs interfectus est, cum summā audāciā prōcucurrisset ex aciē atque in hostium vāllō vēxillum 10 dēfixisset Americānum.

## LESSON 79

*Andrew Jackson*

Nunc mihi pauca dīcenda sunt dē rēbus gestīs Americānī cuiusdam, nōmine Iacsōnis, qui obscūrō locō nātus, postrēmō rei pūblicae prīnceps factus est. Quī adhūc puer in bellō, quod prīnum Britannī cum Americānīs gessērunt, 15 fortiter versātus, ūnā cum frātre ab hostibus captus, in carcere morbō gravī affectus est. Māter autem brevī effīcere potuit ut filiī ambō cum captīvīs Britannīs commūtārentur.

Multīs post annīs, cum Britannī iterum cum Americānīs

1. quibus: *i.e.* mīlitibus.—  
ad: *near*.
2. haurīre: hauriō, 4, hausī, haustus, *draw*.
3. duōbus: *the two*.
7. Iasperō, etc.: cf. the similar phrase, p. 43, l. 16.
8. cum: conjunction.
9. vēxillum: cf. p. 93, l. 11.
12. locō: *station*; for syntax, cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

13. adhūc: (*while*) *still*.—in bellō, quod prīnum: *i.e.* in prīmō bellō, quod.
16. efficere . . . ut: *freely, arrange that*; lit. what?
17. captīvīs: translate as adj.—commūtārentur: commūtō, 1, *exchange*; in connection with this verb, cum may be rendered “for.”
19. iterum: *i.e.* from the year 1812 on.

bellum gererent, Indī, quōdam castellō Americanōrum ex-pugnātō, nōn sōlum armātōs sed etiam mulierēs līberōsque summā crūdēlitāte occidērunt. Quā caede nūntiātā, Iacsō, dīlēctū habitō, quam celerrimē profectus est, ut hostīs co-  
5 ercēret; cumque multa mīlia passuum iter fēcisset, etsī milites labōrandō dēfessī semel iterumque negābant sē longius prōgressūrōs, pervēnit postrēmō ad castra munītis-sima, quae in rīpā flūminis Tallapūsae posuerant Indī.  
10 Ubi āriter pugnātum est; castra tamen sunt capta, hostēs que paene ad ūnum aut ibi periērunt aut in Flōridam fugere coāctī sunt. Victōriā potītus Iacsō summā cōmitātē rēgem Indōrum accēpit, quī equō vectus castra intrāre est ausus petītum ut frūmentō Americānī iuvārent mulierēs lībe-rōsque Indōs, quī in silvīs latentēs famem aegrē iam tole-  
15 rābant.

## LESSON 80

*Pirates Ashore*

Quondam in mari Atlanticō secundum lītus Americānum ultrō citrōque nāvigābant pīrātæ, quī omnibus locīs nāvēs vel Americānās vel Britannicās spoliābant; ē quibus ūnus, summae audāciae homō, liburnicīs praeerat complūribus.  
20 Is oīlim oppugnāre cōnstituit oppidum longinquum, quod numquam anteā spoliātum erat, cuiusque incolae locuplētēs esse dīcēbantur.

Sine dētrīmentō liburnicae in portum vēnērunt; tum

4. dīlēctū: dīlēctus, -ūs, M., levy.

5. etsī: modifying the preceding clause.

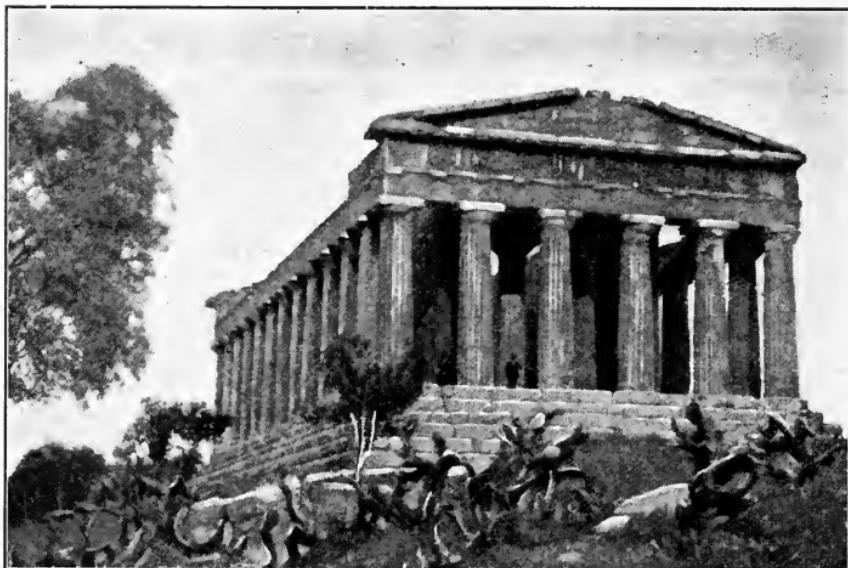
6. labōrandō: gerund.

11. victōriā: the same construction as with ūtor.

13. petītum: supine; another way of saying *ut peteret*. — frūmentō: (*a contribution of grain*).

14. latentēs: *in their hiding places*: lit. what?

17. nāvigābant: *kept sailing*.



TEMPLUM

The above building, found in Sicily, is of Grecian architecture. It is known as the Temple of Concord. Roman temples were regularly constructed on Greek models.

autem captīvus quīdam, quī minus diligenter custōdiēbātur, in mare clam exsiluit, ac nandō incolumis pervēnit ad lītus: quī sine morā oppidānōs dē cōnsiliīs pīrātūrum certiōrēs fēcit. Quō nūntiō acceptō, oppidānī summā diligentia  
5 bona sua cēlāre coepērunt. Deinde, postquam pīrātæ ē nāvibus ēgressī militēs paucōs, quī oppidō erant praesidiō relictī, in fugam coniēcērunt, cīvēs ipsī, aedibus clausīs, tēla in hostēs prīmō coniēcērunt plūrima; sed postrēmō, timōre dētrīmentī etiam maiōris coactī, sē maestī dēdidē-  
10 runt. Quōs omnīs pīrātæ, victōriā potītī, in templa quaēdām coēgērunt. Ubi illī fame sunt paene necātī; victōrēs enim interim tam bene sē habēbant, ut omnīnō captīvōrum miserōrum oblīviscerentur.

## LESSON 81

*Carrying the Tribute*

Abhinc multōs annōs Americānī, antequam rēs pūblica va-  
15 lida facta est, tribūtum pendere solēbant cuidam rēgī Africānō, nē pīrātæ eārum regiōnum (quī sub eius imperiō erant) nāvēs suās spoliārent. Olim, cum praefectus Americānus tribūti istīs ferendī causā ad Africam nāvigāset, rēx ille, quī forte nūntium cum dōnō Bȳzantium hōc ferē tempore

1. *minus*: *not very*; what use of the compar.?

4. *nūntiō*: *news*, or *information*.

5. *cēlāre*: *cēlō*, 1, *conceal*, or *hide*.

6. *paucōs*: cf. *pauci*, p. 90, 1.  
17. — *praesidiō*: cf. p. 65, l. 4.

10. *quōs omnīs*: cf. *qui omnēs*, p. 57, l. 8.

11. *coēgērunt*: *crowded*. — *victōrēs*: *victor*, -ōris, M, *victor*.

12. *tam bene sē habēbant*: *were having so good a time*.

15. *facta est*: *freely*, *had grown*. — *pendere*: *pendō*, 3, *pe-*  
*pendī*, *pēnsus*, *pay*.

16. *nē*: *so that . . . not*.

19. *Bȳzantium*: see the note on p. 79, l. 21.

ad rēgem suprēmum mittere volēbat (nam ipse quoque tribūtum pendere cōgēbatur), ab Americānīs postulāvit ut nāve suā hanc rem susciperent. Praefectus scilicet sē nōlle respondit; sed rēx, “Nōnne servī estis?” inquit: “nōnne 5 tribūtum mihi penditis? Hanc rem mehercle nisi cōfēstīm suscipiētis, nāvēs omnēs Americānae, quae in marī Medi-terrāneō nāvigant, ā pīrātīs statim capientur.” Praefectus igitur animō haud aequō Bȳzantium proficisci coāctus est: ubi autem rēx suprēmus Americānōs summō accēpit honōre; 10 cumque discēderent, ducī etiam dedit diplōma.

Cum nāvis paucīs post diēbus ad lītus Āfricae rursus appulsa esset, rēx Āfricānus, qui iam oblītus erat sē pollicitum esse nihil amplius ab Americānīs postulātū īrī, praefectum iussit iterum Bȳzantium nāvigāre; cumque id 15 recūsāret, etiam mortem praeſentem minātus est. Tum praefectus diplōma porrēxit; quō visō, tantus timor rēgis animū occupāvit, ut veniā contumēliārum petītā Americānōs sine morā redīre domum paterētur.

## LESSON 82

### *A Successful Ambuscade*

Eō tempore, quō colōnī cum Philippō, rēge Indōrum 20 clārō, bellum gerēbant, oppidō quōdam ā barbarīs incēnsō,

1. rēgem suprēmum: *i.e.* the Sultan.

2. pendere: cf. p. 97, l. 15.—  
ab: *of*.

4. nōnne: *i.e.* nōn + ne: this combination assumes the answer “yes.”

5. mehercle: interjection, *by my halidom*; lit. (*so help*) me, Hercules.

8. Bȳzantium: translate the acc. “for”; cf. p. 97, l. 19.

10. diplōma: acc. sing. of diplōma, -atis, N., *passport*.

13. postulātū īrī: what infin.?

15. recūsāret: *object to*; subject, praefectus. — minātus est: minor, *1, threaten*.

16. diplōma: cf. l. 10.

17. contumēliārum: cf. p. 93, l. 4, and the note.

19. quō: *when*, lit. *during which*.

magna vīs frūmentī ab eīs integra in agrīs relicta est. Quō cōgnitō, imperātor colōnōrum, tantam frūmentī cōpiam nōn temerē dīmittendam ratus, ab oppidō fīnitimō lēgātum cum militibus proficīscī iussit, ut frūgēs ad bellī sēdem reportāret. 5 Ille igitur iūmenta carrōsque statim coēgit multōs, ac cōnfēstī in agrōs illōs contendit; ubi nūllō impediente frūmentum omne in carrōs sine morā impositum est.

Postquam tamen cōpiās redūcere coepit, lēgātus silvās veritus (per quās tria mīlia passuum iter faciendum erat) 10 mīlitēs prīmō armīs expeditis prōgredī iussit. Cum vērō agmen ē silvā incolumē ēvāsisset, omnia pericula suōs iam effūgisce arbitrātus, viā minus diligenter explorātā, in īnsidiās subitō incidit, quās hostēs fēcerant in palūde quādam, per quam rīvus parvus fluēbat. Quem ad locum 15 ubi perventum est, repente audītus est undique ululātus Indōrum, tēlaque plūrima inmissa sunt. Quā rē novā permōtī mīlitēs nūllō modō resistere potuērunt, praeſertim cum numerō barbarī multō essent superiōrēs. Quīn etiam ē proeliō colōnī vix septem octōve effūgērunt; quārē prop- 20 ter clādem ibi acceptam hīc locus posteā “rīvus cruentus” appellābātur.

## LESSON 83

### *An Intrepid Commander*

Eōdem bellō quīdam colōnī in scaphis ōlim eō cōnsiliō profectī sunt, ut cum Indīs fīnitimīs aut pācem facerent,

3. fīnitimō: *i.e.* to the burned town.

4. frūgēs: frūx, frūgis, F., fruit (of the earth); pl., crop.—bellī sēdem: *i.e. the base of operations.*

5. iūmenta: iūmentum, -ī, N., *beast of burden.*—multōs: see the note on ratī, p. 82, l. 14.

12. arbitrātus, etc.: use but one part. in the English sentence.

13. incidit: incidō, 3, -cidī, fall into (in + cadō).

14. rīvus: brook.

19. octōve: *i.e.* octō + ve.

22. eōdem bellō: for syntax, cf. prīmō bellō, p. 62, l. 15.

aut eis indicerent bellum, si Philippum adiuvare perseverarent. E scaphis egressi, per agros contendebant coloni, cum subito ululatus auditus est, et barbari impetu repentinō militēs ad litus sē recipere coegerunt: nam in eo quoque proeliō Indi numerō erant multō superiōrēs; dux enim colonōrum quīndecim tantum militēs sēcum tum habebat.

Is autem, vir summae cōstantiae, locum idōneum nactus, suos hortatus est nē sē animō dēmitterent, et ipse acriter dīmicāvit. Dum rēs sic geritur, animadvertisit forte unum ē comitibus ita territum, ut nullō modō pugnare posset. Quō visō, hominem iussit lapidēs comportare, qui prō mūnitiōne ūsuī essent: quod cum iste faceret, sagitta subito lapidem percussit, quem manibus ferēbat; quō mīrāculō permōtus (nam vītam ā dīs ita servātam esse existimābat), animōs homō resūmpsīt, summāque virtute unā cum cēterīs pugnāvit.

Brevi tēla colonōrum dēficere coepērunt; sed nāvis adventū opportūnō servāti sunt. Dux tamen, cum nōllet Indōs putare sē timōre discessisse, etiam tum in agris paulum morātus est ad petasum petendum, quem ad fontem paulō ante reliquerat.

1. eis: cf. the note on Britan-nis, p. 92, l. 7.

4. ad: toward.

8. locum: position.

9. animō: for syntax, cf. the more familiar phrase, animō dēmissus.

11. forte: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12.

12. quō: neut.—lapidēs: lapis, -idis, M., stone.

13. prō: as, or for.—ūsuī: cf. p. 89, l. 8.—essent: note the

mood.—iste: the soldier.

14. manibus: cf. p. 7, l. 9.

15. mīrāculō: mīrāculum, -ī, N., providence, lit. strange happening.

16. animōs: courage.—resūmp-sit: resūmō, 3, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, recover.

19. cum nōllet: translate by a partic. phrase.

20. timōre: abl. of cause.

21. petasum: petasus, -ī, M., broad-brimmed hat.

# FIRST LATIN READER

## LESSON 84

### *Burned at the Stake*

Dē crūdēlitāte Indōrum multa nārrantur. Sicut, cum oppidum colōnōrum quoddam ā Gallis barbarīsque esset expugnātum, ampliusque quīnquāgintā oppidānī captī essent, hostēs cum captivis miserīs cōnfēstī domum contendērunt. Dum autem iter faciunt, ūnus ē captivīs, homō obēsus, qui onus grave ferre coāctus tardius sequēbātur, sē posse clam effugere ratus, onus subitō in viā dēposuit atque in arbore cavā latēre cōnātus est.

Hic autem ab Indīs brevī repertus, veste dētractā per nivem nūdus prōgredī est coāctus; quō modō usque ad noctem iter factum est. Tum barbarī, captivō ad arborem religātō, ignem pedetemptim admovēbant, dōnec homō moribundus vīsus est; deinde rursus paulum redūcēbant, quō diūtius cruciārētūr. Quīn etiam, nē hōc quidem contentī, frūsta abscidērunt vīscerū, ut cruciātū captivī oculōs suōs pāscerent, cum interim canerent aut saltārent rīdentēs; et postrēmō, nē contumēlia ūlla deesset, corpus

3. amplius: *i.e. more (than)*; cf. such expressions as “*above a thousand*.”

6. obēsus (-a, -um): *stout*. — tardius: *absol. compar.*

7. onus: *onus, -eris, N., load*.

9. hic: *the adv.* — veste: *i.e. vestimentō.*

11. iter factum est: *translate by an active form.*

12. ignem: *the fire*. — admovēbant: *kept moving up*.

13. redūcēbant: *sc. eum (i.e. ignem)*. For the force of this imperfect, cf. rapiēbant, p. 7, l. 17.

14. quō: *replacing ut, as it regularly does when the purpose clause contains a comparative*. — cruciārētūr: *cruciō, i., (keep in) torture*. — hōc: *(neut.) noun*.

15. contentī: *contentus, -a, -um, with abl., content (with)*. — frūsta: *not frūstrā*. — vīscerū: *vīscus, -eris, N., (sing. and pl.) flesh*.

16. pāscerent: *pāscō, 3, pāvī, pāstus, with abl., feast . . . (upon)*. Strictly, cruciātū is abl. of means.

17. deesset: *what is the literal force of the word (dē + sum)?*

mortui in favillam residere passi sunt, quō posteā maiōre amici dolore afficerentur, cum eius cāsum vidērent miserium.

## LESSON 85

*An Early Morning Surprise*

Ōlim Gallī Indique castellum quoddam hieme expugnare cōstituerant. Quārē per nivem altam summō labōre prōgressi, nocte intempestā in silvā haud procul ab oppidō castra collocāvērunt; deinde, impedimentis praesidiō paučis relictis, vigiliā quārtā ferē exāctā ad mūnītiōnēs pedetemptim accessērunt. Nam per nivem gelū rigidam iter iam faciendum erat, timēbantque nē sonus ā colōnīs audīrētūr; quam ob rem ab imperātōre iussī erant paulum prōgredī, tum paulum stāre, tum iterum paulum prōgredī, ut strepitūs exercitūs per nivem iter facientis sonus tantum ventōrum vidērētūr. At nihil suspicābantur colōnī; quīn etiam custōdēs ipsī somnō gravissimō quiēscēbant. Itaque hostēs facillimē in castellum pervēnērunt; nix enim ūnā ex partē tam alta fuit, ut mūnītiōnēs vix exstārent. Tum dēmum, ululātū ācī sublātō, barbarī colōnōs perterritōs cōnfēstīm dētrāxērunt ē lectīs, et undique caedēs incendiaque miscuērunt.

1. mortui: as noun (gen. masc.). — favillam: favilla, -ae, F., *embers*. — residere: residō, 3, -sēdī, *sink down*. — quō: cf. p. 101, 1.

14. — maiōre: (*all the*) greater.

2. amici: nom. pl.

4. hieme: abl. of time when or within which.

7. paučis: as (masc.) noun.

8. exāctā: from exigō; construe with vigiliā, and cf. the note on p. 91, l. 17.

9. gelū: gelus, -ūs, M., *frost*. —

rigidam: rigidus, -a, -um, *crusted, lit. stiff*.

10. nē: note the nature of the governing verb.

13. facientis: modifying exercitūs. — sonus: pred. nom. with vidērētūr (sc. esse). — tantum: the adv.

16. ūnā ex parte: cf. omnibus ex partibus, p. 44, l. 6.

17. exstārent: exstō, 1, —, —, *project, or appear (above)*.

19. caedēs, etc.: cf. p. 78, l. 9.

In castellō praedā multā hostēs potīti sunt atque ad vesperum, caede incendiīsque aliquandō dēfessī, sē ad silvam contulērunt. Victōria tamen nōn incruenta parta erat: nam intrā castellum erant complūra tēcta minōra; 5 quōrum ūnum cum barbarī expugnāre frūstrā cōnārentur, tēlīs inde coniectīs multī interfectī erant.

## LESSON 86

*Some Very Distinguished Geese*

Quibus rēbus admoneor dē impetū, quem Galli antiqui abhinc multōs annōs in Capitōlium fēcērunt, cum exercitūs vīcissent Rōmānōs, urbemque ipsam incendissent. Prīmō 10 interdiū hostēs adorti sunt, summāque audāciā saxa aspera ascendērunt; sed Rōmāni dēsuper eōrum aciem tam facile tantāque caede dēiēcērunt, ut numquam posteā idem audērent.

Deinde autem, cum multōs diēs Capitōlium obsessum 15 esset nec praesidium (quamquam summa erat cibi inopia) sē dēdere vellet, noctū Capitōlium oppugnāre hostēs cōstituērunt. Itaque sēmitā asperā, quam paucis ante diēbus

1. *praedā*: for syntax, cf. *victoriā*, p. 95, l. 11.—*ad*: *toward*.

2. *aliquandō*: *i.e.* *dēmum*.

3. *incruenta*: *incruentus*, -a, -um, lit. *bloodless*; translate freely.  
—*parta erat*: from *pariō*.

5. *quōrum*: neut.

7. *Gallī*: as on p. 52, l. 12.—*antiqui*: *antiquus*, -a, -um, *ancient*.

8. *cum*: *after*.—*exercitūs*: note the ū.

9. *ipsam*: *proper*. The Romans were so demoralized that

they made no attempt to hold any part of Rome other than the lofty and isolated Capitol.

10. *interdiū*: in contrast to *noctū*, l. 16.—*hostēs*: subject of the verb.

11. *dēsuper*: adv., *from above*.

12. *idem audērent*: *repeated the venture*; lit. what?

14. *deinde*: *later*.

15. *nec*: *and yet . . . not*.

17. *sēmitā*: abl. of way by which (*sēmita*, -ae, F., *footpath*).

Gallus quidam forte animadverterat, tertia ferē vigiliā unus miles inermis paulum ascendit; cui deinde arma trādita sunt. Is sequentēs adiuvābat, illī rursus aliōs. Quō modō Gallī complūrēs ad summum collem tantō silentiō pervēnē-  
5 rūnt, ut custōdēs nihil sentirent; quīn etiam nē canēs quidem excitātī sunt. Sed repente ānserēs Iūnōnis sacrī clangōrem clārum ēdidērunt: quae rēs Rōmānīs salūtī fuit; nam M. Mānlius, vir summae cōstantiae, sonō ācrī auditō, comitēs ad arma vocāns cōfēstīm in pīnum Gallum im-  
10 petum fēcit ācerriūm, eumque dē saxō prōiēcit. Gallus cāsū suō aliōs quoque dēturbāvit; et hostēs, magnō dētri-  
mentō acceptō, etiam hōc cōnātū dēsistere coāctī, in castra maestī sē recēpērunt.

## LESSON 87

*An Army of Two*

Longum est cōnsilia nārrāre, quibus ūsī suūt colōnī eīs  
15 in bellīs, quae cum Britannīs et Indīs gessērunt. Sicut  
ōlim, cum per prōvinciam Noveborācēnsem nāvis Britannica  
adversō flūmine nāvigāret, in rīpā forte stābant līberī duo;  
quī veritī nē, sī agricolās armātōs exspectāssent, auxilium

2. *inermis* (-is, -e): *without*  
*(his) arms*, lit. *unarmed*.

3. *sequentēs*: acc. masc., *those following*. — *illī*: supply a verb from the preceding clause.

4. *summum*: *the top of*; cf. the use of *pīmā*, p. 22, l. 7.

6. *ānserēs*: *ānser*, -eris, m., *goose*. — *sacrī*: *sacer*, -cra, -crum, with gen., *sacred(to)*. — *clangōrem*: *clangor*, -ōris, m., *cry*.

7. *ēdidērunt*: from *ēdō* (not *ēdō*).

8. **M.** : i.e. *Mārcus*.

11. *cāsū*: *fall*. — *dēturbāvit*: *dēturbō*, I, *carry off (one's) feet*.

12. *cōnātū dēsistere*: cf. p. 21, l. 3.

14. *longum est*: *'twould be a long (tale)*; cf. the similar idiomatic use of the present indicative of *possum*, e.g. p. 41, l. 7.

17. *forte*: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12.

18. *exspectāssent*: *should wait for*; lit. *should have waited for*.

sērō adferrētur, cōnstituērunt, sī possent, Britannōs ipsi dēterrēre.

Post domum, quae in prōmunturiō posita erat, silva erat parva. Itaque liberī, cum ad aedēs cucurrisse, armis 5 cōfēstī arreptī, portā posticā in silvam clam ēgressī sunt; tum autem palam ē silvā in aedēs cum armis prope-rāvērunt. Quod idem cum saepius fēcissent, Britanni, quī cōspiciēbant procul nec quicquam plānē vidēre poterant, manū magnam in aedēs convēnisse ratī, pedetemptim 10 tamen prōgredi persevērāvērunt: dum vērō praeter prō-munturium nāvigant, subitō alter ex liberīs inmīsit tēlum ac gubernātōrem graviter vulnerāvit; quī cum prōlapsus gubernācula ē manib⁹ dīmīsisset, nāvis ē cursū flūmine se-cundō ferri copta est. Quam ob rem Britanni, sē sic omnīs 15 interfici posse arbitrātī, animō minimē aequō sē recēpērunt ad oppidum, unde nūper profectī erant.

## LESSON 88

### *Horatius at the Bridge*

Quae rēs memorābilis mē admonet dē facinore similī sed maiōre, quod Rōmae antiquitus ab Horātiō quōdam factum esse trāditur. Cum enim bellum ā rēge Porsinnā esset 20 Rōmānis indictum, Iāniculum impetū repentinō captum est

1. sērō: adv., *late*; in this context, *too late*.

3. domum: (*their*) *home*. — posita erat: *had been built*.

5. portā: *door*; for syntax, cf. sēmitā, p. 103, l. 17. — posticā: *posticus, -a, -um, back*.

7. idem: note the gender, and cf. p. 103, l. 12. — saepius: *over and over again*; what use of the compar.?

8. quicquam: neut. of quis-quam (cf. p. 2, l. 11).

11. alter ex: *one of (the two)*.

13. secundō: cf. p. 87, l. 18.

14. copta est: cf. the note on *coetus* est, p. 66, l. 12.

18. Rōmae: note that this is a town name.

20. Iāniculum: a hill on the west bank of the Tiber, opposite Rome.



Pōns

Until the second century B.C., the only bridge across the Tiber at Rome was of wood. Afterward several stone bridges were built, one of which is shown above.

Rōmānīque perterritī trāns Tiberim in urbem quam celerimē fugere coepērunt. Tum Horātius, quī sentiēbat hostēs, nisi pōns esset perruptus, urbe quoque statim potītūrōs, cīvis suōs hortātus est ut pontem ignī ferrōque perrumpērent, cum ipse impetum hostium sōlus sustinēret.

Itaque cum duōbus amīcīs fidēlibus, quōs pudor eum dēserere nōn patiēbātur, ad prīnum aditum pontis fortiter prōgressus, audācissimē ibi cōstitit. Quā audāciā obstupefactī, hostēs prīmō paulum morātī sunt, deinde impetum 10 ācriōrem fēcērunt; Horātius vērō, minās contumēliāsque vōciferāns, summā virtūte dīmicābat, nec locō cessit priusquam post tergum pōns perruptus est. Tum in Tiberim armātus dēsiluit, et ad rīpam alteram incolumis pervēnit, quō paulō ante, exiguā parte pontis adhūc relictā, amīcōs 15 duo sē recipere coēgerat.

Sic memoriae trāditum est; Līvius autem (ā quō haec nārrantur) facinus hoc apud posterōs plūs glōriae quam fidei habuisse palam cōfītētur.

1. quam celerrimē: translate freely.

3. pōns (pontis, M.): *bridge*. — esset perruptus: cf. exspectāsent, p. 104, l. 18; for mood, cf. admoveantur, p. 61, l. 14.

4. ferrō: *ferrum*, -ī, N., *iron*; freely, *the ax*.

5. cum: *while*.

6. pudor (-ōris, M.): *shame*.

7. patiēbātur: we would say "would not allow"; cf. vidēbant, p. 36, l. 7. — aditum: *aditus*, -ūs, M., *approach*. — pontis: cf. l. 3.

8. obstupefactī: *obstupefactus*, -a, -um, part., *amazed*.

10. minās: *mina*, -ārum, F.: *threats*.

11. vōciferāns: *vōciferor*, 1, *shout out*. — dīmicābat: *fought on*. — locō: cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

13. dēsiluit: *dēsiliō*, 4, -siluī, *leap down*.

14. quō: the adv.; cf. p. 47, l. 2. — exiguā parte, etc.: translate by a "while" clause.

16. memoriae, etc.: cf. p. 85, l. 6, and translate freely. — haec: neuter.

17. apud posterōs: *i.e. in the following generations*; lit. what?

— plūs: see multus. — glōriae: partitive gen.

18. cōfītētur: *cōfiteor*, 2, -fessus sum, *admit*.

## LESSON 89

*A Favor Repaid*

—Olim Indus ignōtus in dēversōrium ēsuriēns vēnit; cum autem diū frūstrā vēnātus erat, cibum emere nōn potuit. Sed colōnus quīdam, quī animadverterat fame hominem esse paene cōfectum, caupōnam iussit cibum dare, ipseque 5 pecūniā solvit. Indus colōnō grātiās maximās ēgit pollicitusque est sē semper beneficium memoriā custōditūrum.

Paucis post annis colōnus ipse ab Indis captus est et in Canadā dēductus; ubi ā dominō in silvās saepe lignātiōnis causā missus est. Olim, cum procul ab aedibus labōrāret, 10 subitō in cōspectum vēnit Indus quīdam, quī eum hortātus est ut paulō post in locum certum ad colloquium venīret. Colōnus haud invītus pollicitus est; tum īsidiās veritus cōsilium mūtāvit, neque ad locum vēnit cōnstitūtum. Paucis post diēbus Indus eum iterum convēnit, iterumque 15 hortātus est ut aliō diē ad locum dēstinātūm īret.

Quō ubi perventum est, Indus sē sequī iussit, ac per silvās celeriter profectus est. Alter, etsi timor eiūs occupābat animum, finēmque itineris omnīnō nesciēbat, est tamen secūtus; cumque diēs multōs per silvās iter fēcissent, pos- 20 strēmō ad oppidum pervaenērunt, quod colōnus laetus ut suum cōgnōvit. Tum dux, “Ego is sum,” inquit, “quem tū abhinc multōs mēnsis cibō iūvistī. Hōc modō referō grātiām.”

1. ēsuriēns (-entis, part.): hungry.—cum: inasmuch as.

4. cōfectum: exhausted.—caupōnam: caupōna, -ae, F., mis-  
tress of (the) inn.

8. lignātiōnis: cf. the use of  
the gerundive with causā to ex-  
press purpose.

14. Indus: the Indian.

15. dēstinātūm: dēstinātus, -a,  
-um, designated.

16. sē: obj. of sequī.  
17. eiūs: modifier of animum.

18. finēm: contrast finēs.  
20. ut suum: as his own.

21. is: the man.  
22. grātiām: contrast the  
meaning of grātiās, l. 5.

## LESSON 90

*An Earthquake in Colonial Times*

Cum iam colōnī plūrimī Britanniam Novam incolēbant, oīlim noctū, dum hominēs ferē omnēs somnō gravī quiēscunt, repente mōtus terrae maximus factus est. Sonō horrendō ad aurīs adlātō, colōnī graviter permōtī ē lectis cōnfēstim 5 exsiluērunt, tēcta ratī undique labefactārī; quīn etiam erant quī timērent nē vēnisset diēs mundī ultima aut certē ades- set. Interim in marī nautae mōtum sēnsērunt, crēdēbantque nāvīs suās in saxa abscondita dēlātās esse; in agrīs autem bovēs, cum mūgitūs maximōs ēderent, omnīs in partēs per- 10 territī cucurrērunt.

Quīdam cōfīrmant sē tum vīdisse ignem per terram currere; ac certē quōdam locō erat terrae hiātus, ex quō pulvis levis fūmō similis aliquamdiū efferēbātur. Diēbus proximīs complūrēs cōsecūtī sunt mōtūs, sed minōrēs; 15 multīque hominēs, quī adhūc religiōnem sprēverant, propter timōrem ad cultum deōrum sē convertērunt. Trāditum quoque est, aquam cuiusdam fontis, quī terrae mōtū humī dēpressus erat, posteā hieme interdum glaciem factam

3. mōtus (-ūs, M.): lit. *movement*.

5. labefactārī: *labefactō*, i., *shake down*. — erant quī: *there were (some) who*. The subjunctive is used regularly after any tense of sunt quī or nēmō est quī.

6. mundī: mundus, -ī, M., *the world*.

8. autem: *moreover*.

9. cum . . . ēderent: note the ē, and translate by a partic. phrase. — mūgitūs: mūgitus, -ūs, M., *bellowing*.

11. quīdam: *here, noun.—per: along*.

12. hiātus (-ūs, M.): *with gen., cleft (in)*, lit. *yawning (of)*.

13. levis (-is, -e): *light (of weight)*. — efferēbātur: *i.e. kept rising*; lit. *what?*

16. cultum: *cultus, -ūs, M., worship*.

17. humī: *into the ground*; what is the commoner meaning?

18. dēpressus erat: *dēprimō*, 3, -pressī, -pressus, *sink*. — glaciem factam esse: *i.e. froze solid*.

esse, quamquam anteā omnī tempore anni ūberius fluere cōsuēverat.

## LESSON 91

*Evils of the Slave Trade*

Gentēs, quae Āfricam incolunt, quondam inter sē saepe dīmicābant, captivique ā negōtiātōribus empti, nāvibus in 5 terrās sunt trānsportātī diversās, ubi dominis novis trāditī summīs labōribus aetātem in agrīs agēbant. Dum autem nāvigant, condiciō captivōrum miserrima erat; nam trāditum est dominōs, quī quaestum volēbant facere quam maximum neque aliud cūrābant, valētūdinī salūtīque ser- 10 vōrum operam minimam dedisse.

Quī igitur miseri in locīs angustīs foedīsque procul ā lūce caelīque spīritū saepe claudēbantur. Quīn etiam interdum, ut nāvēs quam plūrimōs portārent, inter sē vinculis iūnctī, supīnī diēs noctēsque iacēre coāctī sunt, spatiō minimō 15 tantum relictō, ubi paucī vice alternā sē exercēre possent: quōrum cruciātus, tempestāte coortā, maximus erat; tum enim forīs omnibus clausīs vix respīrāre poterant, multīque

1. *quamquam*: *whereas*. —  
ūberius: adv. (positive not in use),  
*very freely*.

4. *nāvibus*: *by ship*.

6. *labōribus*: translate as sing.  
— aetātem: cf. *vītam* with the same verb, p. 61. 13. — dum . . . nāvīgant, etc.: *freely, it was, however, while they were on shipboard, that, etc.*

9. *aliud*: *anything else*.

11. *quī . . . miserī*: *the poor wretches*. — *locīs*: *quarters*. — *foedīs*: *foedus, -a, -um, foul*.

12. *caelī*: (*open*) *air*. — *spīritū*: *spīritus, -ūs, M., breath*.

13. *inter sē*: *i.e. to one another*. — *iūnctī*: *iungō, 3, iūnxī, iūnctus, bind*.

15. *paucī*: *i.e. small groups*. — vice alternā, abl. phrase, *in turn*. — *exercēre*: *exerceō, 2, -ūi, -itus, exercise*. — *possent*: note the mood.

16. *quōrum*: (*but*) *their*. — tempestāte coortā: translate by a "when" clause.

17. *forīs*: *forus, -ī, M., gangway*. — *respīrāre*: *respirō, 1, breathe*.

moriēbantur. Quō modō saepe factum est ut vīvī, vinculīs retentī, inter mortuōs iacēre cōgerentur, dōnec posterō diē nautae solverent mortuōs corporaque in mare abicerent.

## LESSON 92

*A Pirate Outdone*

Illis temporibus, cum servī plūrimī ex Āfricā in terrās diversās trānsportārentur, saepe in marī coniūrātiōnem inter sē nautae fēcērunt, dominōque nāvis aut coniectō in vincula aut interfēctō, ducem novum ipsī dēligēbant; quō modō pīrātae factī secundum lītus Āfricae ultrō citrōque nāvigābant et nāvēs gentium spoliābant omnium.

Quōrum ē numerō quīdam in portum ōlim vectī longin-quum, ubi in lītore collocāta erant castra parva Britannica, lēgātum tēla aurumque ē castrīs ad sē mittere summā superbiā iussērunt. Ille vērō, vir maximae cōstantiae, aurum respondit sē nōn datūrum esse, sed tēla libenter mis-sūrum, sī eōrum nāvis propius accessisset. Tum pīrātae īrā commōtī castra ācerrimē adortī sunt, ac lēgātus Britannicus, postquam tēla dēfēcērunt ē castrīs sē recipere coāctus, postrēmō ab hostibus captus est; quī eum cum custōdibus cōfēstī ad ducem mīsērunt. Iste scīlicet

1. moriēbantur: cf. rapiēbant,  
p. 7, l. 17.—factum est ut: cf.  
p. 74, l. 15.

3. solverent . . . abicerent:  
translate both the subjunctives  
“should.”

5. marī: *the high seas.*

8. pīrātae: predicate nom.

9. nāvēs: *commerce.*

10. ē: *of.*

12. aurum: do not confuse aurum with auris.

14. libenter: cf. the note on p. 93, l. 9.

15. accessisset: cf. esset per-ruptus, p. 107, l. 3.

16. īrā commōtī: freely, filled with wrath.

18. cum custōdibus: *i.e. under guard.*—ducem: (*their*) chief.

hominem horrendis exsecratiōibus accēpit, quod animō tam obstinātō rēsistere ausus erat; lēgātus autem minimē territus audācter respondit atque etiam maiōribus exsecratiōibus quam dux ipse ūsus est. Quae rēs ei salūtī fuit; 5 nam pīrātae cēterī, novā rē dēlectātī, cachinnōs sustulērunt maximōs et ultrō vitam hominī concessērunt, quod male dīcendō ducem ipsum superāre potuerat.

## LESSON 93

*Colonization in Africa*

Americānī Britannīque, cum dēmum plānē coepissent cōgnōscere mala, quae ab emptiōne servōrum oriuntur, 10 colōniās in Āfricam statuērunt dēdūcendās esse, in quās libertīnī mitterentur; illīsque temporibus erant etiam qui servōs ferē omnēs postrēmō sic in patriam redūcī posse existimārent.

Colōniae, quae prīmō sunt eō dēductae, nōn erant validae, 15 et saepe cum incolīs Āfricānīs pugnandum erat. Sicut oīlim, cum colōnī quīdam prōmunturiō īnsulāque emptīs

1. exsecratiōibus: exsecratiō, -ōnis, F., curse.

5. novā rē: at the unexpected turn (of events); abl. of cause.  
— dēlectātī: dēlectātus, -a, -um, part., highly amused, lit. delighted.  
— cachinnōs: cachinnus, -ī, M., roar of laughter.

7. dicendō: abl. of specification.

9. mala: as (neut.) noun; cf. the somewhat similar use of the neut. bona.—emptiōne servōrum: freely, traffic in slaves; lit. what?

— oriuntur: orior, 4, ortus sum, arise (cf. cōorior).

10. in Āfricam . . . dēdūcendās esse: freely, ought to be planted in Africa.

11. libertīnī: libertīnus, -ī, M., freedman.—mitterentur: note the mood.

12. patriam: i.e. (their) right-ful country.—posse: could.

13. existimārent: cf. the note on erant qui, p. 109, l. 5.

14. eō: the adv.; for meaning, cf. quōd, p. 107, l. 14.

oppidum parvum in litore condidissent, nātiōnēs proximae molestē ferēbant peregrīnōs illic cōnsēdisse; verēbantur enim nē iūra sua vetera āmitterent, emptiōque servōrum (quā ex rē quaestum magnum faciēbant) mox tōta reprimērētur. Quārē, armātis undique convocātis, in oppidum colōnōrum repente impetum fēcērunt ācerrimū. Intrā mūnitiōnēs erant dux aeger et trīgintā quīnque tantum hominēs, quī arma ferre possent; at illī, cum in proeliō quīndecim ex ipsōrum numerō aut vulnerātī aut interfectī essent, hostēs praedā occupātōs postrēmō in fugam coniēcērunt. Paucīs autem post diēbus oppugnātiō ā barbarīs redintegrāta est; quī nē tum quidem rem bene gessērunt. Itaque, pāce iam dēmum factā, haec quidem colōnia paulātīm numerō vīribusque aucta est.

## LESSON 94

*A Prize Won and Lost*

15 Olim, cum nāvis longa Americāna per mare Mediterrāneum nāvigāret, nautae procul vēlum vīdērunt; quō vīsō, praefectus, liburnicās pīrātārum haud procul abesse ratus, suōs summā celeritātē īsequī iussit. Dum autem vēlis rēmīsque contendunt, subitō nāvis in saxīs absconditīs adhaesit, neque ullō modō dētrūdī poterat. Quō cāsū

2. molestē ferēbant, etc.: *i.e.*  
were much wrought up that, etc.  
— illic: adv., there.

4. tōta: translate as if an adv.  
6. intrā: *behind*.

8. cum: *after*.  
9. ipsōrum: *their*.  
10. occupātōs: *busied*.  
12. nē . . . quidem: see the Vocab.  
13. haec quidem colōnia: freely,

*this particular colony*; lit. what?  
(Do not confuse *quidem* with *quīdam*.)

14. vīribus: contrast the meaning of *vīs* and *vīrēs* (see the Vocab.).

19. rēmīs: *rēmus*, -ī, M., *oar*. Roman ships often had both sails and oars, and *vēlis rēmīsque* came to be a standing phrase for “at full speed.”

secundum lītus nūntiātō, pīrātae oppugnandī causā undique convēnērunt, et Americānī, etsī, ut nāvem levārent, in mare iēcerant omnia, postrēmō sē dēdere coāctī sunt.

Quā victōriā partā, rēx pīrātarūm, veritus nē aliae nāvēs 5 longae oppidum suum oppugnārent, Americānōs miserōs mūnītiōnēs fīrmāre coēgit, cum interim ā pīrātīs captivī tantā diligentiā custōdiēbantur, ut, quamquam diēs noctēsque dē fugā cōgitābant, rem numquam perficere possent.

Eis nautīs, quī noctū quoque labōrāre volēbant, pecūniām 10 dedit rēx, cum opera sua vellet quam mātūrrimē perficī; illī autem pecūniām acceptam statim prōfūdērunt, et ēbrii per oppidum vagantēs iniūriās oppidānīs saepe intulērunt. Tum mīrīs modis poenās dedisse dīcuntur; hominis enim 15 supīnī sola pedum verberābantur, idque saepe tam vehementer ut sanguis exīret. Interdum autem, pecūniā līctōribus datā, storeis interpositīs nautae verberābantur, cum interim lēgātus huic reī praepositus (quī tamen extrā forēs carceris morārī solēbat) ex clāmōribus iūdicābat hominēs cruciātūs patī maximōs.

## LESSON 95

### *A Prize Won and Lost (Continued)*

20 Interim pīrātae longam nāvem Americānam dē saxīs dētrūserant; quam ob rem captivī scilicet etiam molestius

1. oppugnandī causā: freely, *to the attack*. What part of the verb is oppugnandī?

2. levārent: levō, 1, *lighten*.

10. vellet: *he was anxious (that)*. — mātūrrimē: from mātūrē.

11. prōfūdērunt: prōfundō, 3, fūdī, -fūsus, *squander*. — ēbrii: ēbrius, -a, -um, *intoxicated*.

13. mīrīs modis: transl. as sing. — hominis: modifying pedum, l. 14.

14. supīnī: (*placed flat*) on his back. — sola: solum, -ī, N., sole (of the foot). — verberābantur: verberō, 1, *beat*. — idque: freely, *and that too*; strictly, id is subject of fiēbat supplied.

15. sanguis (-inis, M.): *blood*. — exīret: freely, *flowed*. — līctōribus: līctor, -ōris, M., *policeman*.

16. storeis: storea, -ae, F., mat.

ferēbant nāvem suam in hostium potestātem vēnisse: itaque eōrum dux, Bēnbrigius nōmine, litterās clam mīsit, quibus hortātus est alium praefectum Americānum, quī eōdem in marī nāvigābat, ut cīvibus auxiliō venīret prae-  
5 damque ē manibus hostium ēripere cōnārētur. Ille, litterīs acceptīs, suspīciōnis vītandae causā liburnicam mīsit; quaē nocte intempestā portum ingressa, ad nāvem longam cursū tam incertō nāvigāvit, ut pīrātae quī in eā custōdiās agēbant, veritī nē liburnica in nāvem inlīderētur, magnā vōce guber-  
10 nātōrī imperārent ut ancorās iaceret. Is autem respondit ancorās āmissās esse.

Quō respōnsō dēceptī, pīrātae liburnicām vagantem pro-  
pius accēdere patiēbantur, cum subitō ex eā septuāgintā  
armātī gladiis dēstrīctīs in nāvem longam ascendērunt  
15 atque in hostīs perturbātōs impetum fēcērunt ācerriūm.  
Pīrātae fortissimē dīmicāvērunt; brevī autem paene ad  
ūnum occīsī sunt. Tum, cum reliquī sē in mare iēcissent,  
ignēs multīs simul locīs nāvī longae Americānī ipsī admōvē-  
runt, quattuorque tantum vulnerātīs, liburnicā salvā ad  
20 classem sē recēpērunt.

Paulō post oppidum ipsum classe est oppugnātum,  
atque invītus rēx pīrātarūm captīvōs Americānōs incolumēs  
abīre patī coāctus est.

3. quibus: cf. the note on p. 38, l. 16.

4. cīvibus auxiliō: cf. the same construction with the verb sum.

6. liburnicam: this being the type of vessel used by the pirates themselves (cf. p. 113, l. 17).

8. eā: i.e. nāve longā.

9. magnā: see the Vocab. for the varied meanings of this adj.

12. respōnsō: noun.—dēceptī:

dēcipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, *throw off (one's) guard.* — vagantem: erratic; lit. what? (cf. vagantēs, p. 114, l. 12). — propius: absol. compar., *very close.*

14. dēstrīctīs: dēstrīctus, -a, -um, part., drawn.

19. quattuor: as noun. — salvā: i.e. incolumī; translate the abl. by "with."

22. invītus: translate by a phrase. — incolumēs: *scot free.*

## LESSON 96

*A Mysterious Disappearance*

Colōniis multīs iam in Americam dēductīs, Galli etiam in Indōrum finēs sacerdōtēs mittere cōnsuēverant, nōn sōlum ut barbarī ad suam religiōnem converterentur, sed etiam ut illī amīcī essent, sī quandō cum Britannīs dīmīcāndūm esset. Quī hominēs sānctī interdum maximīs in periculis versābantur; sīcūt ōlim in regiōnibus longinquīs, quae posteā civitātis Noveborācēnsis pars factae sunt, sacerdōtēs complūrēs, quī cum negōtiātōribus paucīs castellūm parvūm ibi tenēbant, subitō certiōrēs factī sunt Indōs peregrīnōs omnīs occīdere cōnstituisse.

Palam fugere nōn audēbant sacerdōtēs, neque eīs ūllae erant nāvēs, quibus ad Canadam veherentur. Itaque clam intrā castellū scaphās facere statim coepērunt; deinde, postquam omnia ad fugam iam sunt parāta, barbarōs ad convīvium vocāvērunt. Illī convēnērunt laetī; cumque ēdissent omnia, quae sacerdōtēs apposuerant, domum regressī in tabernāculīs mox sōpītī iacēbant. Tum Galli silentiō scaphās ad rīpam portāvērunt, et flūmine secundō ad Canadam versus profectī sunt.

Māne Indi vidērunt castellū clausūm; quā rē animadversā, prīmō sacerdōtēs vōta facere crēdēbant. Postrēmō tamen, fenestrīs īgressī, intus esse nēminem

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. colōniis . . . dēductīs:                | 14. omnia: note the gender.        |
| translate by a "when" clause.              | 15. convīvium: convīvium, -ī,      |
| 4. sī quandō: cf. p. 54, l. 4.             | N., feast. Cf. the illustration on |
| 5. sānctī: sānctus, -a, -um, .             | the opposite page.                 |
| pious.                                     | 21. vōta facere: to be at prayers  |
| 6. versābantur: freely, were exposed (to). | (vōtūm, -ī, N., prayer).           |
| 11. eīs: dat. case.                        | 22. fenestrīs: cf. the note on     |
|  | p. 76, l. 3.                       |



CONVIVIUM

The Oriental fashion of reclining at meals was much in vogue among the Greeks and Romans. The above illustration is taken from a wall decoration at Pompeii.

timōre maximō sēnsērunt; nesciēbant enim Gallis ullās esse scaphās, eōsque arte magicā effūgisse iūdicābant.

## LESSON 97

*Early Days in Liberia*

Cum in Āfricā abhinc multōs annōs condita esset rēs pūblica, quae Liberia appellātur, incolae eius regiōnis no-  
5 vae cīvitātī inimīcissimī erant. Nam advenae statuerant emptiōnem servōrum reprimendam esse, Āfrī autem quae-  
stum suum dīmittere nōlēbant.

Ōlim prope colōniam quandam subitō multitūdō barbarō-  
rum armātōrum per silvam viam rumpere audīta est. Sed  
10 in oppidō arma multa apud saċerdōtem quendam condita  
erant; qui, ūnā cum duōbus fabrīs, quī eīsdem in aedibus  
habitābant, tēla cōfēstīm in hostis inmittere coepit, mul-  
tōsque vulnerāvit. Dux tamen Āfrōrum paucīs cum comi-  
tibus fortiter prōgressus iam coepit perrumpere pālōs, quī  
15 circum aedēs in terrā dēfixī erant. Illum autem ūnus ex  
fabrīs statim tēlō interfēcit, barbarique cēterī, hōc cāsū per-  
terrītī, cōfēstīm vertērunt terga et quam celerrimē in sil-  
vam sē contulērunt. At paulō post, molestē ferentēs ducem  
mortuum in colōnōrum potestāte relictum, corporis quaerendī

1. timōre maximō: *to their great alarm*; lit. what?

4. Liberia: note the significance of the name (cf. libertās).

6. emptiōnem servōrum: cf. p. 112, l. 9.—reprimendam: translate the gerundive “must.”

9. viam: (*their*) way. — rumpere: translate as if a present part. (rumpō, 3, rūpī, ruptus, lit. break).

10. apud: *at the house of*; what are other meanings of this word?

11. fabrīs: faber, -brī, M., carpenter.

12. tēla . . . inmittere coepit: opened fire.

14. pālōs: pālus, -ī, M., stake; pl., palisade.

19. in . . . potestāte: freely, in the hands.—relictum: sc. esse.

causā rediērunt, summāque virtūte identidem impetum in aedēs fēcērunt ācerrum, dōnec, cum hōram amplius dīmīcātum esset, subitō proeliō dēstitērunt et rursus maestī in silvam regressī sunt.

## LESSON 98

*An Experience with Robbers*

5 Quondam in rīpis illīus flūminis, quī linguā Indōrum pater aquārum appellābātur, pīrātae multī in spēluncīs latēbant, ut nāvigia spoliārent, quae illīs temporibus mercib⁹ variīs onusta ultrō citrōque nāvigābant; quīn etiam quōdam locō castra parva fēcerant, ibique summā audāciā 10 nāvēs vel maximās adoriēbantur.

Quem locum ōlim negotiātor locuplēs, ventum idōneum nactus, vēlis passīs incolumis est praetervectus; quī autem ad rīpam nāvem suam appellere nōn ausus est, dōnec duo diēs inde adversō flūmine nāvigāvit. Interim vērō pīrātae, 15 quī nāvem vīderant praetereuntem, nec praedam tam pulchram dīmittere volēbant, rēctā viā per silvam erant secūti, et locō opportūnō in īnsidiīs iam latēbant; quī, nāve

1. identidem: adv., *time and again*.

2. hōram amplius: cf. p. 101, 1. 3, and the note.

3. proeliō: cf. p. 69, l. 17.

5. quī: for gender, cf. quod, p. 30, l. 6. — linguā: we would say, “*in the language*.”

6. spēluncīs: spēlunca, -ae, F., *cave*.

7. mercibus: merx, mercis, F., (sing. and pl.) *merchandise*.

9. ibi: *at that point*.

10. vel: even. — maximās: of the largest size.

12. nactus: freely, *with the aid of*; lit. what? — passīs: see the Vocab. under *pandō*.

13. duo diēs: *for the space of two days*.

15. praetereuntem: from *praeterē*.

16. rēctā: rēctus, -a, -um, *straight*, or *direct*. The robbers were able to gain upon the trader because of the bends in the river.

ad rīpam appulsā, ē silvā subitō ērūpērunt, ac nautās captōs ad castra sua nāvem redūcere coegērunt.

Ibi negōtiātōris coquus Āfer cōnsiliō callidō ūsus est; nam simulābat dominum sibi iniūriās intulisse, sēque gau-  
5 dēre eum captum esse: quō modō in amīcitiam pīrātārum inrēpsit, quī crēdēbant hominem socium fidēlem esse fu-  
tūrum. Sed oīlim, cēnā omnibus in nāve appositā, coquus repente proximum pīrātam in flūmen prōiēcit; quō sīgnō  
10 nautae cēterōs quoque in aquam dētrūsērunt. Pīrātae ad rīpam nandō pervēnērunt; negōtiātor autem nāvem cōn-  
fēstīm solvit ac summā celeritātē domum profectus est.

## LESSON 99

### *The Capture of Stony Point*

Ōlim Britannī castra satis magna occupāverant in rīpā flūminis Hudsōnis, haud procul ā castellis complūribus, quae adhūc tenēbant Americānī victī. Quārē colōnī, ca-  
15 stella sua magnō esse in perīculō ratī, castra statim sibi dēlenda esse exīstimābant. Quam ad rem cōficiendam dēlēctus est quidam Antōnius, vir fortissimus, quī anteā facinora saepe ausus erat audācissima.

Omnibus rēbus parātis, Americānī, per silvās clam pro-  
20 fectī, sōlis occāsū prope castra Britannica in latebrīs cōn-

1. captōs: translate as if cēpē-  
runt et.

3. coquus (-j, M.): *cook*. —  
ūsus est: *put into execution*.

6. inrēpsit: inrēpō, 3, -rēpsī,  
*worm (one's) way*.

7. omnibus: *i.e. for the whole  
party*.

8. quō sīgnō: cf. p. 57, l. 16.  
10. nandō: cf. p. 12, l. 17.

15. magnō: modifier of perī-  
culō.

16. dēlenda esse: for the trans-  
lation, cf. the note on reprimen-  
dam, p. 118, l. 6.

18. ausus erat: freely, *had per-  
formed*.

20. sōlis: *sōl, sōlis, M., sun*. —  
occāsū: abl. of time when (*occāsus*,  
-ūs, M., lit. *setting*).

sēdērunt, ibique hōrās complūrīs morātī sunt; tum tertīā ferē vigiliā silentiō ad castra accessērunt, cum interim duce ūterentur servō Āfrō, quī Pompēius appellābātur.

Ūnā cum servō praegrediēbantur duo militēs, quī vestīs mēnta agricolārum gerēbant. Quārē custōdēs nihil suspicantēs hominēs propius accēdere passī sunt; Pompēius enim erat omnibus nōtus, quod anteā ad castra saepe vēnerat ut vēnderet bācās: quīn etiam sīgnūm eī ā Britannīs interdum datum erat. Ita factum est ut sine strepitū custōdēs ā 10 militibus duōbus caperentur; et legiōnēs ipsae paene in castra vēnērunt, priusquam Britannī sēnsērunt hostēs adesse. Tum autem celeriter concurrērunt ad arma et fortissimē dīmicāvērunt.

In proeliō Antōnius graviter vulnerātus est; castra 15 autem sunt expugnāta ab Americānīs, quī brevī dēiēcērunt opera omnia, quae Britannī magnā diligentiā ibi effēcerant.

## LESSON 100

*Nathan Hale*

Postquam Britannī Longā īsulā tōtā potītī sunt, Vasingtō tamen Novī Eborācī aliquamdiū morātus est, cum discēdere nōllet, dōnec dē cōnsiliīs hostium certior factus

2. *cum . . . ūterentur*: translate by a partic. phrase. — *duce*: (*as*) *guide*.

3. *quī . . . appellābātur*: named.

4. *praegrediēbantur*: *praegredior*, 3, -gressus sum, go on ahead.

5. *nihil suspicantēs*: i.e. without suspicion.

6. *propius*: cf. the force of the word on p. 115, l. 12.

7. *omnibus*: as (masc.) noun dat. case.

8. *sīgnūm*: *countersign*.

9. *datum erat*: *had been communicated*. — *factum est ut*: cf. p. 74, l. 15. — *sine strepitū*: *without (making any) disturbance*.

12. *concurrērunt*: sc. *Britannī*.

18. *Novī Eborācī*: locative case; cf. *domī* and *humī*.

19. *factus esset*: cf. *exspectāsent*, p. 104, l. 18.

esset. Diū ille hominem frūstrā quaerēbat, quī veste mūtātā castra Britannica speculandī causā adīre vellet; postrēmō autem ad hanc rem suscipiendam lēgātus adulēscēns repertus est: qui, vestimentis magistrī puerōrum sūmptis, 5 liburnicā vectus ad īsulam incolumis pervenit. Ubi Britanni, quī nihil suspicābantur, hominem līberē circum castra omnia ambulāre passī sunt. Ille autem diligenter faciēbat dēscriptiōnēs; commentāriōs vērō, nē sibi essent dētrimentō, sī in manūs hostium vēnisset, Latīnē scripsit. 10 Tum paucīs post diēbus, rē bene cōflectā, ad locum rediit, unde ad continentem trānsitūrus erat.

Dum autem ibi liburnicam exspectat, in dēversōriō ā perfugā quōdam cōspectus est, qui Britannōs sine morā dē eius latebrīs certiōrēs fēcit. Itaque ab hostibus cōfēstim missa est nāvis longa, quae hominem interciperet. Scaphā ē nāvī ad lītus appulsā, lēgātus scīlicet amīcōs adesse crēdēbat; quārē ē latebrīs palam prōgressus, in lītore facile captus est. Is paulō post ā Britannīs capitīs damnātus, fortissimē sē gerēbat; cumque tempus moriendī iam 20 adesset, aequissimō animō “Hoc sōlum mē paenitet,” inquit, “quod mihi est ūna vīta tantum, quam prō patriā largiar.”

1. ille: omit in translating.—  
quī . . . vellet: *willing*.—  
veste mūtātā: *i.e. in disguise*.

2. speculandī causā: *i.e. as a spy*; lit. what?

4. magistrī puerōrum: *a tutor*.  
6. līberē: *adv., freely, or at will*.

8. dēscriptiōnēs: *dēscriptiō, -ōnis, F., (a) drawing* (cf. scribō).—commentāriōs: *commentārii, -ōrum, M., notes*.

9. dētrimentō: *dat. of service* (cf. praesidiō, p. 65, l. 4); translate freely.—vēnisset: cf. factus esset,

p. 121, l. 19. — Latīnē: *adv., in Latin*.

11. trānsitūrus erat: *was to cross*.

18. is: omit in translating.—capitis damnātus: cf. the note on p. 47, l. 16.

19. moriendī: *freely, of execution*.

20. aequissimō: *fully composed*.—mē paenitet: *causes me regret (paenitet, 2, paenituit)*.

21. quod: *that*.—largiar: *subjunctive*. For the phrasing of the whole clause, cf. p. 39, l. 17.

# STORIES FROM CAESAR RETOLD

THE WINTER OF 54-53 B.C.

## LESSON 101

In 58 B.C. Julius Caesar became governor of northern Italy and the vast country extending from the Alps to the North Sea, and spent the next nine years in disciplining various tribes of that great territory.

### *Unexpected Trouble*

Caesar, cum in Galliā bellum gerēbat, tōtam aestātem hostēs premere solitus est, tum, ut vīrēs mīlitū cōservāret, exercitū in hīberna dēdūcēbat: nam caelum eārum regiōnum hieme asperriūm est; quārē ille iūdicābat 5 aestāte sibi cum hostib⁹ esse dīmicandū, reliquōs autem anni mēnsēs in hībernīs mīlītēs retinendōs esse. Olim, cum trānsisset in Britanniā multōsque diēs cum incolis eius īinsulae bellum gessisset, aestāte exāctā ad continentē rediit. Ibi certior factus est propter siccitātem in Galliā 10 summam esse frūmentī inopiam. Itaque exercitū in partēs complūrēs dīvīsum in diversīs civitātibus hiemandī causā collocāvit.

1. *cum*: at the time when.—  
aestātem: not aetātem. The acc.  
may be rendered "throughout."

2. *vīrēs*: do not confuse vīs  
and vir.

3. *dēdūcēbat*: note the tense.  
—caelum: climate.

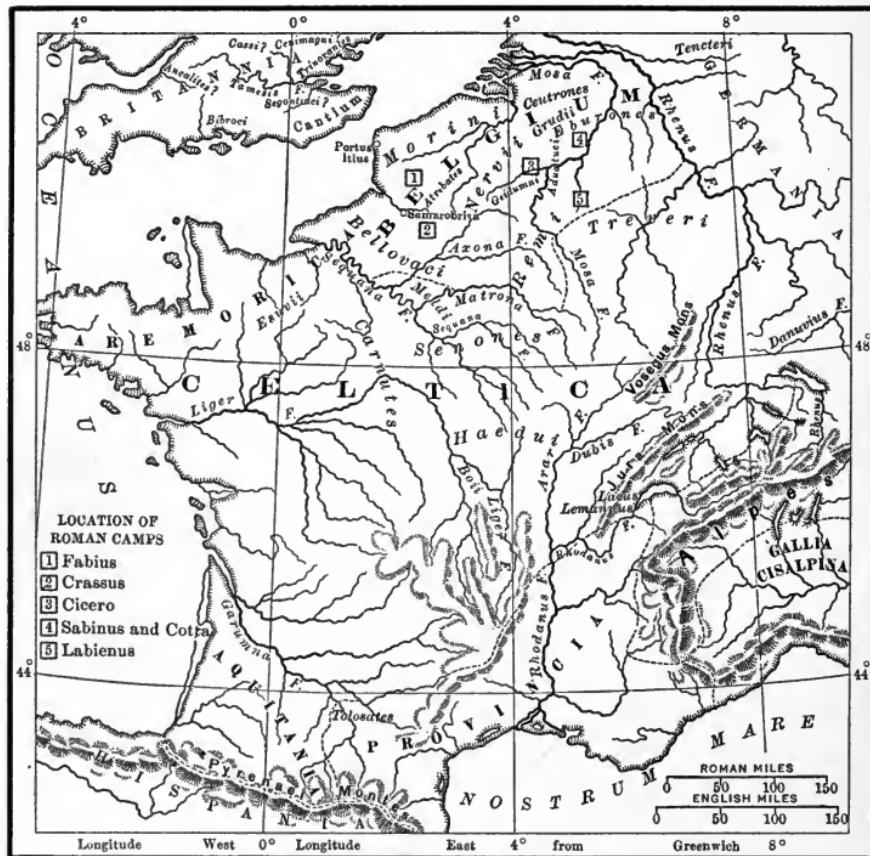
4. *asperriūm*: i.e. as com-  
pared with that of Italy.—ille:  
omit in translating.

6. *olim*: freely, one year.  
8. aestāte exāctā: freely, at  
the very end of the season; cf.  
vigiliā . . . exāctā, p. 102, l. 8.

9. siccitātem: siccitās, -ātis,  
F., drought.

11. dīvīsum: freely, after di-  
viding, etc.; lit. what?—in . . .  
collocāvit: quartered upon.—di-  
versīs civitātibus: the tribes of

## FIRST LATIN READER



GALLIA

Quō factō, dux quīdam Gallōrum, nōmine Ambiorīx, cum exercitus tot in partēs dīvisus esset, Rōmānōs iam dēmum facile superārī posse ratus, ūna castra longinqua subitō est adortus; impetus autem fortiter exceptus est ā nostrīs, 5 quī equitēs hostium cōfēstīm in fugam dedērunt. Quā spē dēiectī, Galli clāmāvērunt sē colloquium velle; quō auditō, lēgātī quī illis castrīs praeerant, extrā mūnitiōnēs nōn dubitāvērunt eōs mittere, quī cum Ambiorīge colloquerentur.

## LESSON 102

*A Parley with the Enemy*

Ad colloquium missus est C. Arpinēius, eques Rōmānus, 10 et Q. Iūnius, Hispāniēnsis, quī iam ante ā Caesare ipsō saepe dēlēctus erat, ut cum Ambiorīge ageret.

Eis, cum extrā mūnitiōnēs ēgressi essent, rēx cōfirmāvit Gallōs ūniversōs cōstituisse eō ipsō diē omnia hiberna Caesaris simul oppugnāre, nē qua legiō alterī legiōnī

Gaul were numerous, and more or less independent of one another. In dividing his force for the winter, it was Caesar's idea, in view of the scanty crops, to distribute more widely than usual among the Gallic tribes the burden of supplying the grain needed by his soldiers.

1. *cum*: causal.

3. *longinqua*: this particular camp (No. 4 on the map) was distant about two hundred miles from Caesar's headquarters at Samarobriva.

4. *nostrīs*: the story being told from the point of view of the Romans.

5. *quā spē*: the same construction as with *dēsistō* (e.g. p. 119, l. 3); translate freely.

7. *castrīs*: for syntax, cf. p. 58, l. 12.

8. *eōs*: *men*.

9. *C.* : i.e. Cāius (*Gaius*).—*eques Rōmānus* : a *Roman knight*, i.e. a member of the middle order in the Roman state.

10. *Q.* : i.e. Quīntus.

12. *rēx* : i.e. Ambiorīx.

13. *ūniversōs*: freely, *generally*; lit. what?

14. *nē qua*: *so that no*; cf. the note on *quid*, p. 56, l. 1.—*legiō*: *legion* (a body of about

subsidiō venire posset; sē tamen invītum castra oppugnāsse, sed voluntātī cēterōrum Gallōrum cīvitātem suam resistere nōn potuisse. "Nec tamen," inquit, "Caesaris in mē beneficiōrum immemor sum; itaque vōs magnopere hor-  
5 tor, ut quam celerrimē exercitum vestrum ad proxima hīberna dēdūcātis. Magna enim manus Germānōrum Rhēnum nūper trānsiit, quōrum multitūdini nūllō modō resistere poteritis. Quārē salūti vestrae statim cōnsulite." Simul pollicitus est sē Rōmānōs per finīs suōs incolumēs  
10 iter facere passūrum.

Quā ūratiōne habitā, discessit Ambiorīx; nūntiī autem rediērunt in castra lēgātōsque dē rēgis vērbis certiōrēs fēcērunt.

### LESSON 103

#### *Division of Opinion in the Roman Camp*

Q. Sabinus et L. Cotta lēgātī, rē repentinā permōtī, ea  
15 verba, etsī ab hoste dicta erant, tamen nōn neglegenda esse exīstimābant; itaque, cōsiliō convocātō, quid optimum factū esset diū disputātum est.

Tribūnī centuriōnēsque complūrēs nihil sibi temerē agen-

4000 infantry, supplemented usually by a small detachment of cavalry, mostly foreign). In the camp attacked, the force amounted to a legion and a half; the other camps were manned by a legion apiece.

1. subsidiō: dāt. of service.  
2. voluntātī: voluntās, -ātis, F., wish; for syntax, see the Vocab. under resistō.

3. in mē (acc.): to me.  
4. immemor (-oris, adj.): un-mindful.

5. vestrum: vester, -tra, -trum, your.

7. trānsiit: has crossed.

12. lēgātōs: the commanders.

14. L.: i.e. Lūcius. — lēgātī: cf. 1. 12.

15. neglegenda : neglegō, 3, neglēxi, neglēctus, disregard, or ignore.

16. cōsiliō: council of war.

17. factū: supine, to do.—es-set: subj. in indirect question.

18. tribūnī (sc. militum):

dum, neque ex hibernis iniussū Caesaris discēdendum iūdi-  
cābant; cum enim castra mūnitissima essent, crēdēbant sē  
Germānis facile resistere posse, dōnec Caesar cum legiōni-  
bus subsidiō veniret. Sabinus autem, veritus nē Galli cum  
5 Germānis sē coniungerent, statim discēdendum cēnsuit;  
sciēbat enim Germānis magnō dolōri fuisse victōriās supe-  
riōrēs Rōmānōrum, neque arbitrābātur Gallōs, qui tot con-  
tumēliās ā Rōmānīs accēperant, sē cum hoste quōvis  
coniungere dubitātūrōs.

10 Ōrātiōne in utramque partem habitā, cum Cotta senten-  
tiae collēgæ sui āriter resisteret, Sabinus postrēmō īrātus  
“Fiat,” inquit, “ut vōbīs vidētur; ego nōn is sum, qui  
mortis periculō magnopere terrear.”

## LESSON 104

*The Advice of the Enemy is Taken*

Quibus verbīs commōtī, omnēs statim ē cōsiliō surrēxē-  
15 runt, lēgātōsque vehementer hortātī sunt nē suā pertināciā  
rem in summum periculum dēdūcerent: neque enim ūllum

(military) tribunes. Of these there were six for each legion; in rank they stood next to the legion commander.—centuriōnēs: centurions (subordinate officers, ranking from captain down).

3. legiōnibus: troops.  
6. dolōrī: dat. of service.—superiōrēs: as on p. 79, l. 7.

8. ā: at the hands of.—sē: obj. of coniungere, l. 9.—hoste: sc. Rōmānōrum.—quōvis: from quīvis.

10. in utramque partem: freely, pro and con.—cum . . . resiste-  
ret: translate by a partic. phrase.—

sententiae: for syntax, cf. Germānis, l. 3.

11. collēgæ: collēga, -ae, M., lit. colleague; here, brother officer (namely, Sabinus).

12. fiat: let it be.—ut . . . vidē-  
tur: as (it) seems best.—is . . . qui:  
cf. eōs . . . qui, p. 125, l. 8.

16. rem: matters.—neque: in combination with enim and other postpositive words, neque usually replaces nōn. In the translation of this particular clause, combine the negative with ūllum (= nullum).

hostem sibi timendum esse, si modo omnēs idem probārent; in dissēnsiōne autem nūllam esse spēm.

Cum iam ad medianam noctem disputātum esset, tum dē-mum Sabinī sententia superāvit, ac māne castra mōtum 5 īrī mīlitibus prōnūntiātum est. Cōnsūmpta est vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum militēs bona colligerent sua, nec satis scirent quid in hibernis rēlinquendum, aut quid sēcum portandum esset. Deinde pīmā lūce ē castrī longissimō agmine maximīsque impedimentīs profectī sunt; plēriū 10 enim nōn suspicābantur Ambiorīgem omnia ea, quae dē Germānōrum adventū dixerat, mentītum esse, cum spērāret ita sē Rōmānōs ex hibernīs ēlicere posse.

At interim hōstēs, qui ex nocturnō strepitū intellēxerant lēgātōs cōnstituisse cōfēstīm castra movēre, in silvās 15 paulum sē recēperant īsidiīsque locō idōneō collocātīs adventum Rōmānōrum cupidē exspectābant.

## LESSON 105

### *The Romans are Ambushed*

Ita factum est ut, cum maior pars agminis Rōmānōrum in magnam vallem dēcendisset, Gallī subitō ē latebris

1. *timendum esse*: *need be feared*, a common force of the gerundive, esp. in negative phrases. The indirect discourse at this point is due to the idea of saying (*dixērunt*) implied in *hortātī sunt*, p. 127, l. 15. — *mōdo*: consult the Vocab. under *si*. — *idem probārent*: *i.e.* *should agree upon one plan*; lit. what?

2. *dissēnsiōne*: *dissēnsiō, -ōnis, f.*, *disagreement*.

4. *mōtum īrī*: what part of the verb?

5. *vigiliis*: we would say “*in* wakefulness.” What is another meaning of this word?

6. *colligerent*: *colligō, 3, -lēgi, -lēctus, get together*. Translate this clause by a partic. phrase.

7. *relinquendum*: sc. *esset*; for mood, cf. *esset*, p. 126, l. 17. — *aut*: we would say “and.”

8. *longissimō*: and, therefore, *straggling*.

11. *cum spērāret*: cf. the cum-clause in l. 6.

ērumperent, atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committerētur. Sabīnus, quī adhūc nihil suspicātus erat, ācerrimō hostium impetū vehementer commōtus, in omnīs partēs properāvit ac cohortēs dispōnere cōnātus est: Cotta 5 vērō, qui cōgitāverat haec posse in itinere accidere, ob eamque causam cēnsuerat ex hībernīs nōn discēdendum esse, virum magnum interim sē praebēbat; omnibus enim modis commūnī cōnsulēbat salūtī, ac fortissimē officia et imperātōris et mīlitis simul praestābat.

10 Tum, quod propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile prōvidērī poterat quid quōque locō faciendum esset, lēgātī suīs imperāvērunt ut, impedimentis relictīs, in orbem cōsisterent. Quod cōsilium (etsī eōdem imperātōrēs summī in eius modī cāsū ūtī solent) tum haud fēlīciter accidit; nam 15 hōstēs, nōn sine maximō timōre impedimenta ā Rōmānīs reicta esse ratī, etiam ācrius iam dīmicāvērunt.

1. nostrīs: dat. case; construe with inīquissimō.—committētur: note the termination, which indicates the case of proelium.

3. ācerrimō: translate the superlative “exceedingly.”

4. cohortēs: ten cohorts constituted a legion (p. 125, l. 14, note).

5. haec: neut. — ob eamque causam: the prep. ob does not combine with -que, which is, therefore, passed on to the following word.

7. virum magnum: pred. acc. — praebēbat: praebēō, 2, -uī, -itus, show.

8. commūnī . . . salūtī : for syntax, cf. p. 126, l. 8.—et . . . et: correlative.

9. mīlitis: *a soldier (in the ranks).*

10. longitūdinem: longitūdō, -inis, F., extent (cf. longus).

11. prōvidērī: note the last letter of the word.—quōque: from quisque. — faciendum: cf. the note on p. 128, l. 1.

12. in orbem: *i.e.* so as to form a circle.

13. eōdem: referring to cōsilium.

14. modi: *sort.*

16. etiam ācrius: (*all the) more* fiercely.

## LESSON 106

*The Enemy Prevail*

Accēdēbat ut militēs multī ab sīgnīs discēderent et bona sua cārissima ab impedimentīs arripere cōnārentur : cēterī autem, quamquam ā Fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostiū cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā, Ambiorīx suōs procul tēla conicere iussit nec propius accēdere. Quam ob rem, cum iam aliqua cohors excesserat ex orbe atque impetum fēcerat, summā celeritāte fuḡiēbant hostēs; cum autem cohors rursus ad aciem sē recipere cooperat, tum Gallī, undique coortī, nostrōs ācerrimē premēbant.

Cum sīc ā primā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnātum esset, T. Balventius, vir fortis et magnae auctōritātis, trāgulā graviter vulnerātus est; Q. Lūcānius, fortissimē pugnāns, dum circumventō filiō subsidiō venit, est imperfectus; ac L. Cotta lēgātus, cum mīlitēs hortārētūr, fundā percussus est. Quibus rēbus permōtus Sabinus, cum procul Ambiorīgem suōs cohortantem cōnspēxisset, interpretem suum

1. accēdēbat: impersonal use, *it was added (that) ; freely, matters were made worse by the fact (that)*. — ab sīgnīs: *i.e.* from their places in the line. Each cohort had its own special standards.

4. quotiēns . . . prōcurrerat: cf. p. 72, l. 1, with the note on the pluperfect.

5. ab: cf. the use of this prep. in the phrase ā tergō. — cadēbat: note the tense.

7. propius: absol. compar.

8. excesserat: excēdō, 3, -cessi,

-cessum est, *move out*. — orbe: cf. p. 129, l. 12.

10. aciem: *i.e.* orbem. — coortī: freely, *closing in*.

12. hōram octāvam: cf. the note on p. 74, l. 16.

13. T.: *i.e.* Titus.

15. circumventō: translate by a relative clause.

16. fundā: funda, -ae, F., *sling*; see the illustration on p. 140.

18. suōs: reflexive to Ambiorīgem. — interpretem: *interpretes*, -etis, c., *interpreter*.

Cn. Pompeium ad eum misit rogatum, ut sibi militibusque parceret.

## LESSON 107

*Annihilation of the Roman Force*

Rex respondit nihil Romani timendum esse, sed que Sabini ipsius salutem praestare, si ille ad colloquium venire vellet.  
 5 Quod auditum, Cotta tamen negavit ad armatum hostem se iturum, atque in eo perseveravit. Sabinus autem tribunos militum centurionesque qui adstabant se sequi iussit; cumque propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iussus arma abicere, paruit, ac suis ut idem facerent imperavit. Dum  
 10 autem ibi de condicionibus inter se agunt, Sabinus paulatim circumventus a Gallis occisus est.

Tum vero hostes sustulerunt ululatum, impetuque in nostros facta ordinis perturbaverunt. Ibi L. Cotta pugnans periit cum maximae parte milium. Reliqui se in  
 15 hiberna recipierunt, unde erant super egressi. E quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, homo magnarum virium, cum confertissimae multitidine hostium premeretur, aquilam intravallum proiecitur, ipse pro castris fortissime pugnans interfactus est.

20 Rومانی aegrē ad noctem oppugnationem sustinuerunt;

1. Cn.: i.e. Cnaeus (*Gnaeus*).—  
 rogatum: cf. petitum, p. 95, l. 13.

4. vellet: cf. the note on admoveantur, p. 61, l. 14.

6. eo: (neut.) noun.

8. propius: with the force of a prep., quite near to.

9. idem: note the gender.

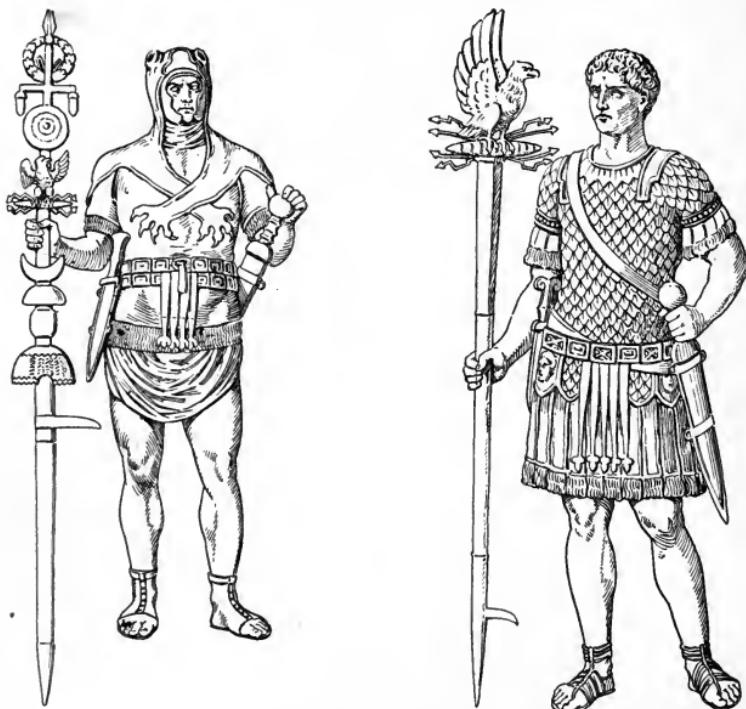
14. cum: i.e. unā cum.

16. aquilifer (-erī, M.): stand-

ard bearer, lit. eagle bearer.—  
 Aside from the standards of the cohorts, each legion carried a silver eagle.—virium: from what nom. sing.? Give some of the meanings of the singular.

17. aquilam: aquila, -ae, f., eagle.

18. ipse: autem may be supplied.



STANDARD BEARERS

The standards carried in the Roman army were numerous and rather diverse (see also the illustration on page 162). As the eagle was the chief standard of the legion, upon it was lavished all the enthusiastic devotion which modern soldiers feel for their flag. No disgrace was so deep and terrible as to have the eagle fall into the hands of the enemy.

tum, dēspērātā salūte, ad ūnum omnēs sē ipsī interfēcērunt. Pauci, qui paulō ante ē proeliō effūgerant, per silvās incertis itineribus ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hīberna pervēnērunt, atque eum dē rēbus gestīs fēcērunt certiōrem.

## LESSON 108

*The Gauls attack a Second Camp*

5 Hāc victōriā sublātus, Ambiorix statim cum equitātū in Aduātucōs, qui erant eius rēgnō fīnitimī, profectus est; neque noctem neque diem intermīsit, peditātumque sē iussit subsequi.

10 Rē dēmōstrātā Aduātucīsque concitātīs, posterō diē in Nerviōs pervēnit, eōsque hortātus est, nē suī in perpetuum liberandī occāsiōnem dīmitterent. Interfectōs esse lēgātōs duo Rōmānōs magnamque partem exercitūs interīsse docuit; facillimēque opprimī posse eam quoque legiōnem, quae cum Q. Cicerōne in fīnibus eōrum hiemāret. Quā ūrātiōne 15 facile Nerviīs persuāsīt.

1. *dēspērātā*: *dēspērō*, 1, *despair of*. — *sē ipsī*: cf. *ipse . . . sē*, p. 8, l. 2. The men probably ran upon one another's swords.

3. *ad T. Labiēnum*: in connection with *in hīberna*, this phrase may conveniently be rendered by a genitive. For the location of Labiēnus' camp, see the map on p. 124.

4. *gestīs*: lit. *done*; translate freely, using a relative clause.

5. *sublātus*: from *tollō*. — *in*: *into the territory of*.

6. *Aduātucōs*: for this and other peoples mentioned, see again the map on p. 124.

7. *intermīsit*: sc. *cursum*, *i.e.*

*drew rein.* — *sē*: omit in translation.

9. *concitātīs*: *concitō*, 1, *stir up*.

10. *suī*: gen. pl.

11. *liberandī*: gerundive, taking its form from *suī*. Render the gen. (freely) "to."

13. *facillimēque*: as governing verb for this clause, *dixit* may be supplied.

14. *Q. Cicerōne*: another of Caesar's lieutenants (see the map).

— *eōrum*: *i.e.* *Nerviōrum*. — *hiemāret*: for mood, cf. *admoveantur*, p. 61, l. 14.

15. *Nerviīs persuāsīt*: *won over the Nervii*; lit. what?

Itaque cōfēstīm dīmissīs nūntiīs ad Cēutronēs, Grudiōs, nātiōnēsque aliās, ut quam maximīs cōpiīs auxiliō statim venīrent, repente ad Cicerōnis hiberna hostēs sē ostendērunt; ubi nōnnūlli mīlitēs, morte Sabīni Cottaeque nōndum 5 nūntiātā, sine timōre extrā mūnītiōnēs officiīs variīs operam dabant. Ex hīs quīdam, quī lignātiōnis causā in silvās discesserant, repentinō equitum adventū interceptī sunt. Cēterī autem celeriter concurrērunt ad arma, vāllumque cōscendērunt.

## LESSON 109

*The Besieged attempt to Communicate with Caesar*

- 10 Missae sunt ad Caesarem cōfēstīm ā Cicerōne litterae; obsessīs autem omnibus viīs, ab hostibus missī interceptī sunt. Noctū ex māteriā, quam mūnītiōnis causā compor-tāverant, nostrī turrēs circiter CXX incrēdibilī celeritāte exstrūxērunt.
- 15 Posterō diē hostēs, multō maiōribus coāctīs cōpiīs, castra iterum oppugnāvērunt, fossamque complēre cōnātī sunt. Eādem ratiōne, quā prīdiē, nostrī restitērunt. Hoc idem reliquīs deinceps diēbus factum est. Nūlla pars noctis labōribus mīlitum carēbat: nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātīs

2. aliās: not reliquās or cēte-rās. — ut: the construction is determined by the idea of urging or commanding implied in the sending of messengers. — maximīs cō-piīs: abl. case; translate “with.”

3. ad: *in the neighborhood of.*  
6. lignātiōnis causā: cf. p. 108, l. 8.

7. equitum: *i.e.* of the enemy.  
9. cōscendērunt: *manned.*  
11. missī: part., as(masc.) noun.

12. noctū: *during the (follow-ing) night.* — māteriā: māteria,-ae, F., timber.

17. quā: freely, *as*; strictly, abl., in the same construction as eādem ratiōne.

18. reliquīs: *the following.* — deinceps: adv., *in turn.*

19. labōribus mīlitum: freely, *toil for the soldiers.* — carēbat: *was without, or lacked;* cf. the note on mē . . . carēre, p. 68, l. 13.

facultās quiētis dabātur: nec Cicerō ipse, etsī tenuissimā erat valētūdine, nocturnō tempore ad quiētem ūtēbātur, priusquam mīlitum vōcibus sibi parcere coāctus est.

Tum ducēs Nerviōrum, quī aliquam causam amīcitiae 5 cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle nūntiāvērunt.

Factā potestāte, eadem commemorant, quae paulō ante Ambiorīx cū Sabīnō ēgerat. Addunt etiam dē Sabīni morte, et cōfirmant sē nihil recūsāre nisi hiberna, atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlle; quam ob rem 10 Rōmānīs licēre incolumibus ex castrīs discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine timōre proficisci.

## LESSON 110

### *Heroic Defense of their Camp*

At Cicerō, quī iniussū Caesaris castra movēre nōlēbat, Gallīs respondit nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī ūllam accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem; sī ab armīs 15 discēdere atque lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere vellent, spērāre sē eōs, quae petīssent, impetrātūrōs.

1. quiētis: quiēs, -ētis, F., rest. — tenuissimā: tenuis, -is, -e, slight; here, poor.

2. valētūdine : cf. p. 110, l. 9. The abl. phrase expresses quality or characteristic; cf. the similar use of the genitive.

4. causam: i.e. ground.

6. potestāte: i.e. facultāte. — commemorant: i.e. dicunt. In animated narration, the pres. indic. is often thus used for the perfect.

7. cum Sabīnō ēgerat: had treated (*in his dealings*) with Sabīnus.

9. hanc . . . cōnsuētūdinem: i.e. the practice of quartering a division of the army upon them for the winter. — inveterāscere : inveterāscō, 3, -veterāvī, become fixed.

10. incolumibus: pred. dat. — quāscumque : quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whatsoever.

14. ūllam: modifier of condiciōnem.

15. lēgātōs: as on p. 48, l. 9.

16. quae: i.e. ea quae, lit. the things which; freely, the concessions which. — petīssent: i.e. petīvissent; cf. also the note on exspectāssent, p. 104, l. 18.

Hāc spē dēiectī Nerviī vällō pedum decem et fossā pedum quīndecim hiberna circumdant. Eīs autem nūlla erat ferramentōrum cōpia, quae ad eam rem ūsuī sunt; gladiis igitur caespitēs circumcidere et manibus sagīsque 5 terram exhaustīrē cōgēbantur. Quā ex rē hominum multitudō cōgnōscī potest; nam hōrīs ferē tribus decem mīlīum passum in circuitū mūnītiōnēm pedum quīndecim perfēcērunt.

Septimō oppugnatiōnis diē, maximō coortō ventō, hostēs 10 tēla ferrefacta in casās iēcērunt; quae celeriter comprehendērunt ignem, et ventī magnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Tum Gallī, victoriā ratī iam dēmum esse partam, maximō clāmōre vällum scālīs ascendere coepērunt. At tanta erat virtūs nostrōrum, ut, cum 15 maximā tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur, suaque impedimenta omnia ignī cōnsūmī intellegerent, dē vällō dēcēderet nēmō. Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen

1. hāc spē dēiectī: cf. the similar phrase, p. 125, l. 5.

2. circumdant: for tense, cf. p. 135, l. 6. — eīs: i.e. Nerviīs.

3. ferramentōrum: ferramentum, -ī, N., iron implement.— eam: such.— rem: business.— ūsuī sunt: are needed.

4. circumcidere: circumcidō, 3, -cidī, -cisus, cut out, lit. cut around.

5. exhaustīrē: exhaustiō, 4, -hausi, -haustus, remove, lit. haul out.

7. pedum quīndecim: freely, fifteen-foot (including both vällum and fossa, as thus far completed).

10. ferrefacta: ferrefactus, -a, -um, red-hot.— casās: barracks.— quae: feminine.

11. ventī: gen. case. — magnitūdine: abl. of cause (magnitūdō, -inis, F., force, lit. greatness; cf. magnus); translate "by reason of."

12. distulērunt: sc. eum (i.e. ignem).

13. vällum: i.e. castrōrum; not the vällum of l. 1. — scālīs: scālēs, -ārum, F., ladder(s).

14. cum: concessive.

15. maximā . . . multitūdine: freely, a perfect storm.

16. dē vällō: i.e. from (his position upon) the rampart.— dēcēderet: dēcēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, withdraw.

17. nostrīs: dat. case; translate "for."

hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium interīret aut vulnerārētur.

## LESSON III

*A Messenger eludes the Enemy*

Quantō erat in diēs gravior oppugnātiō, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; ē quibus nōn 5 nūlli, in cōnspectū nostrōrum militum intercepti, cum crūciātū necātī sunt. Intrā hiberna autem erat Nervius quidam, nōmine Verticō, qui ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat, cum p̄imū castra oppugnāta sunt. Hic servō spē libertatis magnisque persuāsit praemiis, ut litterās ad Caesarem dē- 10 ferret. Ille celeriter profectus, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ullā suspiciōne versātus, ad Caesarem incolumis pervēnit. Ab eō dē periculis Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnitum est.

Caesar, acceptis litterīs hōrā ferē ūndecimā diēi, nūntium cōfēstīm in Bellovacōs mittit ad M. Crassum, cuius 15 hiberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum quīnque et vīgintī; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē venīre. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātūm mittit, qui ei

1. *ut*: *that*. — *eō diē*: *i.e.* the day referred to on p. 136, l. 17 as *hic diēs*.

3. *quantō . . . tantō*: with the comparatives, *the . . . the*, lit. *by how much . . . by so much*. — *erat*: *became*. — *in diēs*: cf. p. 44, l. 4. — *crēbriōrēs*: *crēber*, -bra, -brum, lit. *frequent*: transl. as adv.

8. *servō*: sc. *sūō* (*i.e.* “*of his*”); dat. case, to be construed with *persuāsit*, l. 9.

10. *ille*: *the slave*. — *Gallus*: (*since he was*) *a Gaul*. — *inter . . . versātus*: *freely, mixing*

*with*; *lit. what?* — *sine*: *without (exciting)*.

12. *periculis*: translate as sing.

13. *hōrā . . . ūndecimā diēi*: cf. the note on p. 74, l. 16.

14. *in*: cf. the note on p. 133, l. 5. — *mittit*: cf. *commemorant*, p. 135, l. 6. — *ad M. Crassum*: see the map on p. 124.

15. *eō*: *i.e.* *Caesare*.

16. *iubet*: sc. *eum* (*i.e.* *Crassum*). — *ad*: *to (join)*.

17. *alterum*: sc. *nūntium*. — *ad C. Fabium*: see the map again. — *ei*: *i.e.* *Fabiō*.

nūntiet, ut legiōnem in Atrebatēs addūcat, quōrum per finēs sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō ut, sī reī pūblicae commodō fierī possit, cum legiōne ad finēs Nerviōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quae 5 paulō aberat longius, nōn arbitrātur exspectandam; equitēs circiter CCCC ex proximis hībernīs cōgit.

## LESSON 112

*Caesar heads a Relief Force*

Hōrā ferē tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassi adventū Caesar certior est factus. Eō diē milia passuum viginti prōgressus est. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeposuit, legiō-  
10 nemque eī trādidit, quod ibi relinquēbat impedimenta exer-  
citūs, obsidēs cīvitatūm, litterās pūblicās, frūmentumque  
omne, quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā comportāverat.  
Paulō post Fabius, ut imperātum erat, in itinere cum  
legiōne occurrit. At Labiēnus, morte Sābīni et clāde  
15 cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae  
vēnissent, veritus nē, sī ex hībernīs fugae similem pro-

1. legiōnem: sc. suam.—in Atrebatēs: *i.e.* F. was to march south to join Caesar, as the latter moved eastward.

2. ut: in this connection, scribit implies imperat also; hence the ut-clause.

3. reī pūblicae commodō: lit. *with the well-being of the commonwealth*; freely, *without endangering the public weal*.—possit: it may.—legiōne: sc. suā.

7. hōrā . . . tertiā: *i.e.* of the day following.—antecursōribus: antecursor, -ōris, M., *courier*.

9. praeposuit: with dat., *left in charge (of)*.

11. cīvitatūm: *i.e.* the Gallic states; translate the gen. “from.”

—litterās: *documents*.

12. eō: the adv.

13. imperātum erat: note the gender.

14. occurrit: sc. eī (*i.e.* Caesari).

15. cohortium: freely, *to the cohorts*.—cum: causal.—ad . . . vēnissent: *had marched upon*.—Trēverōrum: see the map on p. 124.

16. fugae: dat. case; construe with similem.

fectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetus sustinērī nōn posset, litterās Caesarī remīsit, quibus ostendit quantum esset periculum docuitque omnēs peditatūs equitatūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum tria mīlia passuum ab suis castrīs cōnsēdisse.

5 Caesar, cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsī opīniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās redierat, omnem tamen commūnis salūtis spem in celeritāte pōnēbat. Venit igitur magnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnēs. Ibi ex captivis cōgnōscit quae in Cicerōnis hibernīs gerantur, quantōque in periculō rēs sit.

## LESSON 113

*The Besieged learn of Caesar's Approach*

10 Itaque cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs Caesar magnīs praemiīs persuāsit, ut ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferret. Hanc Graecīs litterīs scriptam mīsit, nē Gallō interceptō nostra cōsilia ab hostibus cōgnōscerentur. Hominī imperāvit ut, sī hiberna intrāre nōn posset, trāgulam cum epistulā ad 15 āmentum dēligātā intrā mūnitōnēs abiceret. In epistulā scripsit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore; Cicerōnem hortātus est ut prīstinam virtūtem retinēret.

1. fēcisset: cf. exspectāssent,  
p. 104, l. 18.

2. quibus: cf. p. 38, l. 16.—  
esset: why subjunctive?

4. Trēverōrum: belonging to  
the Treveri.—suīs: his.

5. opīniōne: opīniō, -ōnis, F.,  
expectation; cf. the similar phrase,  
p. 125, l. 5 ff.

6. redierat: i.e. had been re-  
duced.

7. venit: what tense? (note  
the ē).—magnīs itineribus: i.e.  
forced marches.

8. captivis: i.e. Gauls whom

he had arrested as he marched.—  
quae: neut. interrogative; trans-  
late as sing. (quid).

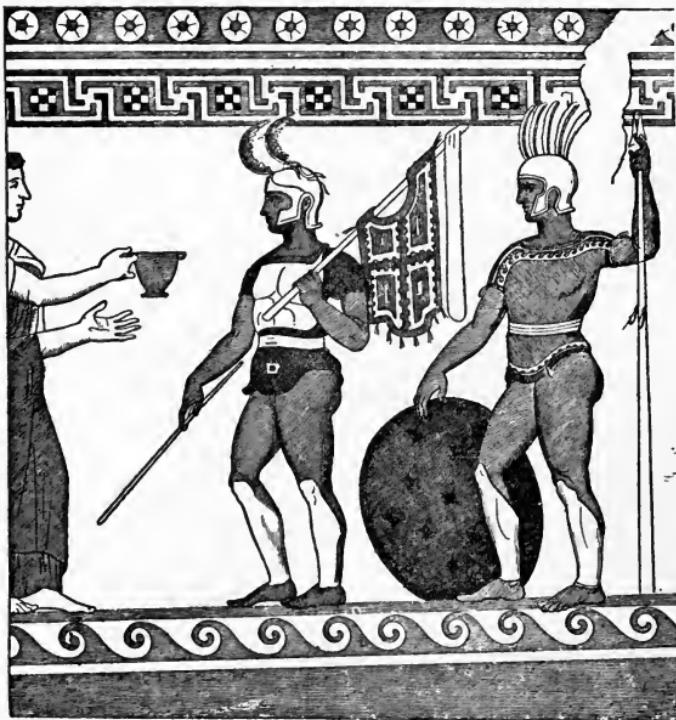
10. ex: of.—Gallīs: with adj.  
force. The cavalry of the Roman  
army was recruited largely from for-  
eign nations (cf. the note on legiō,  
p. 125, l. 14).

11. epistulam: epistula, -ae, F.,  
letter.

12. Gallō interceptō: translate  
by a conditional clause.

15. āmentum: āmentum, -ī, N.,  
strap.—dēligātā: dēligō, I, fasten.

16. adfore: i.e. adfutūrum esse.



ARMA

The upper illustration is interesting as showing the very primitive equipment of some of the light-armed troops. In the lower picture may be seen on the spears of the warrior the strap (*amentum*) which was used to assist the hand when the weapons were hurled.

Gallus, cum ad hīberna vēnisset, perīculum veritus, ut erat imperātum, trāgulam cum litterīs mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ā nostrīs statim animadversa, tertio diē ā mīlite quōdam cōspicitur; quī eam sine morā 5 ad Cicerōnem dēfert. Ille, epistulā perlēctā, mīlites laetus docet Caesarem iam subsidiō venīre. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul cernēbantur; quae rēs omnem dubitatiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

## LESSON 114

*The Enemy raise the Siege*

Gallī rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs, obsidiōne statim relictā, 10 ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Quō animadversō, Cičerō Gallum quendam celeriter cum litterīs mittit, in quibus scrībit hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque multitūdinem ad Caesarem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte adlātīs, Caesar suōs facit certiōrēs, eōsque ad pugnandum animō cōfirmat.

Posterō diē, cum lūce prīmā mōvisset castra et circiter mīlia passuum quattuor prōgressus esset, trāns vallem ma-

1. perīculum: *i.e.* of trying to enter the camp.

2. litterīs: *i.e.* epistulā. — cāsū: *i.e.* forte.

3. ad . . . adhaesit: freely, *caught upon*.

6. tum: *later*. — fūmī: translate as singular.

7. cernēbantur: cf. the rendering of vidēbant, p. 36, l. 7. — quae rēs: cf. quae urbs, p. 44, l. 13. — omnem: *any*. — dubitatiōnem: *dubitatiō*, -ōnis, *F.*, *doubt*.

9. rē: *the situation*. — per: freely, *from*; lit. *through*.

10. ad: *against*. — omnibus cōpiīs: cum may be supplied with this abl.

12. omnem . . . multitūdinem: sc. suam. The whole is obj. of convertisse.

14. pugnandum: gerund.

15. animō: lit. *in mind*. — cōfirmat: *fortifies*. Render freely.

16. mōvisset: subject, Caesar. 17. magnam: modifying both

gnam et rīvum hostium multitūdinem vīdit. Erat magni periculī rēs cum tantīs cōpiīs inīquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne līberātum esse Cicerōnem sciēbat, dē celeritāte aliquid sibi remittendum existimābat: quārē cōn-  
5 sēdit, et, quam aequissimō locō poterat, castra mūnīvit.

## LESSON 115

*They are Outgeneraled by Caesar*

Postrīdīe hostium equitātus prīmā lūce ad castra accessit, proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus commīsit. Caesar autem suīs imperāvit ut cēderent cōnsultō sēque in castra recipierent; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vällō  
10 munīrī, portās obstruī, omniaque cum simulātiōne timōris agī iussit.

Quibus rēbus invitātī, hostēs cōpiās rīvum trādūxērunt omnīs, aciemque inīquō locō cōnstituērunt; tum Caesar, omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō, eōs

vallem and rīvum, and agreeing with the nearer.

2. rēs: *a matter*. — cōpiās: sc. Gallōrum. — tum: *furthermore*.

3. obsidiōne: translate the abl. "from."

4. aliquid sibi remittendum: freely, *he should relax somewhat*; lit. what?

5. quam aequissimō locō poterat: *in as favorable a position as he could*. This fuller form helps to show how quam and the superl. came to mean "as . . . as possible." — mūnīvit: cf. the part. mūnītus.

6. castra: sc. Caesaris.

8. cōnsultō: adv.

9. altiōre vällō: not a new rampart, but the old built higher.

10. obstruī: obstruō, 3, -strūxī, -strūctus, *block up*. — simulātiōne timōris: the purpose of this maneuver is made clear by the following sentence.

12. invitātī: invitātus, -a, -um, part., *invited*; freely, *made bold*. — rīvum trādūxērunt: *i.e.* dūxērunt trāns rīvum; cf. flūmen trāductis, p. 91, l. 10.

13. omnīs: modifier of cōpiās.

14. omnibus portīs: for syntax, cf. fenestrā, p. 76, l. 3.

celeriter in fugam dedit. Longius autem īsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant, omnibus suīs incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervenit. Turrēs mūnītiōnēsque hostium admirātur. Legiōne prōductā, 5 cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere; quā ex rē iūdicat quantō in periculō rēs fuerit. Cicerōne militibusque laudātīs, centuriōnēs tribūnōsque singulōs appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cotio tae certius ex captīvīs cōgnōscit.

## LESSON 116

*Arrangements for the Rest of the Winter*

Dum haec fīunt, ad Labiēnum incrēdibili celeritāte dē victōriā Caesaris fāma dēfertur; quīn etiam, cum ab hībernīs Cicerōnis milia passuum Labiēnus abesset circiter sexāgintā, atque ad Cicerōnem post hōram nōnam diēi Caesar 15 pervenisset, ante medium noctem subitō ad portās Labiēnī castrōrum auditus est eōrum clāmor, quī lēgātō grātulārī

1. longius: absol. compar.

2. intercēdēbant: intercēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, *intervene*. — omnibus suīs incolumibus: abl. absol.; translate "with."

4. hostium: freely, *built by the enemy*.

5. nōn decimum, etc.: order of lit. translation: nōn quemque decimum militem esse reliquum.

7. fuerit: perf. subjunctive; why this mood? Note carefully the force of the tense.

8. ēgregiam: pred. adj. (ēgregius, -a, -um, *conspicuous*).

9. testimōniō: testimōnium, -ī, N., *report*. The abl. expresses means; we would say "from."

10. certius: as noun (neut. sing.); see the Vocab. under cōgnōscō.

11. haec: *this*. — Labiēnum: cf. p. 138, l. 14 ff.

12. fāma (-ae, F.): *report*. — dēfertur: *i.e.* by natives. — cum: concessive.

15. ad: *before*.

16. eōrum: *of those*. — clāmor: translate as pl. — grātulārī: grātulor, 1, *offer congratulation*.

volēbant, quod hostīs Caesar superāvisset. At Trēverī, qui posterō diē hīberna Labiēnī oppugnāre cōstituerant, repentinā rē perterritī noctū domum celeriter sē recēpērunt.

Postridiē Caesar cōtiōne habitā mīlitēs cōfirmāvit, 5 eōsque docuit dētrimentum, quod temeritātē lēgātī esset acceptum, aequiōre animō esse ferendum, quod beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum legiōnēs cēterae cōservātæ essent neque hostibus diūtinum gaudium relinquerētur. Fabium cum legiōne remisit in hīberna; 10 ipse cum tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam hiemāre cōstituit: nam cum animī omnium Gallōrum ad bellum incitātī vidērentur, tōtam hiemem sibi apud exercitum manendum arbitrābātur.

4. cōtiōne habitā: *i.e.* in Cicero's camp.

5. temeritātē: translate the abl. "through." — lēgātī: *i.e.* Sabīnī. — esset acceptum: for mood, cf. admoveantur, p. 61, l. 14.

6. aequiōre animō esse ferendum: *i.e.* should be taken the more philosophically; lit. what?

7. immortālium: immortālis, -is, -e, *immortal*. In passages like the present, the use of this adj. is formal and conventional; properly, it contrasts the life of

the gods with the (earthly) life of men. — eōrum: *i.e.* the soldiers addressed.

8. diūtinum: diūtinus, -a, -um, long-continued. — gaudium (-i, N.): exultation (cf. gaudeō).

9. Fabium, etc.: see again the map on p. 124.

11. cum: causal.

12. tōtam hiemem: usually this was not necessary, the winter months being normally a season of rest from active field service (see p. 123, l. 3 ff.).

## AN AFRICAN CAMPAIGN

### LESSON 117

During the civil war which broke out between Caesar and Pompey four or five years after the events above narrated, there was fighting in all parts of the civilized world, and more than once Africa was the battleground.

#### *Caesar lands a Force in Africa*

Interim C. Cūriō duās legiōnēs, D equitēs, ex Siciliā in Africam trānsportāvit. Ubi eius adventum L. Caesar cum decem longīs nāvibus exspectābat; quī autem, cum classis Cūriōnis in cōnspectum vēnisset, nāvium multitudinem 5 veritus, appulsā ad proximum litus trirēme, pedibus Hadrūmētum fūgit: quō nāvēs quoque eius reliquae, fugā ducis cōgnitā, statim sē recēpērunt.

Cūriō Mārcium Rūfum cum classe Uticam praemittit. Ipse eōdem cum exercitū proficiscitur; triduique iter prō-  
10 gressus, ad flūmen Bagradam pervēnit. Ibi C. Canīnium Rebilum lēgātum legiōnēsque relinquit; ipse cum equitatū antecēdit ad Castra Cornēlia explōranda, quī locus peridōneus castrīs exīstīmābātur.

1. **C. Cūriō**: one of Caesar's generals.—**D.**: the numeral: supply -que or et with this clause.

2. **L. Caesar**: an officer in Pompey's navy.

5. **veritus**: *appalled at*.—**tri-rēme**: sc. suā (*trirēmis*, -is, F., *galley*).—**pedibus**: we would say “*on foot*”; cf. *manibus genibus-que*, p. 59, l. 8.—**Hadrūmētum**: consult the map on p. 146; for

syntax, see the note on p. 79, l. 21.

6. **quō**: the adv.—**fugā**: *defection*.

8. **Uticam**: the base of operations of Pompey's forces in Africa.

9. **proficiscitur**: from *Anquil-laria*.

12. **antecēdit**: *antecēdō*, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, *push ahead*, lit. *go on ahead*.—**qui locus**: cf. *quaes urbs*, p. 44, l. 13.—**peridō-**



THE SCENE OF CURIO'S CAMPAIGN IN AFRICA.

Hāc explōrātā regiōne, Cūriō Uticae quoque mūnitiōnēs speculātus est; cumque animadvertisset plēnissimis viīs undique portārī agīque multa, quae repentinī tumultūs timōre ex agrīs in urbem cōferēbantur, equitātum mīsit, 5 ut praedā īspērātā potirētur. Simul ex urbe ēmissī sunt DC equitēs Numidae, qui agricolīs fugientibus auxiliō essent. Concurrunt equitēs inter sē; neque vērō prīmum impetum nostrōrum Numidae ferre poterant, sed interfectī circiter CXX reliqui sē in urbem contulērunt.

## LESSON 118

*Operations about Utica*

10 Interim Mārcius nāvēs longās Uticam dēdūxerat; cuius adventū cōgnitō, Cūriō prōnūntiārī iussit onerāriīs, quae in portū ad ancoram stābant numerō circiter CC, sē in hostium locō habitūrum omnēs, qui nōn statim ad Castra Cornēlia nāvis trādūxissent. Quā prōnūntiātiōne factā, 15 sine morā sublātīs ancorīs omnēs reliquērunt Uticam et, quō imperātum erat, trānsiērunt. Quae rēs omnium rērum cōpiā exercitūm nostrūm complēvit.

**neus (-a, -um):** *particularly suitable;* cf. the note on *perpaucōs*,

p. 25, l. 10.

**2. plēnissimis:** *plēnus, -a, -um, congested.* — *viīs:* translate the abl. “*along*”; cf. *sēmitā*, p. 103, l. 17.

**3. portārī agīque:** cf. the note on *rapere et agere*, p. 49, l. 8.

**4. timōre:** *freely, in the panic;* strictly, abl. of cause.

**5. īspērātā:** *īspērātus, -a, -um, unexpected.*

**6. Numidae:** with adj. force.

**7. neque:** cf. p. 127, l. 16.

**10. Mārcius:** see p. 145, l. 8.

**11. prōnūntiārī:** cf. p. 128, l. 5; note the final vowel.

**12. numerō:** for syntax, cf. *animō*, p. 37, l. 20. — *in hostium locō habitūrum:* *would regard as enemies;* lit. what?

**13. omnēs:** masc.

**14. nāvīs:** *i.e.* the *onerāriae* of l. 11. — *trādūxissent:* *i.e.* across the harbor (see the map). For mood and tense, cf. *esset perruptus*, p. 107, l. 3. — *prōnūntiātiōne:* *prōnūntiātiō, -ōnis, F., announcement.*

**16. quō:** the adv.

His rēbus gestis, Cūriō sē in castra ad Bagradam recipit, posterōque diē exercitum Uticam dūcit et prope oppidum castra pōnit. Nōndum opere castrōrum perfectō, equitēs ex statiōne nūntiant magna auxilia equitum peditumque ā 5 rēge Iubā missa Uticam venire; eōdemque tempore vīs magna pulveris cernēbātur, et temporis pūnctō prīnum agmen erat in cōspectū. Quā rē novā Cūriō permōtus equitēs suōs praemittit, qui prīnum impetum sustineant; ipse, celeriter ab opere dēductīs legiōnibus, aciem īstruit.

## LESSON 119

*Curio gains an Initial Advantage*

- 10 Interim equitēs cum hostibus proelium commisērunt et, priusquam legiōnēs plānē explicārī possent, tōta auxilia rēgis, quae nūllō ōrdine et sine metū iter faciēbant, in fugam coniecta sunt. Equitēs hostium per litus in oppidum prope rāvērunt, peditum autem magnus numerus interfectus est.
- 15 Proximā nocte centuriōnēs duo ex castris Cūriōnis cum manipulāribus suīs duōbus et vigintī ad Attium Vārum perfugiunt; cui cōfirmant tōtius exercitūs animōs aliēnōs esse

1. ad Bagradam: cf. p. 145,  
1. 10. In connection with in castra, translate "at the Bagrada"; cf.  
ad T. Labiēnum . . . in hīberna,  
p. 133, l. 3.

*a moment* (pūnctum, -ī, n., *point*).

— prīnum agmen: *vanguard*; lit.  
what?

9. opere: (*the work of*) construction (cf. l. 3).

11. legiōnēs: sc. Cūriōnis.

12. sine metū: evidently they had not heard of Curio's arrival in Africa.

13. oppidum: *i.e.* Utica.

16. Attium Vārum: commander of the Pompeian forces at Utica.

17. aliēnōs . . . ā: *freely, disaffected toward*.

3. opere: *i.e. construction*.

4. statiōne: statiō, -ōnis, f., *outpost*.—auxilia: *auxiliary forces*.

5. Iubā: king of Numidia, friendly to Pompey (cf. p. 147, l. 5 ff.).—venire: *i.e. appropinquāre ad*.—eōdem . . . tempore: *i.e. simul*.

6. cernēbātur: cf. cernēbantur, p. 141, l. 7.—temporis pūnctō: *in*

ā Cūriōne, multōsque facultāte datā libenter esse trānsitūrōs. Qua ūratiōne adductus Vārus posterō diē māne legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūcit. Facit idem Cūriō, atque ūnā valle nōn magnā interpositā suās uterque cōpiās īstruit.

5 Erat in exercitū Vārī lēgātus quīdam, cui nōtī erant multī Cūriōnis mīlitēs. Hanc ille nactus appellatiōnis cau-sam, circumīre aciem Cūriōnis atque omnēs hortārī coepit, ut Vārum sequerentur ; quīn etiam praemium pollicitus est, sī quī ad eum trānsire voluissent. His verbīs auditīs, nūllam 10 in partem ab exercitū Cūriōnis fit significatiō, atque ita suās uterque cōpiās redūcit.

## LESSON 120

*He maintains his Army's Loyalty to Caesar*

At in castrīs Cūriōnis animī omnium sollicitī erant; quisque enim ad id, quod ab aliō audierat, aliquid suī timōris addēbat.

15 Cōnsiliō convocātō, duae sententiae dictae sunt. Erant quī castra Vārī statim oppugnanda cēnsērent; alterī autem

1. facultāte datā : translate as a conditional clause. — esse trānsi-tūrōs : *i.e. will desert* (to Varus).

3. castrīs : built just outside the city walls. — ēdūcit : ēdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead out*. — idem : note the gender.

4. uterque : as noun.

6. appellatiōnis : appellatiō, -ōnis, F., *accosting*; translate here *accosting (them)*. — causam : freely, *excuse (for)*.

8. Vārum sequerentur : *i.e. join the army of Varus.*

9. sī quī : *if any* (noun); cf. the note on *quid*, p. 56, l. 1. —

eum : *i.e. Vārum*. — voluissent : freely, *were willing*; cf. *esset per-ruptus*, p. 107, l. 3. — nūllam in partem : see the Vocab. under pars.

10. significatiō (-ōnis, F.) : *sign*. — ita : *i.e. with the loyalty of Cu-riō's troops still a matter of doubt.*

12. sollicitī : *sollicitus, -a, -um, unsettled*. — quisque : noun..

13. ad id, quod : *freely, to what*. — suī : cf. *suum*, p. 11, l. 6; for syntax of the gen. phrase, cf. glōriae, p. 107, l. 17.

16. cēnsērent : cf. the note on erant quī, p. 109, l. 5. — alterī : *i.e. the other party*.

optimum factū existimābant in Castra Cornēlia legiōnēs redūcere, ut maiōre spatiō temporis interpositō militum mentēs sānārentur, simul ut exercitus, si proeliō victus esset, in Siciliam facile trānsportārī posset. Cūriō tamen "Neutrum 5 cōnsilium," inquit, "probō; neque enim tantī sum animī, ut castra tam mūnīta temerē oppugnanda cēnseam, neque tantī timōris, ut spem statim dīmittam, atque omnia prius experienda arbitror."

Quārē, dīmissō cōnsiliō, cōntiōnem advocat mīlitum; 10 quōrum animōs verbīs cōnfīrmat, docetque quid sit causae, cūr sibi Caesarīque fidēlēs sint. Quā ōrātiōne permōtī mīlitēs eum etiam dicentem interpellābant, discēdētēm vērō ex cōntiōne ūniversī cohortantur ut magnō sit animō nēve dubitet proelium committere et suam fidem virtūtemque 15 experīrī.

1. factū: cf. p. 126, l. 17; omit here in translating.

2. maiōre: absol. compar.—mentēs: mēns, mentis, F., *feeling*, lit. *mind*.

3. sānārentur: sānō, I, *heal*, pass., *become normal*. — simul: i.e. *furthermore*.

4. neutrum: *neuter*, -tra, -trum, *neither* (of two).

5. cōnsilium: contrast the meaning here and on p. 149, l. 15. — neque: cf. p. 127, l. 16.

7. prius: i.e. before giving up hope. — experienda: *experior*, 4, *expertus sum, try*.

9. cōntiōnem: *assembly*. — advocat: *advocō*, I, *call together*.

10. verbīs: sc. suīs. — quid...causae: *what grounds*; for syntax

of the gen., cf. suī timōris, p. 149, l. 13.

11. sint: lit. *they should be*; translate the clause freely.

12. eum: i.e. Cūriōnem. — etiam dicentem: translate this and the following part. by clauses. — interpellābant: *kept interrupting* (interpellō, I). — discēdētēm: sc. eum.

13. cōntiōne: *the meeting*. — ūniversī: *freely, one and all*. — magnō...animō: for syntax, cf. the note on p. 135, l. 2. — nēve: *and not to* (nē + ve); cf. neque (in sense = nōn + que).

14. fidem: *loyalty*; cf. fidēlēs, l. 11.

15. experīrī: *make trial of*; cf. l. 7.

## LESSON 121

*The Pompeians suffer a Second Reverse*

Quibus rēbus cōfirmātus Cūriō cōnstituit, cum p̄imum esset data potestās, proeliō rem committere; postrīdiēque mīlitēs prōductōs eōdem locō, quō ante cōnstiterant, in aciē collocāvit. Quō animadversō, Vārus quoque cōpiās prō-  
5 dūxit, nē, sī aequō locō darētur occāsiō, dīmicandi facultātem dīmitteret.

Erat vallēs inter duās aciēs, ut suprā dēmōnstrātum est, nōn ita magna, at difficilī et arduō ascēnsū. Hanc uterque sī aduersāriōrum cōpiāe trānsire cōnārentur, exspectābat, 10 quō aequiōre locō proelium ipse committeret. Postrēmō Vāri equitēs in vallem dēscendere coepérunt. Ad eōs Cūriō equitātum et duās cohortēs mittit; quōrum p̄imum impetum equitēs hostium nōn ferunt, sed admissis equis ad suōs refugint.

15 Quā rē animadversā, legiōnēs sē sequī iubet Cūriō, et omnibus cum cōpiis in vallem cōfēstī dēscendit; interim autem hostēs, veritē nē ab equitātū circumvenīrentur, terga vertunt ūniversi, ac summā celeritatē sē in castra recipiunt.

2. esset data: cf. exspectāssent, p. 104, l. 18. — proeliō: dat. case.

3. eōdem locō: construe with collocāvit, l. 4. — quō: antecedent, locō.

5. darētur: *i.e. should present itself.* — dīmicandi: gerund.

7. suprā: namely, p. 149, l. 3 ff.

8. ita: *so very.* — arduō: arduus, -a, -um, steep. — ascēnsū: ascēnsus, -ūs, M., slope. — hanc: object of trānsire, l. 9. — uterque: each (*commander*).

9. sī: *in the hope that.* — aduersāriōrum: aduersāriī, -ērum, M., the opposing party. — exspectābat: cf. interpellābant, p. 150, l. 12.

10. quō: cf. the note on p. 101, l. 14.

13. hostium: *i.e. Varus' party.* — admissis: admissus, -a, -um, part., *let go, i.e. at full speed.*

17. equitātū: sc. Cūriōnis (cf. l. 12).

18. castra: cf. the note on p. 149, l. 3.

## LESSON 122

*Narrow Escape of their Commander*

Quā in fugā Fabius Paelignus, mīles quīdam ex Cūriōnis exercitū, agmen fugientium cōsecūtus, magnā vōce Vārum ita nōmine appellāvit, ut ūnus esse ex eius militibus et velle aliquid dicere vidērētur. Ubi autem Vārus saepius appellātus cōstituit, et quis esset aut quid vellet quaesīvit, tum Fabius eius umerum apertum gladiō appetiit. Quod ille periculum sublātō scūtō vītāvit; Fabius autem ā proximis militibus circumventus interficitur.

Interim fugientium multitudine portae castrōrum com-  
plētae sunt, atque iter erat ita impeditum, ut plūrēs in eō locō sine vulnere quam in proeliō aut fugā interirent; nōnnūlli vērō erant adeō perterriti, ut prōtinus eōdem cursū per castra in oppidum ipsum contenderent. At Cūriōnis mīlēs, ad proelium ēgressī, sēcum nūllam cōpiam portāve-  
rant eārum rērum, quae ad oppugnatiōnem castrōrum erant ūsuī. Itaque Cūriō exercitum tum in castra redūcīt.

Cuius discessū vulnerāti ē castrīs hostium in oppidum redūcuntur; quō quidem tempore multī praetereā per simulatiōnem vulnerum propter metum eōdem sēsē recipi-

1. in: *during*.

2. fugientium: sc. hostium.

4. saepius: absol. compar.

5. aut: cf. the note on p.

128, l. 7.

6. apertum: *unprotected*, i.e. the right.—ille: Varus.

7. scūtō: scūtūm, -i, N., *shield*.

10. iter: *roadway*.

11. sine vulnere: i.e. wound inflicted by the enemy.

12. adeō: the adv.—eōdem cursū: i.e. *without stopping*.

13. castra: see again the note on p. 149, l. 3.—ipsum: *proper*.

14. proelium: *a battle (in the open)*.—ēgressī: sc. ex castrīs; translate the part. by a relative clause.

16. tum: *for the time being*.

17. discessū: abl. of time when; translate “on.”

18. quidem: omit in translating.—per: *freely, under*.

19. eōdem: *adv., to the same shelter*.



SCŪTA

This illustration, taken from the carvings on the column of Trajan (see page 40), shows how Roman soldiers, by locking their shields (*scūta*), formed a solid roof over their heads as they came up under a wall from which the enemy were sending down a shower of missiles.

unt. Quā rē animadversā exercitūsque timōre cōgnitō, Vārus, būcinātōre tabernāculisque paucīs in castrīs ad speciem relictīs, tertīā vigiliā reliquum quoque exercitū silentiō in oppidū reducit.

## LESSON 123

*King Juba marches to the Relief of Varus*

5 Postridiē eius diēi Cūriō obsidēre Uticam coepit. Sed iam ad urbem pervenient ā rēge Iubā nūntiī, quī illum adesse magnis cum cōpiīs dīcant oppidānōsque dē dēfēnsiōne urbis hortentur. Nūntiābantur haec eadem Cūriōnī. Ille tamen prīmō rēgem nihil contrā sē ausūrum existimābat; 10 sed ubi certior est factus cōpiās Iubae ab Uticā minus quīnque et vīgintī mīlia passuum abesse, relictīs mūnītiōni bus sēsē in Castra Cornēlia recēpit. Hūc comportāre coepit omnia, quae ad obsidiōnem sustinendam ūsuī erant.

Dum haec fīunt, ex oppidānīs perfugīs audīvit Iubam 15 aliō bellō esse revocātum, et Saburram, eius praefectum, parvīs cum cōpiīs Uticae appropinquāre. Quō audītō, cōnsilium temerē mūtāvit, proeliōque rem committere cō-

2. būcinātōre : būcinātor, -ōris, M., *trumpeter*. — ad speciem : *i.e.* to keep up the appearance of occupancy.

5. eius diēi : omit in translating. The gen. depends upon the diē which enters into the composition of postridiē.

6. Iubā : see the note on p. 148, l. 5.

8. haec eadem : neut. ; translate as singular.

10. minus : *less (than)* ; cf. the use of amplius, p. 101, l. 3.

12. Castra Cornēlia : see again the map on p. 146.

13. omnia : *all sorts of things*. — obsidiōnem : of the same derivation as the verb obsidēre, l. 5.

14. perfugīs : with adj. force, *deserting*.

15. aliō bellō : abl. of means. Apparently this item of news regarding Juba's movements was deliberately fabricated, the "desertions" from the city having been planned for the express purpose of deceiving Curio.

stituit. Quārē equitātum omnem prīmā nocte ad castra Saburrae praemittit; quī hostis necopīnantēs adortus, magnum eōrum numerum occidit. Quō factō, ad Cūriōnem equitēs redeunt captivōsque ad eum redūcunt.

## LESSON 124

*The Numidians resort to Strategy*

5 Cūriō, cohortibus quīnque castrīs praeſidiō relictīs, omnibus cum cōpiīs quārtā vigiliā profectus, sex mīlia passuum iam ipse prōgressus erat. Quī, victōriā equitātūs cōgnitā, etiam celerius iter fēcit; Iubam enim crēdēbat longē abesse, exiguāsque Saburrae cōpiās facile sē opprimere posse  
10 exīstīmābat.

Interim autem Iuba (cuius dē discessū falsō erat nūntiātum, quīque iam haud longē aberat), dē nocturnō proeliō certior factus, duo mīlia equitum eamque peditum partem, cui maximē cōfidēbat, Saburrae subsidiō mittit, ipseque  
15 cum reliquīs cōpiīs elephantīsque sexāgintā lēnius subsequitur. Suspicātus brevī Cūriōnem ipsum adfore, Saburra cōpiās equitum peditumque statim īstrūxit atque eis imperāvit ut simul atque nostri in cōspectum vēnissent, simulātiōne timōris paulātim cēderent.

20 Quō factō, hostēs fugere Cūriō ratus legiōnēs dē collibus

1. *ad*: i.e. to attack.

11. *falsō*: adv., lit. *falsely*; render the clause freely.

12. *quique*: i.e. *qui + que*. — *nocturnō proeliō*: see l. 1 ff.

14. *cōfidēbat*: *cōfidō*, 3, -fīsus sum, with dat., *rely (upon)*. — *subsidiō*: dat. of service.

15. *elephantīs*: *elephantus*, -ī, M., *elephant*.

16. *suspicātus*: translate as a present. — *ipsum*: as contrasted with his cavalry, which had already been in action. — *adfore*: i.e. *ad futūrum esse*.

18. *simul atque*: i.e. *cum pri-  
-mum*. — *vēnissent*: cf. the note on *exspectāssent*, p. 104, l. 18.

19. *simulātiōne*: translate the abl. "with."

in plāniem dēdūxit; cumque longius esset inde prōgressus, cōflectō iam labōre exercitū, locō iniquō cōnstituit. Tum suis sīgnum subitō dat Saburra aciemque explicat. Peditātū prīmō ad speciem tantum ūtitur, equitēs in aciem 5 nostram inmittit.

## LESSON 125

*Curio's Army is Annihilated*

Repentīnā rē minimē permōtus Cūriō ōrdinēs circumiit miliēsque hortātus est ut spem omnem in virtūtē pōnerent. Hī prīmō fortissimē dīmicābant; sed hostēs, quī numerō longē erant superiōrēs, mox aciem nostram circumventam 10 ā tergō adorīrī coepērunt. Tum Cūriō, ubi perterritīs omnibus cohortatiōnēs suās nōn audīrī intellēxit, ūnam salūtis esse spem reliquam arbitrātus, proximōs collēs capere atque eō sīgna ferre iussit. Sed hōs quoque praeoccupat missus ā Saburrā equitātus.

15 Tum vērō ad summam dēspēratiōnem nostrī perveniunt, et Cn. Domitius, praefectus equitum, cum paucīs equitibus circumsistēns, Cūriōnem ūrat ut fugā petat salūtem, et sē ab eō nōn discessūrum pollicētur. At Cūriō numquam sē,

1. longius: absol. compar.  
—inde: *i.e.* from the point where he had left the hills.

2. cōflectō: construe with exercitū.

4. prīmō: the adv.

8. dīmicābant: *kept up the fight.*

9. circumventam: translate as if circumvēnērunt eamque.

10. ā tergō: cf. p. 78, l. 18.—omnibus: noun, forming an abl. absol. with perterritīs.

11. cohortatiōnēs: cohortatiō, -ōnis, F., *exhortation.*

12. spem: *chance.* — capere: *make for;* as subject, suōs may be supplied.

13. eō: the adv. —sīgna: see the notes on pp. 130, l. 1, and 131, l. 16. — hōs: *i.e.* collēs.

15. dēspēratiōnem: dēspēratiō, -ōnis, F., *despair.*

18. numquam sē, etc.: the indirect discourse depends upon cōfirmat, p. 157, l. 2.

āmissō exercitū quem ā Caesare accēpisset, in eius cōspectum redditūrum cōfirmat, atque ita pugnāns interficitur.

Ē proeliō equitēs nostrī perpauci effūgērunt; quibuscum nōnnūlli, quī equōrum reficiendōrum causā in itinere paulum 5 morātī erant, fugā tōtius exercitūs procul animadversā, in columēs in castra sē contulērunt. Peditēs ad ūnum omnēs interfectī sunt.

4. reficiendōrum: reficiō, 3,      6. castra: *i.e.* the camp at -fēcī, -fectus, *refresh.*      Castra Cornēlia.

# SELECTED PASSAGES FROM LATIN PROSE AUTHORS

## AN EPISODE FROM THE GALLIC WAR

(Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō*, VI, 7, 8)

### LESSON 126

Though disconcerted for the time being by Caesar's decisive victory over the Nervii (Lesson 115), the Treveri subsequently more than once threatened the winter camp of Labienus (cf. Lessons 112 and 116, and see the map on page 124).

Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī magnīs coāctīs peditatūs equitatūsque cōpiis Labiēnum cum ūnā legiōne, quae in eōrum fīnibus hiemābat, adorīrī parābant; iamque ab eō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum duās vēnissem̄ 5 legiōnēs missū Caesaris cōgnōscunt. Positīs castrīs ā mīlibus passuum xv, auxilia Germānōrum exspectāre cōstituunt.

Labiēnus, hostium cōgnitō cōnsiliō, spērāns temeritāte eōrum fore aliquam dīmicandī facultātem, praesidiō quīnque

1. haec: *i.e.* events mentioned in the narrative from which this extract is taken.

2. cum: translate "and." — ūnā: *the one.*

4. viā: *than a journey*; abl. with the compar. — vēnissem̄: *i.e.* to reënforce Labienus.

5. missū: missus, -ūs, M., lit. *sending*; here, *order*. — cōgnō-

scunt: cf. *commemorant*, p. 135, l. 6. — ā: as adv., *away* (with abl. of degree of difference).

8. temeritāte: cf. the adv. *temerē*.

9. eōrum: *on their part*. — dīmicandī: *i.e.* before the Germans should arrive. — praesidiō . . . re-lictō: abl. absol. — quīnque cohōrtium: (*consisting*) of five cohorts.

cohortium impedimentis relictō, cum xxv cohortibus magnōque equitātū contrā hostem proficīscitur, et mille passuum intermissō spatiō castra commūnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficilī trānsitū flūmen rīpīsque praeruptīs. 5 Hoc neque ipse trānsire habēbat in animō neque hostēs trānsitūrōs exīstīmābat. Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotīdiē spēs. Loquitur in cōnsiliō palam, quoniam Germāni appropinquāre dicantur, sēsē suās exercitūsque fortūnās in dubium nōn dēvocātūrum, et posterō diē prīmā lūce ca- 10 stra mōtūrum. Celeriter haec ad hostēs dēferuntur, ut ex magnō Gallōrum equitātūs numerō nōnnūllōs Gallicīs rēbus favēre nātūra cōgēbat.

## LESSON 127

*The Enemy are Deceived and become Overconfident*

Labiēnus noctū tribūnīs mīlitum prīmīsque ūrdinibus convocātis, quid suī sit cōnsili, prōpōnit et, quō facilius

1. *impedimentis*: at this time Labienus had charge of the heavy baggage of Caesar's entire army.

*suam salūtem.—exercitūsque : and (that) of the army.*

2. *hostem*: sing. for pl., as in English. — *mille*: indeclinable adj., here as genitive.

9. *dubium*: *i.e. periculum*; lit. what? — *dēvocātūrum*: *dēvocō*, *i. bring*; lit. *call*. — *castra mōtūrum*: *i.e. he will fall back*.

3. *intermissō*: *i.e. relictō* (namely, between him and the enemy). — *commūnit*: *commūniō*, 4, *intrench*.

10. *ut*: *inasmuch as*. — *ex: out of*.

4. *trānsitū*: *trānsitus, -ūs, M.*, *passage* (cf. *trānseō*). — *praeruptis*: *praeruptus, -a, -um, rugged*.

11. *Gallōrum*: *freely, recruited from among the Gauls* (cf. the note on p. 139, l. 10). — *Gallicīs rēbus*: *the Gallic cause*.

7. *spēs*: namely, for the Treveri. — *loquitur*: subject, *Labiēnus*. — *cōnsiliō*: as on p. 126, l. 16. — *quoniam*: *inasmuch as*.

13. *ūrdinibus*: *i.e. centuriōnibus*.

8. *suās . . . fortūnās*: *i.e.*

14. *quid suī sit cōnsili*: *what his plan involves*; lit. *what?* (for *cōnsili*, cf. *Standisi*, p. 16, l. 4). — *prōpōnit*: *i.e. ostendit*. — *quō*: see the note on p. 101, l. 14.

hostibus timōris det suspicōnem, maiōre strepitū et tumultū, quam populī Rōmānī fert cōnsuētūdō, castra movērī iubet. His rēbus fugae similem profectiōnem efficit. Haec quoque per explōrātōrēs ante lūcem in tantā propinquitāte 5 castrōrum ad hostēs dēferuntur.

Vix agmen novissimum extrā mūnītiōnēs prōcesserat, cum Gallī cohortātī inter sē, nē spērātam praedam ex manib⁹ dimitterent — longum esse, perterritis Rōmānis, Germānōrum auxilium exspectāre, neque suam patī dignitātem ut tantis cōpiis tam exiguum manum, praeſertim fugientem atque impeditam, adorīrī nōn audeant — flūmen trānsire et inīquō locō committere proelium nōn dubitant. Quae fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnēs citrā flūmen ēliceret, eādem ūsus simulatiōne itineris placidē prōgressus diēbātur.

1. timōris : namely, on his part.
2. fert : calls for.
3. similem : pred. adj. — haec : neut.

4. per : freely, *by*; cf. p. 141, l. 9. — in tantā propinquitāte : freely, *on account of the close proximity* (propinquitās, -ātis, F., nearness).

6. agmen novissimum : namely, of Labienus' army. With this phrase cf. prīmum agmen, p. 148, l. 6. — prōcesserat: prōcēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessum est: advance.

7. inter sē: freely, *one another*.  
8. longum esse: *it was needless* (lit. *too long*). The indirect discourse is due to the idea of saying implied in cohortātī, l. 7. Do not attempt to translate this paren-

thetical matter (between the dashes) until the rest of the sentence is clear.

10. ut: *that*; dependent on patī. — tantis cōpiis: see p. 158, l. 1.

11. fugientem atque impeditam: modifying manum, l. 10. — flūmen: see p. 159, l. 3 ff.

13. quae: neut., *this*. — fore: supplying here a future infinitive for fiō. — ut: depending on prōgressus diēbātur, l. 1. 14. — omnēs: them all. — citrā: prep., *to the near side of*, i.e. *to his side of*.

14. ūsus: *keeping up*. — itineris: here, *retreat*. — placidē: adv., *steadily*. — prōgrediēbātur: *continued to move on*.

## LESSON 128

*They are Decisively Beaten*

Tum praemissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumulō quōdam collocātis, "Habētis," inquit, "militēs, quam petīstis facultātem; hostem impeditō atque iniquō locō tenētis: praestāte eandem nōbīs ducibus virtūtem, quam saepenu-  
5 merō imperatōrī praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec cōram cernere existimāte." Simul sīgna ad hostem convertī aciemque dērigī iubet; paucīs turmīs praeſidiō ad impedimenta dīmissīs reliquōs equitēs ad latera dispōnit.

Celeriter nostrī clāmōre sublātō pīla in hostēs inmittunt.  
10 Illī ubi praeter spem, quōs modo fugere crēdēbant, īfēstis sīgnīs ad sē īre vidērunt, impetum ferre nōn potuērunt, ac prīmō concursū in fugam coniecti proximās silvās petivērunt. Quōs Labiēnus equitātū cōnsectātus, magnō numerō interfēctō, complūribus captīs, paucīs post diēbus cīvitātem  
15 recēpit. Nam Germānī, qui auxiliō veniēbant, perceptā Trēverōrum fugā, sēsē domum recēpērunt.

1. tumulō: *tumulus, -ī, M.*, *hill*. convertī: *a signal to change front.*

2. inquit: *subject, Labiēnus.* 7. dērigī: *i.e. īstruī* (*dērigō, 3. -rēxī, -rēctus*).

—militēs: *voc. case.* — quam petīstis facultātem: *i.e. eam facultātem quam petivistis.*

4. nōbīs ducibus: *i.e. mē duce* (abl. absol.). The use of the first person pl. for the corresponding sing. is very common. — saepenu-

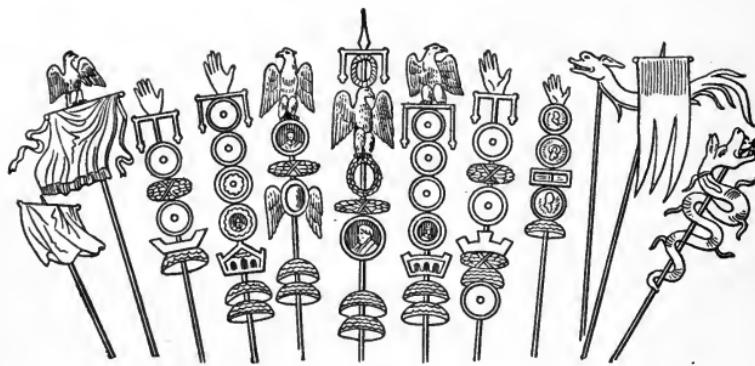
merō: *i.e. saepe; strictly, numerō* is abl. of specification. 11. ad . . . īre: *freely, advancing upon.* — ac: *freely, but.*

5. imperatōrī: *freely, before the eyes of your commander in chief* (*i.e. Caesar*). — haec: *this action.*

6. cōram: *adv., in person.* — cernere: *i.e. vidēre.* — sīgna . . . 12. concursū: *concurrus, -ūs, M., clash* (cf. *colcurrō*).

13. cōnsecratus: *cōnsector, I, follow up.*

14. recēpit: *sc. in dēdictiōnem.* — perceptā: *i.e. cōgnitā* (*percipiō, 3. -cēpi, -ceptus*).



SIGNA

With these standards compare those shown in the illustrations on page 132. Flags (*vexilla*) were used for giving signals, and to differentiate small bodies of troops. In the matter of inspiring loyalty among the men, their effect was in general very slight as compared with that of the flag in modern armies.

## AN EPISODE FROM THE CIVIL WAR

(Caesar, *Dē Bellō Civili*, III, 95–98)

### LESSON 129

When, in 49 B.C., Caesar marched some of his troops south into Italy, and thus precipitated the civil war between himself and Pompey (cf. the episode in Lessons 117–125), Pompey was taken by surprise, and retired into Greece. In the decisive battle of Pharsalus, fought there in the following year, Caesar gained the first advantage, driving the Pompeians back to the shelter of their ramparts.

Caesar, Pompēiānīs ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsiō, nūllum spatiū perterritīs dari oportēre existimāns, mīlītēs cohortātus est ut beneficīō Fortūnae ūterentur castraque oppugnārent. Quī, etsī magnō aestū fatigātī—nam ad 5 meridiem rēs erat perducta—tamen ad omnem labōrem animō parātī, imperiō pāruērunt.

Castra ā cohortibus, quae ibi praesidiō erant relictæ, industriē dēfendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius ā Thrācibus barbarisque auxiliis. Nam quī ex aciē refūgerant mīlītēs, 10 et animō perterritī et lassitūdine cōflectī, missīs plēriū

1. vāllum: *i.e.* of their own camp.

2. spatiū: *respite*.—perterritīs: modifying eīs, supplied.—dari oportēre: *should be allowed* (*oportet*, 2, -uit, impersonal verb, lit. *it is fitting*).

4. aestū: *aestus*, -ūs, M., *heat*.—fatigātī: *i.e.* dēfessī (*fatigō*, 1).

5. meridiem: *here*, *midday*.—rēs: *engagement*.

6. animō: abl. of specification; translate freely.

7. castra: *namely*, of Pompey.—industriē: adv., *energetically*.

8. multō: construe with ācrius.

9. -que: *and (other)*.—quī . . . mīlītēs: *i.e.* eī mīlītēs, quī. —aciē: *i.e.* proeliō.

10. lassitūdine: *lassitūdō*, -inis, F., *weariness*.—missīs: *discarded* (cf. dīmittō).—plēriū: *freely*,

armis sīgnisque mīlitāribus, magis dē reliquā fugā quam dē castrōrum dēfēnsiōne cōgitābant. Neque vērō diūtius, quī in vāllō cōnstiterant, multitūdinem tēlōrum sustinēre potuērunt, sed cōfectī vulneribus locum reliquērunt, 5 prōtinusque omnēs, ducib⁹ ūsi centuriōnibus tribūnīsque mīlitum, in altissimōs montēs, quī ad castra pertinēbant, cōnfūgērunt.

Caesar, castris potitus, ā mīlitibus contendit nē, in praeđā occupātī, reliquī negōtī gerendī facultātem dimit-  
10 terent. Quā rē impetrātā, montem opere circummūnīre instituit.

### LESSON 130

#### *Unconditional Surrender of the Pompeians*

Pompeīānī, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffisi eī locō, relictō monte, ūniversi iugis eius Lārisam versus sē recipere coepērunt. Quā rē animadversā, Caesar cōpiās suās divisit,

*in the majority of cases*; the word agrees with *militēs*, though in sense it belongs with the abl. *absol.* Be careful to make the rendering of this sentence idiomatic throughout.

1. *militāribus*: *militāris*, -is, -e, lit. *military*. *sīgna militāria* is the full expression for “standards”; usually the adj. is omitted.  
— *dē reliquā fugā*: *i.e. about resuming their flight*.

2. *diūtius*: *absol. compar.*
3. *in vāllō*: *i.e. to defend it.*
4. *locum*: (*their*) *posts*.
5. *ducib⁹ ūsi*: lit. *having (as) leaders*; translate freely.
6. *altissimōs*: *absol. superl.*
7. *cōnfūgērunt*: *cōfugiō*, 3,

-*fūgiō*, with *in* and the acc., *take refuge (upon)*.

8. *contendit*: *i.e. petivit.*  
10. *montem*: *i.e. the particular height upon which the Pompeians had finally assembled*.—*circummūnīre*: *circummūniō*, 4, *girdle*.

11. *instituit*: *i.e. coepit (instituō, 3, -stituī, -stitūtus).*

12. *diffisi*: *diffidō*, 3, *-fisus sum*, with dat., *lack confidence (in)*.

13. *iugis*: *iugum*, -ī, N., *ridge*; translate the abl. “*along*” (way by which).—*eius*: *i.e. montis*.—*Lārisam*: a town some miles north, toward which Pompey had already fled, making for the sea.—*versus*: translate as if *ad . . . versus* (cf. the note on p. 79, l. 21).

partemque legiōnum in castris Pompēi remanēre iussit, partem in sua castra remisit, IV sēcum legiōnēs dūxit, commodiōreque itinere Pompēiānis occurrere coepit, et prōgressus mīlia passuum VI, aciem īstrūxit. Quā rē 5 animadversā, Pompēiāni in quōdam monte cōstitērunt. Hunc montem flūmen subluēbat. Caesar mīlitēs cohortātus, etsī tōtius diēi continentī labōre erant cōflectī noxque iam suberat, tamen mūnitiōne flūmen ā monte sēclūsit, nē noctū aquārī Pompēiāni possent.

10 Quō perfectō opere, illi dē dēditiōne missis lēgātīs agere coepērunt. Pauci ūrdinis senātōrii, qui sē cum hīs coniūnxerant, nocte fugā salūtem petivērunt. Caesar p̄imā lūce omnēs eōs, qui in monte cōnsēderant, ex superiōribus locīs in plānitiēm dēscendere atque arma prōicere iussit. 15 Quod ubi sine recūsatiōne fēcērunt, passisque palmīs prōiectī ad terram flentēs ab eō salūtem petivērunt, cōnsolātus cōnsurgere iussit et pauca apud eōs dē lēnitāte suā locūtus, quō minōre essent timōre, omnēs cōservāvit.

1. **Pompēi**: cf. the note on *Standisi*, p. 16, l. 4. — **remanēre**: remaneō, 2, -mānsī, -mānsum est, remain.

2. **sua**: note the position.

3. **commodiōre**: *i.e.* than the route taken by the enemy.

6. **subluēbat**: subluō, 3, —, —, wash the base of.

7. **continentī**: as adj. (abl. case), unbroken.

8. **suberat**: *i.e.* aderat (subsum, -esse, -fui). — **sēclūsit**: sēclūdō, 3, -clūsī, -clūsus, shut off.

9. **aquārī**: aquor, I, get water.

10. **opere**: *i.e.* the mūnitiō of l. 8. — **dē dēditiōne**: construe with agere.

11. **senātōrii**: senātōrius, -a,

-um, senatorial; the highest order in the Roman state (cf. the note on p. 125, l. 9). — **hīs**: *i.e.* the Pompeian forces.

12. **nocte**: *i.e.* noctū.

15. **recūsatiōne**: recūsatiō, -ōnis, F., protest (cf. *recūsō*). — **palmīs**: *i.e.* manibus (palma, -ae, F.) — **prōiectī**: freely, falling forward.

16. **salūtem**: *i.e.* (their) lives. — **cōnsolātus**: sc. eōs.

17. **cōnsurgere**: *i.e.* surgere (cōnsurgō, 3, -surrēxi, -surrēctum est). — **apud eōs**: in their hearing, *i.e.* to them. — **lēnitāte**: lēnitās, -ātis, F., humaneness.

18. **quō**: note the compar. in the clause. — **minōre** . . . **timōre**: abl. of characteristic.

## THE DEATH OF CAESAR

(Suetonius, *Iulius*, 81, 82)

### LESSON 131

As a result of the civil war, Caesar became master of the Roman world. Many did not approve of his absolute power, and a plot was formed to take his life. As he left home for the senate house on the fatal day, some one pushed into his hand a document telling of the conspiracy ; but he did not stop to examine it.

Plūribus hostiis caesīs, cum litāre nōn posset, introiit cūriam sprētā religiōne Spurinnamque irridēns et ut falsum arguēns, quod sine ūllā suā noxā Idūs Mārtiae adessent : quamquam is vēnisse quidem eās diceret, sed nōn praeterīsse. Assidentem cōspirātī speciē officiī circumstetērunt ; īlicōque Cimber Tillius, qui prīmās partēs suscēperat, quasi

1. plūribus : *i.e.* complūribus.  
— hostiis : hostia, -ae, F., *sacrificial victim*. — caesīs : caedō, 3, cecidi, caesus, *slay*. — cum : concessive. — litāre : litō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, *secure favorable omens* ; the condition of the entrails of the slaughtered animals being supposed to portend good fortune or the reverse. — introiit : introeō, -ire, -ii, -itus, *enter*.

2. cūriam : cūria, -ae, F., *senate house*. — sprētā : from spērnō. — Spurinnam : a priest who had predicted peril for Caesar on the 15th of March (*Idūs Mārtiae*, l. 3).

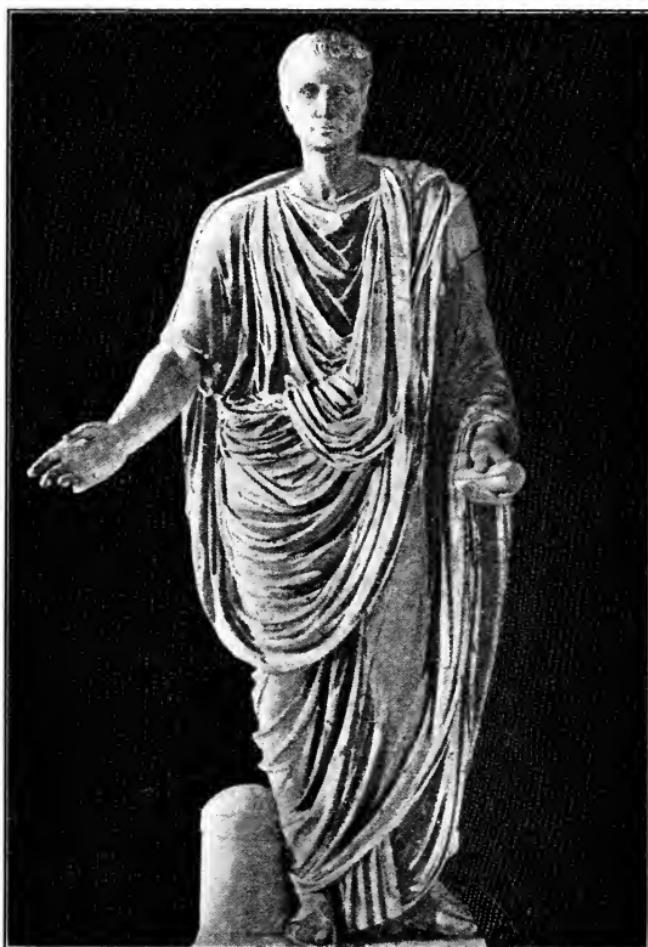
— irridēns (-entis, part.) : *deriding*. — ut falsum : *as (a) false (prophet)*.

3. arguēns (-entis, part.) : *as sailing*. — quod : as on p. 55, l. 11. — suā noxā (noxa, -ae, F.) : *harm to him (Caesar)*.

4. is : *i.e.* Spurinna.

5. assidentem : sc. Caesarem (assidō, 3, -sēdī, -sessum est, *take one's seat*). — cōspirātī (-ōrum, M.) : *the conspirators*. — officiī : of (*showing*) respect.

6. īlicō (adv.) : *i.e.* statim. — prīmās partēs : *i.e. the leading rôle*.



CAIUS IULIUS CAESAR

A Roman of distinguished family, and one of the ablest warriors the world has known.

aliquid rogātūrus proprius accessit, renuentīque et gestū in aliud tempus differentī ab utrōque umerō togam apprehendit; deinde clāmantem, "Ista quidem vīs est," alter ē Cascis āversum vulnerat, paulum īfrā iugulum.

5 Caesar Cascae bracchium arreptum graphiō trāiēcit, cōnātusque prōsilīre aliō vulnere tardātus est; utque animadvertisit undique sē strīctīs pūgiōnibus petī, togā caput obvolvit, simul sinistrā manū sinum ad īma crūra dēdūxit, quō honestius caderet, etiam īferiōre corporis 10 parte vēlātā. Atque ita tribus et vīgintī plāgīs cōnfossus est, ūnō modo ad prīmum īctum gemitū sine vōce ēditō; etsī trādidērunt quīdam Mārcō Brūtō inruentī dīxisse, "Kāl

1. aliquid rogātūrus: *intending to make some request*; lit. what? — renuentī: sc. Caesari (renuō, 3, -nūi, *shake (one's) head*); translate by a clause introduced by "as"; the lit. meaning of the dat. is "for." — gestū: *gestus*, -ūs, M., *gesture*.

2. differenti: sc. eum, lit. *putting (him) off*. — ab: *at*; cf. the use of ex in phrases like omnibus ex partibus. — togam: *toga*, -ae, F., *robe*. — apprehendit: *apprehendō*, 3, -prehēndi, -prehēnsus, *lay hold of*.

3. clāmantem: sc. Caesarem. — ista: for istud (subject of est); cf. the agreement of quod, p. 30, l. 6. — vīs: (*downright*) *violence*. — Cascis: the two were brothers (nom. Casca).

4. āversum: *from behind*, lit. *turned away*. — īfrā: prep., *below*. — iugulum: *iugulum*, -ī, N., *neck*.

5. bracchium: *bracchium*, -ī, N., *arm*. — graphiō: *graphium*, -ī, N., *stylus*. — trāiēcit: *trāiciō*, 3, -iēci, -iectus, *pierce*.

6. prōsilīre: *prōsiliō*, 4, -ui, *leap forward*. — tardātus est: tardō, 1, *stop*. — ut: *i.e. ubi*.

7. strīctīs: *strīctus*, -a, -um, part., *drawn*. — pūgiōnibus: *i.e. sīcīs* (*pūgiō*, -ōnis, M.). — togā: cf. l. 2.

8. obvolvit: *obvolvō*, 3, -volvī, -volvūtus, *shroud*. — sinistrā: *sinister*, -tra, -trum, *left*. — sinum: *sinus*, -ūs, M., *fold*; translate here as pl., (*its*) *folds*. — ad īma crūra: *i.e. to his ankles* (*crūs*, *crūris*, N., *leg*).

9. honestius: *honestē* (adv.), *in seemly fashion*.

10. vēlātā: *i.e. tēctā* (*vēlō*, 1). — plāgīs: *i.e. vulneribus* (*plāga*, -ae, F.).

11. ūnō: construe with gemitū. — modo: *i.e. tantum*. — ad: *at*. — īctum: *ictus*, -ūs, M., *blow*. — vōce: *articulation*.

12. inruentī: *inruēns*, -entis, part., *pressing forward*. — dīxisse: sc. eum (*i.e. Caesarem*). — Kāl σὺ τέκνον; *you too, my boy?*

*σὺ τέκνον;*" Exanimis, diffugientibus cūnctīs, aliquamdiū iacuit, dōnec lectīcae impositum, dēpendente bracchiō, trēs servolī domum rettulērunt. Nec in tot vulnerib⁹, ut Antistius medicus existimābat, lētāle ūllū repertum est, nisi quod secundō locō in pectore accēperat.

## THE FATE OF HANNIBAL

(Nepos, *Hannibal*, 12, 13)

### LESSON 132

The second Punic War, waged between the Romans and Carthaginians from 218 to 201 B.C., ended in a complete victory for the Romans. The latter, however, were suspicious that Hannibal, the most famous general of the Carthaginians, was simply biding his time to renew the war under more favorable conditions ; and so they desired to arrest and hold him as a prisoner. By hastening into exile, Hannibal escaped for some years, and improved the opportunity to stir up a great deal of trouble for the Romans in the East.

Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī Prūsiae Rōmae apud T. Quīntium Flāminīnum cōsulārem

1. exanimis (-is, -e) : *lifeless.*  
— diffugientibus : *diffugiō*, 3, -fūgī, *scatter.* — cūnctīs : *i.e.* omnibus, as noun (cūnctī, -ae, -a).

2. lectīcae : *lectīca*, -ae, F., *litter.* — dēpendente : *dēpendēns*, -entis, part., *hanging down.* — bracchiō : cf. p. 168, l. 5.

3. servolī : *servolus*, -ī, M., *young slave*; cf. *servus*. — rettulērunt : sc. eum. — in : *among.* — ut : *as.*

4. medicus (-ī, M.) : *physician.*  
— lētāle : *i.e.* exitiāle (lētālis, -is,

-e). — nisi quod : *excepting (one) which.*

5. secundō : *i.e.* *specially vulnerable*; lit. *favorable.* — pectore : *pectus*, -oris, N., *chest.*

6. quae : *i.e.* events narrated in previous chapters. — Asiā : *i.e.* Asia Minor. — accidit : impersonal expression. — cāsū : *i.e.* forte. — Prūsiae (nom. in -a, or -ās) : king of Bithynia (cf. p. 170, l. 5). The gen. may be rendered "from."

7. cōsulārem : *cōsulāris*, -is, M., *ex-consul.*

cēnārent, atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā, ex eis ūnus diceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāminīnus senātū dētulit. Patrēs cōscripti, qui Hannibale vīvō numquam sē sine īsidiis futūrōs exīstimārent, 5 lēgātōs in Bīthyniam misērunt (in eis Flāminīnum), quī ab rēge peterent, nē inimīcissimum suum sēcum habēret sibique dēderet. Hīs Prūsia negāre ausus nōn est. Illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fierī postulārent, quod adversus iūs hospitiī esset; ipsī, sī possent, comprehendērent; locum, 10 ubi esset, facile inventūrōs.

## LESSON 133

*Death rather than Captivity*

Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat, in castellō, quod ei ā rēge datum erat mūnerī, idque sīc aedificārat, ut in omnibus

- 1. *mentiōne*: mentiō, -ōnis, F., *mention*.
- 2. *diceret*: in the same construction as *cēnārent*, l. 1. — *eum*: Hannibal.
- 3. *patrēs cōscripti*: *i.e. the senators* (*cōscriptus*, -a, -um, lit. *enrolled*). — *Hannibale vīvō*: abl. *absol.*; translate by a clause introduced by “as long as.”
- 4. *existimārent*: subjunctive in a causal relative clause.
- 5. *in eis*: cf. p. 38, l. 14.
- 6. *inimīcissimum suum*: *their deadly foe*. — *sēcum habēret*: *i.e. harbor*.
- 7. *sibique dēderet*: *i.e. eumque ut sibi dēderet*. — *hīs*: *i.e. lēgātīs*. — *illud . . . nē*: *this . . . that*.
- 8. *id*: *a thing*; antecedent of *quod*. — *adversus* (prep.): *i.e. contrā*.
- 9. *hospitiī*: *hospitium*, -i, N., *hospitality*. — *ipsī . . . comprehendērent*: sc. *eum*, *i.e. let them arrest him themselves*.
- 10. *inventūrōs*: sc. *eōs* (subject). The indirect discourse depends upon the idea of saying underlying *recūsāvit*, l. 8; cf. *longum esse*, etc., p. 160, l. 8.
- 11. *enīm*: referring to what is said in the last clause of Lesson 132. — *in*: *namely, in*.
- 12. *rēge*: *i.e. Prūsiā*. — *mūnerī*: *i.e. dōnō*, dat. of service (*mūnus*, -eris, N.). — *aedificārat*: *i.e. aedificāverat*.

partibus aedificiī exitūs habēret, scilicet verēns nē ūsū venīret, quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānī vēnissent ac multitūdine domum eius circumdedissent, puer, ab iānuā prōspiciēns, Hannibalī dīxit plūris praeter cōnsuētūdinem 5 armātōs appārēre. Qui imperāvit eī ut omnīs forīs circumīret ac properē sibi nūntiāret num eōdem modō undique obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter quid vīdisset renūntiāsset, omnīsque exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuitō factum, sed sē petī neque sibi diūtius vitam esse retinen- 10 dam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dimitteret, memor prīstinārum virtūtū, venēnum, quod semper sēcum habēre cōnsuērat, sūmpsīt. Sīc vir fortissimus, multis variīsque perfūnctus labōribus, annō acquiēvit septuāgēsimō.

1. aedificiī: aedificium, -ī, N., *structure*. — verēns: *i.e. veritus*. — ūsū venīret: *sc. id (subject), i.e. that (thing) would happen*.

2. quod accidit: *which (actually) did come to pass (namely, the discovery by the Romans of his hiding place)*. — hūc: cf. p. 154, l. 12.

3. puer: *i.e. servus*. — iānuā: iānua, -ae, F., *door*.

4. plūris: modifying armātōs, l. 5. — praeter cōnsuētūdinem: *than usual; lit. beyond the ordinary*.

5. appārēre: *i.e. in cōspectū esse (appāreō, 2, -ui)*. — qui: *i.e. Hannibal*. — eī: *i.e. puerō*. — forīs: *i.e. exitūs* (cf. l. 1).

6. properē (adv.): *i.e. celerititer*. — num: conjunction, *whether*.

7. puer cum: *i.e. cum puer*. — renūntiāsset: *renūntiō, i, report*.

8. sēnsit: *subject, Hannibal*. — fortuitō (adv.): *i.e. cāsū*.

9. factum: *sc. esse*. — retinēndam: render the gerundive by “could.”

10. quam: *i.e. vitam*. — nē: freely, *to avoid* (with part. in -ing). — arbitriō: *arbitrium, -ī, N., bidding*.

11. virtūtū: freely, *career of valor*.

12. cōnsuērat: *i.e. cōnsuēverat*.

13. perfūnctus: *perfungor, 3, -fūnctus sum, experience*. This verb takes the same construction as ūtor and potior. — acquiēvit: *acquiēscō, 3, -quiēvi, rest, i.e. die*.

## CATILINE'S CONSPIRACY

(Sallust. *Bellum Catilinae*, 40, 41, 60)

### LESSON 134

In 63 B.C. Marcus Cicero (brother of the Quintus Cicero who subsequently figured in the events described in Lesson 108 ff.) had to deal with a rather alarming conspiracy which aimed to revolutionize the government of Rome. The chief conspirator, Catiline, took the field with an army, while Lentulus, who was secretly in sympathy with him, supervised matters in the city. One day Lentulus noticed there two Gallic envoys who had come to Rome to complain that Roman officials were oppressing their people, and he thereupon conceived the idea of further embarrassing the government by inducing these Gauls to stir up a revolt among their countrymen.

Igitur P. Umbrēnō cuidam negōtium dat, utī lēgātōs Allobrogum requīrat eōsque, sī possit, impellat ad societātem belli, existimāns pūblicē prīvātimque aere alienō oppressōs, praetereā quod nātūrā gēns Gallica bellicōsa 5 esset, facile eōs ad tāle cōnsilium addūcī posse.

Umbrēnus, quod in Galliā negōtiātus erat, plērisque prīcipibus cīvitātium nōtus erat atque eōs nōverat. Itaque

1. P.: *i.e.* Pūbliō.—dat: subject, Lentulus. — utī: *i.e.* ut.

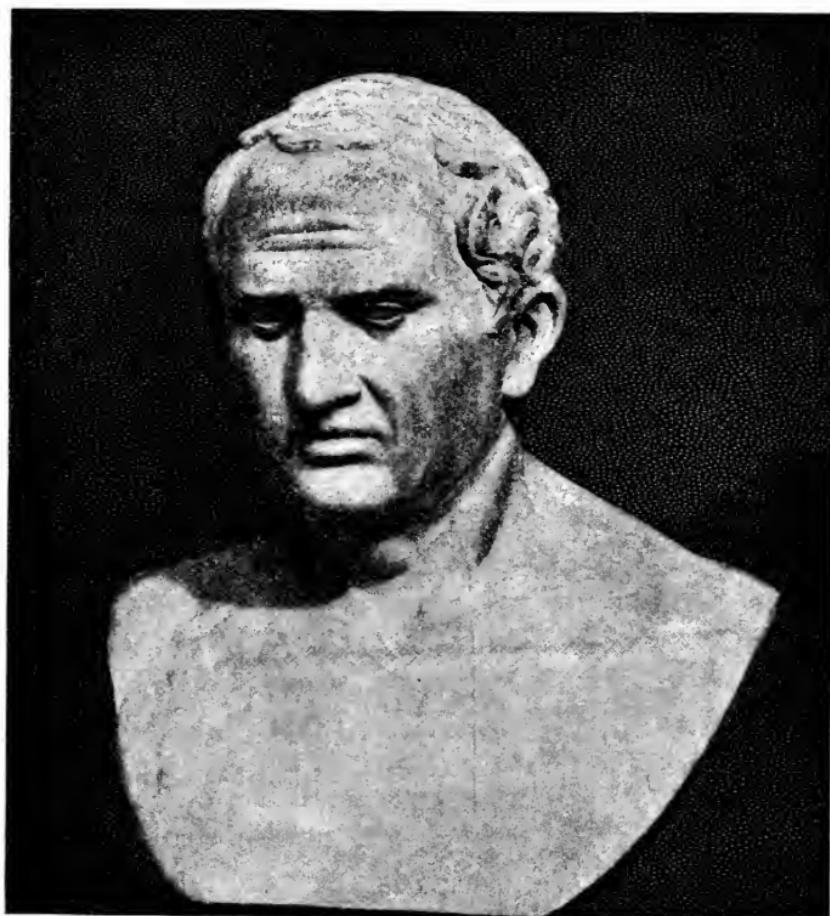
2. Allobrogum: a tribe of southeast Gaul. — requīrat: requīrō, 3, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, seek out. — impellat: impellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsus, incite. — societātem: societās, -ātis, F., with gen., partnership (*in*).

3. pūblicē prīvātimque: advs., as a people and as individuals.

4. oppressōs: modifying eōs (*i.e.* Allobrogēs) supplied. — bellicōsa: bellicōsus, -a, -um, warlike.

5. esset: for mood, cf. the note on admoveantur, p. 61, l. 14; translate as a present. — tāle: tālis, -is, -e, such a.

7. cīvitātium: cf. the note on p. 123, l. 11. — nōverat: nōscō, 3, nōvī, nōtus: become acquainted with.



MĀRCUS TULLIUS CICERŌ

The first of his family to reach the consulship, Cicero won some fame as a statesman by suppressing the conspiracy of Catiline ; but his chief and lasting distinction was along literary lines. In oratory he was hardly rivaled in his own generation ; and his writings are a priceless possession.

sine morā, ubi prīmum lēgātōs in forō cōnspēxit, percontātus pauca dē statū cīvitātis et quasi dolēns eius cāsum, requirere coepit, quem exitum tantis malis spērārent. Postquam illōs videt querī dē avāritiā magistrātūm, accūsāre 5 senātūm quod in eō auxilī nihil esset, miseriīs suīs remedium mortem exspectāre, “at ego,” inquit, “vōbis, sī modo virī esse vultis, ratiōnem ostendam, quā tanta ista mala effugiātis.”

## LESSON 135

*The Envoys are Initiated into the Conspiracy*

Haec ubi dixit, Allobrogēs in maximam spem adducti, 10 Umbrēnum ērāre ut suī miserētur: nihil tam asperum neque tam difficile esse, quod nōn cupidissimē factūrī essent, dum ea rēs cīvitātēm aere aliēnō liberāret. Ille eōs in domum D. Brūti perdūcit, quod forō propinqua erat

1. percontātus: percontor, 1, ask.

2. statū: status, -ūs, M., with gen., *situation (in)*. — cīvitātis: sc. eōrum. — quasi: cf. p. 166, l. 6. — dolēns: doleō, 2, -uī, be concerned about.

3. requirere: inquire (cf. p. 172, l. 2). — exitum: solution, lit., way out (cf. p. 171, l. 1). — tantis malis: dat. case.

4. magistrātūm: magistrātus, -ūs, M., official. — accūsāre: accusō, 1, rail at.

5. quod: cf. the note on p. 62, l. 13. — eō: i.e. senātū. — miseriīs: miseriae, -ārum, F., troubles. — remedium: (as) a solution (remedium, -ī, N.).

7. virī esse: i.e. play the part

of men. — tanta: freely, overwhelming. — ista: those . . . of yours.

10. ērāre: for ērāvērunt. — suī: gen. pl. — miserētur: miseror, 2, miseritus sum, with gen., take pity (on). — nihil, etc.: the indirect discourse is due to the idea of saying underlying ērāre.

11. neque: translate “or.” — quod nōn . . . factūrī essent: that they would not undertake it; a relative clause of result.

12. dum: provided only. — ea rēs: it. — aere aliēnō: translate the abl. “from” or “of.” — ille: Umbrenus.

13. in domum: cf. the note on p. 16, l. 11. — D.: i.e. Decimi.

neque aliēna cōsili propter Semprōniām: nam tum Brūtus ab Rōmā aberat. Praetereā Gabiniūm arcēssit, quō maior auctōritās sermōnī inesset. Eō praesente coniūrātiōnem aperuit, nōminat sociōs, praetereā multōs cuiusque generis 5 innoxiōs, quō lēgātīs animus amplior esset. Deinde eōs pollicitōs operam suam domum dīmittit.

Sed Allobrogēs diū in incertō habuēre, quidnam cōsili caperent: in alterā parte erat aes aliēnum, studium belli, magna mercēs in spē victōriāe, at in alterā maiōrēs opēs, 10 tūta cōnsilia, prō incertā spē certa praemia. Haec illis volventibus, tandem vicit fortūna reī pūblicae. Itaque Q. Fabiō Sangae, cuius patrōciniō cīvitās plūrimum ūtēbātur, rem omnem, utī cōgnōverant, aperiunt. Cicerō, per San-

1. aliēna: with gen., *unfriendly* (*to*). — Semprōniām: wife of Brutus, who was himself not a party to the conspiracy.

2. quō: note the compar. in the clause. Umbrenus was a freedman, hence the need of calling in a conspirator of better social standing.

3. sermōnī: sermō, -ōnis, M., *interview*.—inesset: īsum, inesse, infuī, with dat., lit. *be (in)*; translate the phrase freely.—eō: *i.e.* Gabiniō.

4. nōminat: nōminō, I, *name*.—praetereā: (*and*) *in addition*.

5. innoxiōs: pred. adj. (*innocuous, -a, -um, innocent*).—amplior: amplius, -a, -um, *great* (cf. the adv. amplius).

6. suam: modifier of operam.—domum: *i.e.* to their temporary quarters in Rome.

7. in incertō habuēre (for

habuērunt): *freely, were undecided*.—quidnam: *what . . . really*, -nam being an intensive particle.—cōsili: for syntax, cf. *quid . . . causae*, p. 150, l. 10.

8. alterā . . . alterā (l. 9): *the one . . . the other*.—studium (-i, N.): with gen., *liking (for)*.

9. mercēs (-ēdis, F.): *inducement*.—opēs: namely, those of the government (*ops, opis, F., help; pl., resources*).

10. illis: *i.e.* Allobrogibus.

11. volventibus: volvō, 3, volvī, volūtus, *turn over in (one's) mind*; cf. the note on dēfendente, p. 44, l. 17.—tandem: adv., *at length*.—rei pūblicae: sc. Rōmānae.

12. patrōciniō: patrōcinium, -i, N., *legal services*.—plūrimum: see multum.

13. utī (*i.e.* ut): *as*.—cōgnōverant: sc. eam.—Cicerō: see the note at the head of Lesson 134.

gam cōnsiliō cōgnitō, lēgātīs praecepit, ut studium cōiūratiōnis vehementer simulent, cēterōs adeant, bene polliceantur, dentque operam uti eōs quam maximē manifēstōs habeant.

## LESSON 136

The envoys, pretending that it would be difficult to persuade their countrymen to revolt unless the matter were put into writing, easily secured thus from the conspirators evidence sufficient to convict nine of the ringleaders, five of whom were promptly executed in the public prison. Shortly afterward, in the north country, the army of Catiline (see the note at the head of Lesson 134) was brought to bay by the government forces, and he chose to try conclusions with a division which on the day of battle was under the command of a veteran officer named Petreius.

5 Sed ubi, omnibus rēbus explōrātīs, Petrēius tubā sīgnū dat, cohortis paulātim incēdere iubet; idem facit hostiū exercitus. Postquam eō ventum est, unde [ā] ferentāriīs proelium committī posset, maximō clāmōre cum īfēstis sīgnīs concurrunt: pīla omittunt, gladiis rēs geritur. Ve-

1. praecepit (for *praecipit*): *i.e.* imperat (*praeciō*, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus). — studium: cf. p. 175, l. 8.

2. cēterōs: *i.e.* the other conspirators in Rome.

3. utī: *that.* — maximē: cf. the note on p. 44, l. 11. — manifēstōs: manifēstus, -a, -um, *obviously guilty*; translate the phrase freely.

5. sed: *now.* — explōrātīs: *inspected.* — tubā: tuba, -ae, F., trumpet. See the second illustration on p. 60.

6. dat: If rendered as a past,

use the pluperfect. — cohortis: sc. suās. — incēdere: incēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, *advance.* — hostiū: *i.e.* Catiline and his followers.

7. eō . . . unde: *to a point where* (lit. *whence*). — ferentāriīs: ferentāriī, -ōrum, M., *light-armed troops* (e.g. slingers; cf. the top illustration on p. 140).

9. omittunt: *make no use of;* lit. *omit* (*omittō*, 3, -mīsl, -missus). Contrast the regular procedure for beginning battle, p. 161, l. 9 —rēs: *the fighting.* — veterānī: *i.e.* of the government army.

terānī, prīstinae virtūtis memorēs, comminus ācriter īstāre, illī haud timidē resistunt: maximā vī certātur.

Intereā Catilīna cum expeditīs in prīmā aciē versārī, labōrantibus succurrere, integrōs prō sauciīs arcēssere, 5 omnia prōvidēre, multum ipse pugnāre, saepe hostem ferīre: strēnuī mīlitis et bonī imperātōris officia simul exsequēbātur. Petrēius, ubi videt Catilīnam, contrā ac ratus erat, magnā vī tendere, cohorte:n praetōriam in mediōs hostis indūcit eōsque perturbātōs atque aliōs alibī resi-10 stentīs interficit, deinde utrimque ex laterībus cēterōs adgreditur. Mānlius et Faesulānus in prīmīs pugnantēs cadunt. Catilīna, postquam fūsās cōpiās sēque cum paucīs

1. comminus: adv., *at close quarters*. — īstāre: īstō, I, -stiti, *press the fight*. Here, and several times below, the pres. infin. replaces a third person of the perf. or imperf. indic.

2. illī: *i.e. their opponents*. — haud timidē: *i.e. boldly* (timidē, adv., *with fear*). — certātur: *i.e. dīmicātur* (*certō, I, -āvī, -ātum est*).

3. prīmā: *the front of*; cf. the use of *summum*, p. 104, l. 4.

4. labōrantibus: part. (sc. eīs), *those hard pressed*. — succurrere: *i.e. auxiliō venire* (*succurrō, 3, -currī, -cursum est*). — prō: *freely, to replace*. — sauciīs: *i.e. vulne-rātīs* (*saucius, -a, -um*).

5. ferīre: *i.e. percutere* (*feriō, 4, —, —*). — exsequēbātur: *i.e. praestābat* (*exsequor, 3, -secūtūs sum*); cf. p. 129, l. 9.

6. contrā: adv., lit. *differently*. — ac: *than, lit. as.. The whole phrase = praeter spēm*, p. 161, l. 10.

7. tendere: *tendō, 3, tetendī,*

*tentus, stretch; here, exert (one's self)*. — mediōs: *who occupy the center*.

9. indūcit: *indūcō, 3, -dūxi, -ductus*, lit. *lead (against)*. — atque: *connecting the two principles*. — aliōs alibī: *some in one place, some in another*; cf. aliī in aliam, p. 80, l. 5.

10. utrimque: adv., *on either side*. — laterībus: cf. *latera*, p. 161, l. 8, and (for the form of phrase) *omnibus ex partibus*, etc. — adgreditur: *i.e. adorūtur* (*adgredior, 3, -gressus sum*). Petreius first broke through the center, and then to the right and left made a flank attack upon the remnants of the enemy's line.

11. Mānlius et Faesulānus: *Manlius and the citizen of Faesulae* (a town of Etruria), Catiline's chief lieutenants. — in prīmīs: *i.e. in the front rank*.

12. fūsās: *fundō, 3, fūdī, fūsus, scatter*. — paucīs: *i.e. (but) a handful*.

relictum videt, memor generis atque prīstinae suae dignitatis, in cōfertissimōs hostis incurrit, ibique pugnāns cōnfoditur.

## ON THE EASTERN FRONTIER

(Cicero, *Ad Familiārēs*, XV, 4)

### LESSON 137

About ten years after the suppression of the conspiracy of Catiline, Cicero, much against his inclination, was appointed governor of Cilicia and neighboring districts. Below are given extracts from a letter which he wrote from the east to a friend at Rome, telling some of his experiences as a provincial officer.

Cum in prōvinciam pr. K. Sext. vēnissem, et propter 5 annī tempus ad exercitum mihi cōfēstim esse eundum vidērem, bīdūm Lāodicēae fūi, deinde Apamēae quadrīduum, trīduum Synnadīs, totidem diēs Philomēlii. Quibus in oppidīs cum magnī conventūs fuissent, multās cīvitātēs acerbissimīs tribūtīs et gravissimīs ūsūrīs et falsō aere

1. generis . . . dignitatis: for his was an ancient and noble family, and he had himself held high offices.

2. hostis: *i.e.* the government forces.—incurrit: incurrō, 3., -currī, -cursum est: *plunge (in among).*

4. cum, etc.: translate by a partic. clause.—pr. K. Sext.: *i.e.* prīdiē Kalendās Sextilis, *the day before the first of August* (Sextilis, -is, -e), namely, July 29, as the calendar was then arranged.

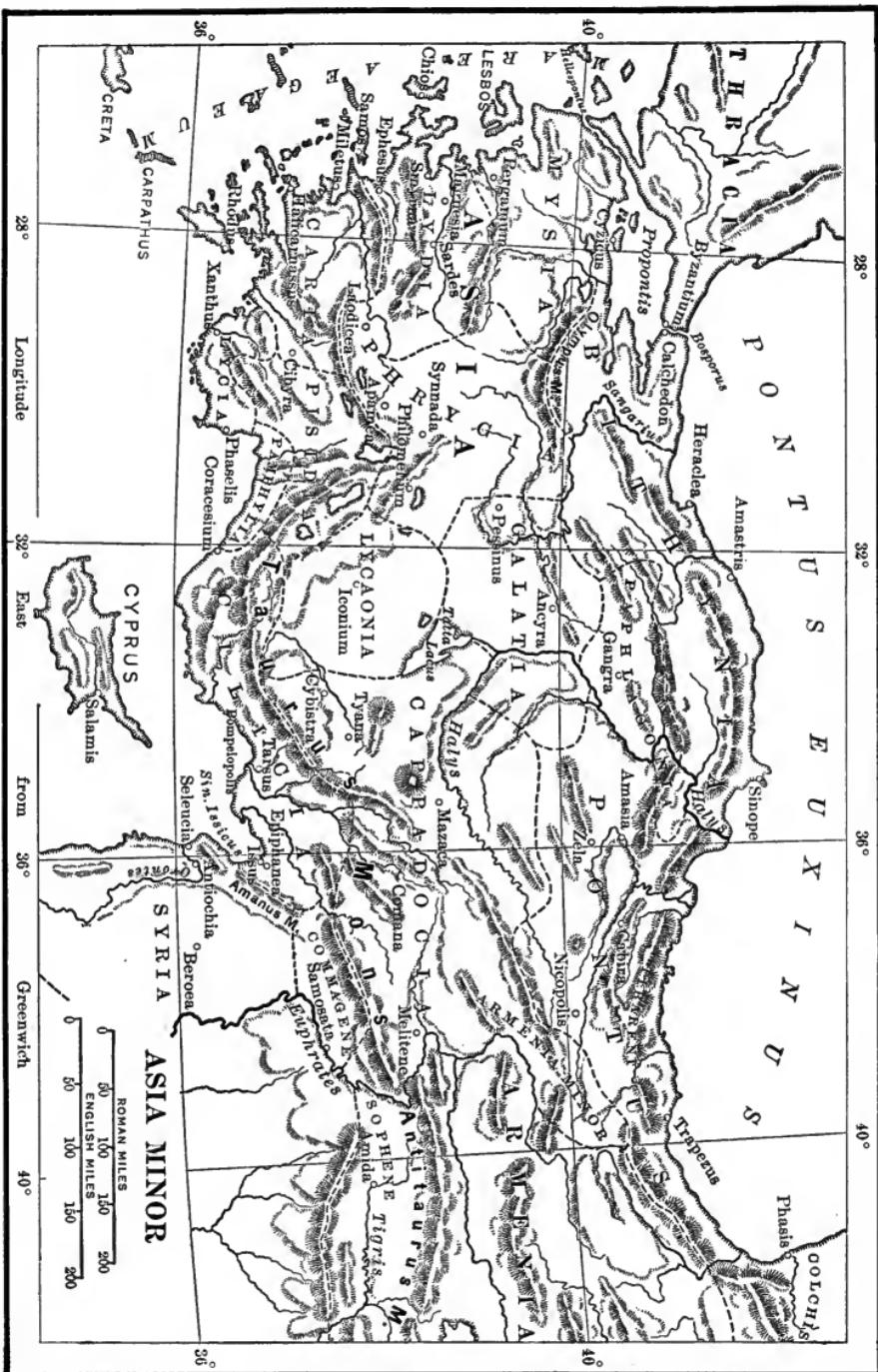
5. cōfēstim: for the winter would now soon come on (cf. p. 123, l. 1 ff.).—eundum: not eudem.

6. bīdūm: cf. bīdūi, p. 158, l. 4.—Lāodicēae: see the western end of the map on p. 179.—fūi: *I stopped.*

7. Synnadīs: pl. city names have the same form for loc. and abl.—totidem: indeclinable adj., *the same number of.*—Philomēlii: for case, cf. domī.

8. conventūs: conventus, -ūs, M., *circuit court.* — fuissent: *freely, had been held.*

9. acerbissimīs tribūtīs, etc.: for syntax, cf. aere aliēnō, p. 174, l. 12.—ūsūrīs: ūsūra, -ae, F., *rate of interest.*



aliēnō liberāvī. Cumque ante adventum meum sēditiōne quādam exercitus esset dissipātus, quīnque cohortēs sine lēgātō, sine tribūnō mīlitum, dēnique etiam sine centuriōne ūllō apud Philomēlium cōnsēdissent, reliquus exercitus 5 esset in Lycāoniā, M. Annēiō lēgātō imperāvī, ut eās quīnque cohortēs ad reliquum exercitum dūceret, coāctōque in ūnum locum exercitū, castra in Lycāoniā apud Īconium faceret. Quod cum ab illō dīligerenter esset factum, ego in castra a. d. vii K. Sept. vēnī, cum intereā superiōrōribus diēbus ex senātūs cōsultō et ēvocātōrum fīrmam manū et equitātum sānē idōneum et populōrum liberōrum rēgumque sociōrum auxilia voluntāria comparāvissem.

## LESSON 138

*A War Scare*

Interim, cum exercitū lūstrātō iter in Ciliciam facere coepissem, K. Sept. lēgātī ā rēge Commāgēnō ad mē

1. cumque: *and inasmuch as.* — sēditiōne: sēditiō, -ōnis, F., mutiny.

2. quādam: *a sort of.* — esset dissipātus: dissipō, I, *disrupt.* Supply et after this verb, and after cōnsēdissent, l. 4.

4. apud: *i.e. ad*; so also in l. 7.

8. quod: relative.

9. a.d. vii K. Sept. : *i.e. ante diem septimum Kalendās Septembrēs, the seventh (we would say, sixth) day before the first of September, namely, August 24, as the calendar was then arranged.* — cum, etc.: translate by a partic. phrase. — superiōribus: *the preceding.*

10. ex: *in accordance with.* — cōsultō: cōsultum, -ī, N., *decree.* — et . . . et . . . et: *both . . . and . . . and.* — ēvocātōrum: ēvocātus, -ī, M., *reënlisted man.*

11. sānē: *adv., quite.* — liberōrum: liber, -era, -erum, *independent, or free.* The genitives may be rendered freely “supplied by”; cf. Gallōrum, p. 159, l. 11.

12. sociōrum: as adj., *allied.* — voluntāria: voluntārius, -a, -um, *volunteer.* — comparāvissem: comparō, I, *get together.*

13. lūstrātō: lūstrō, I, *review.*

14. K. Sept.: *i.e. Kalendis Septembribus* (abl. of time when). — Commāgēnō: an adj.

missī, tumultuōsē neque tamen nōn vērē Parthōs in Syriam trānsis̄se nūntiāvērunt; quō auditō, vehementer sum commōtus cum dē Syriā tum dē meā prōvinciā, dē reliquā dēnique Asiā.

5 Itaque in Cappadociā extrēmā nōn longē ā Taurō apud oppidum Cybistra castra fēcī, ut et Ciliciam tuērer et Cappadociam tenēns nova fīnitimōrum cōnsilia impedīrem.

Intereā cōgnōvī multōrum litteris atque nūntiīs magnās Parthōrum cōpiās et Arabum ad oppidum Antiochēām accessisse, magnumque eōrum equitātum, quī in Ciliciam trānsisset, ab equitum meōrum turmīs et ā cohorte prae-tōriā, quae erat Epiphanēae praesidiī causā, occidiōne occīsum. Quārē, cum vidērem ā Cappadociā Parthōrum cōpiās āversās, nōn longē ā fīnibus esse Ciliciae, quam potuī maxi-mīs itineribus, ad Amānum exercitum dūxī. Quō ut vēnī,

1. missī: not mīsī. — tumul-tuōsē: adv., *in great alarm*. — nōn vērē: freely, *without foundation in fact* (*vērē*, adv., lit. *truthfully*). — Parthōs: two years before, the Romans had suffered crushing defeat at the hands of this warlike people.

3. cum . . . tum: *not only . . . but also*. — dē: *with reference to*. — meā: note the position of the word.

4. Asiā: as on p. 169, l. 6.

5. Cappadociā: see the map on p. 179. — extrēmā: extrēmus, -a, -um, lit. *farthest*; translate freely (cf. the rendering of pīmus, sum-mus, etc.) — apud: as on p. 180, l. 4.

6. Cybistra: in apposition with oppidum; render, however, as if a genitive. — tuērer: *tueor*, 2, —, *protect*.

7. tenēns: *while occupying*. Cicero anticipated that the Parthian invaders would take this more northern route. — nova . . . cōnsilia: cf. rēs novās, p. 28, l. 10. — fīnitimōrum: translate the gen. “on the part of.”

10. eōrum: *of theirs*.

11. turmīs: cf. p. 161, l. 7. The forces here mentioned Cicero had sent south at a venture (cf. the note on l. 7).

12. occidiōne occīsum: *had been annihilated* (occidiō, -ōnis, F., *utter destruction*).

14. quam potuī maximīs: *i.e.* the longest possible; cf. the note on p. 142, l. 5.

15. Amānum: a mountain range near the eastern border of Cilicia. — ut: *i.e.* ubi.

hostem ab Antiochēā recessisse, Bibulum Antiochēae esse cōgnōvī. Dēiotarum cōfēstīm iam ad mē venientem cum magnō et firmō equitātū et peditātū et cum omnibus suis cōpiīs certiōrem fēci nōn vidērī esse causam, cūr abesset ā 5 rēgnō, mēque ad eum, sī quid novī forte accidisset, statim litterās nūntiōsque missūrum esse.

## LESSON 139

*Mountain Brigands claim the Governor's Attention*

Cumque eō animō vēnissem, ut utrīque prōvinciae, sī ita tempus ferret, subyenīrem, tum id, quod iam ante statueram vehementer interesse utriusque prōvinciae, pācāre 10 Amānum et perpetuum hostem ex eō monte tollere, agere perrēxi. Cumque mē discēdere ab eō monte simulāssem

1. *ab*: from the neighborhood of (the town name without the prep. would mean rather "from"; cf. the note on p. 79, l. 21). — recessisse : recēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, fall back. — Bibulum: the (Roman) governor of Syria. Supply -que with this clause.

2. Dēiotarum: a friendly native king, whose offer of aid Cicero had been glad to accept. — *ad*: i.e. to join. — *venientem*: translate by a relative clause.

3. *et . . . et . . . et*: the first of these conjunctions connects the two adj.; the remaining two may be rendered *and . . . and in fact*. — *suis cōpiīs*: his following.

4. *nōn vidērī esse causam*, cūr abesset: there did not seem to be (any) occasion for him to absent himself; lit. what?

5. *mē*: subject of a new main clause in the indirect discourse. — *sī quid*: if anything. — *novī*: as (neut.) noun. — *forte*: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12.

7. *cum*: causal. — *animō*: purpose. — *utrīque prōvinciae*: i.e. Cilicia and Syria. — *ita tempus ferret*: i.e. freely, should have opportunity.

8. *subvenīrem*: i.e. auxiliō essem (subveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est). — *tum*: now. — *id . . . agere perrēxi* (l. 11): I proceeded to carry out a project (pergō, 3, perrēxi, perrēctum est, proceed).

9. *interesse*: interest, -esse, -fuit, with gen., be to the interest (of). — *pācāre*: namely, (the project of) reducing to order.

10. *perpetuum hostem*: namely, some troublesome robber hordes.

11. *-que*: translate as if itaque.

et aliās partīs Ciliciae petere, abesse mque ab Amānō iter ūnius diēi et castra apud Epiphanēam fēcissem, a. d. iiiii Īd. Oct., cum advesperāseret, expeditō exercitū ita noctū iter fēci, ut a. d. iii Īd. Oct., cum lūciseret, in Amānum 5 ascenderem; distribūtisque cohortibus et auxiliis (cum aliis Quīntus frāter lēgātus mēcum simul, aliis C. Pomptīnus lēgātus, reliquīs M. Annēius et L. Tullius lēgātī praeessent), plērōsque necopīnantīs oppressimus: qui occīsi captīque sunt, interclūsī fugā. Eranam autem (quae fuit 10 nōn vīcī īstar sed urbīs, quod erat Amānī caput) itemque Sepyram et Commorim, āriter et diū repugnantibus, Pomptīnō illam partem Amānī tenente ex antelūcānō tempore usque ad hōram diēi X, magnā multitūdine hostiū occīsā, cēpimus, castellaque vī capta complūra incendimus. Hīs

2. Epiphanēam: see the map on p. 179.—a. d. iiiii Īd. Oct.: i.e. ante diem quārtum Īdūs Octōbrēs, *on the fourth (we would say, third) day before the Ides of October*, namely, Oct. 12.

3. expeditō: as adj.; cf. the noun use, p. 177, l. 3. — ita: i.e. *at such speed*.

4. a. d. iii Īd. Oct.: *Oct. 13* (cf. the note on l. 2).—lūciseret: lūciscit, 3, —, —, *grow light*.

5. distribūtis: distribuō, 3, -ui, -ūtus, *divide up*, or *make a division of*.—cum aliis Quintus frāter . . . praeessent: *my brother Quintus . . . being in command of some, etc.* (cf. aliī . . . aliī, p. 20, l. 15).

6. lēgātus: *(as) lieutenant*; cf. Quintus' similar relation to Caesar in the Gallic war.—simul: with mēcum.

8. plērōsque: sc. hostēs.

9. -que: we would say "or."—interclūsī: interclūdō, 3, -clūsī, -clūsus, *cut off*.—fugā: translate the abl. "from."—Eranam: (along with the town names of l. 11), object of cēpimus, l. 14.

10. īstar: *the size (of)*; cf. p. 32, l. 5.—quod: *(and) which*; for the gender, cf. quod, p. 30, l. 6.—item: adv., *likewise*.

11. repugnantibus: i.e. resisteribus (*repugnō*, 1); abl. absol. with iis (*i.e. incolis*) supplied. The two following clauses also are abl. absolutes.

12. tenente: i.e. *keeping to*.—antelūcānō: antelūcānus, -a, -um, *preceding dawn*.

13. X: i.e. decimam, ordinal and cardinal having the same sign; cf. the dates above.

14. vī capta: i.e. expugnāta.

rēbus ita gestīs, castra in rādīcībus Amānī habuimus apud Ārās Alexandrī quadrīdūm, et in reliquiis Amānī dēlendīs agrīsque vāstandīs, quae pars eius montis meae prōvinciae est, id tempus omne cōnsūmpsīmus.

## LESSON 140

*Completion of the Destruction of their Strongholds*

5 Cōfēctīs hīs rēbus, ad oppidum Eleutherocilicūm Pindenissūm exercitūm addūxi. Quod cum esset altissimō et mūnitissimō locō, ab iīisque incolerētur, quī nē rēgībus quidem umquam pāruissent, cum et fugitivōs recipērent, et Parthōrum adventūm ācerrimē exspectārent, ad existimātiōnēm imperī pertinēre arbitrātus sum comprimere eōrum audāciām, quō facilius etiam cēterōrum animī, quī alienī essent ab imperiō nostrō, frangerentur.

Vāllō et fossā circumdedī, sex castellīs castrīsque maximīs saepsi, aggere, vīniīs, turribus oppugnāvī, ūsusque tor-

1. rādīcībus: *foothills* (*rādīx*, -īcis, F., lit. *root*).

2. reliquiis: *i.e. the remaining landmarks*; cf. reliquiās, p. 36, l. 15.

3. vāstandīs: *vāstō*, I, *lay waste*. — quae pars eius montis: *i.e. in eā montis parte, quae*. — meae prōvinciae est: *belongs to* (*lit. is of*) *my province*.

5. Pindenissūm: in apposition with oppidum. The exact location of this town is not known.

6. quod cum esset: *since this was (located)*.

7. mūnitissimō: transl. the superl. “strongly.” — iīs . . . quī: with subjunctive, *such (people) as*;

for the position of -que, cf. ob eamque causam, p. 129, l. 5.— rēgībus: *namely, of their own*.

8. cum: *(and) since*. — fugitivōs: *fugitivus, -ī, M., runaway slave*.

9. existimātiōnēm: *existimātiō, -ōnis, F., prestige*.

10. imperī: *(our) government*. — comprimere: *comprimō, 3, -pressī, -pressus, put a stop to*.

11. quō: note the compar. in the clause. — alienī . . . ab: *ill disposed toward*; cf. p. 148, l. 17:

12. imperiō: *rule*.

13. circumdedī: sc. *oppidūm*.

14. saepsi: *saepiō, 4, saepsi, saeptus, surround*. — aggere: *ag-*

mentis multis, multis sagittariis, magnō labore meo, sine ullā molestiā sumptuve sociorum, septimō quinquagēsimō diē rem cōfēcī, ut omnibus partibus urbis disturbatis aut incēnsis, compulsi in potestatē meam pervenirent.

5 His erant finitimi pari scelere et audaciā Tebaranī. Ab iis, Pindenissō captō, obsidēs accēpī; exercitum in hiberna dīmisi; Quīntum frātrem negōtiō prae posui, ut in vīcis aut captis aut male pācātis exercitus collocāretur.

ger, -eris, M., *mound* (of earth or other material). — vīniis: *vīnia*, -ae, F., *penthouse*. — tormentis: *tormentum*, -ī, N., *cataapult*. Cf. the ballista shown on p. 29.

1. sagittariis: *sagittarius*, -ī, M., *bowman*. — meo: *on my part*.

2. molestiā: *molestia*, -ae, F., *inconvenience*. — sūmptū: *sūmptus*, -ūs, M., *expense*. — sociōrum: *to (lit. of) the friendly natives* (from whom a Roman governor usually felt at liberty to extort any service he desired).

3. ut: introducing a result

clause. — disturbatis: *disturbō*, I, *wreck*.

4. compulsi: *freely, in despair*, lit. *forced (to it)*; sc. hostēs.

5. his: *the people just subdued*. — pari: *pār*, *paris*, adj., *equal*. — scelere: *scelus*, -eris, N., *guilt*, lit. *crime*; the whole abl. phrase expresses quality. — Tebaranī: *subject of erant*.

7. negōtiō . . . ut . . . exercitus collocāretur: *freely, the business of quartering the army*; lit. what? — aut captis, etc.: translate by a relative clause.

## WORD LIST

The following list shows the new words introduced into each successive reading lesson. Aside from numerals, words found in but one lesson are treated in the notes on that lesson, and do not appear here. For proper names, the general vocabulary should be consulted.

The designation (\*) indicates that the word so marked occurs in four or more lessons.

English words in italics are derived from, or otherwise related to, the Latin words opposite to which they stand. They may be found useful in helping to recall the meaning of the Latin words as given in the general vocabulary.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Many Latin words are formed with the help of a prefix. Though the force of this prefix does not stand out clearly in every case, it is worth while to become familiar with the general meanings of the following:—

*ā-, ab-*: *away, aside, off.*

*ad-*: *to, into, near, by, at.*

*circum-*: *around.*

*con-*: *with, together* (*con-* being a form of *cum*). Often denotes completion (*e.g.* *cōnficiō* [*faciō*]), or energy of action (*e.g.* *contendō*).

*dē-*: *from, down.*

*dis-*: *from, away, separately.*

*ē-, ex-*: *forth, out, from, up.* Often denotes success (*e.g.* *expugnō*), or energy of action (*e.g.* *excipiō* [*capiō*]).

*in-*: *upon, on, in.*

*in-*: *not, or un-.*

*inter-*: *between.*

*ob-*: *before, against.*

*per-*: *through, across.* Often intensive, *very, exceedingly.*

*prae-*: *before, in advance, over.*

*praeter-*: *by, past.*

*prō-*: *before, forth, forward, out, fore-.*

*re-*: *back, again.*

*sub-*: *under.*

*trāns-*: *across, over.*

Some of the above prefixes take different forms according to the first letter of the word with which they are combined. The following alternative forms should in particular be noted: *ā-, ab-* (*abs-*) ; *ad-* (*ac-, af-, al-, ap-, ar-, as-, a[s]-, at-*) ; *con-* (*col-, com-, co-*) ; *dis-* (*dif-, dī-*) ; *ē-, ex-* (*ec-, ef-, e[x]-*) ; *in-* (*ig-, il-, im-*) ; *inter-* (*intel-*) ; *ob-* (*oc-, op-*) ; *re-* (*red-*) ; *sub-* (*sus-, su[s]-*) ; *trāns-* (*trā-*).

In some words united with these prefixes a vowel is regularly altered, *e.g.:*

*a* or *e* becomes *i*; *as-ficiō* (for *faciō*) and *-tineō* (for *teneō*).

*ae* becomes *i*: *as-cidō* (for *caedō*; cf. *caedēs*) and *-īquus* (for *aequus* in *inīquus*).

## I

ad\*  
*appellō\** (-āre), *appella-*  
 tion  
 autem\*  
*circum\** *circum-ference*  
*coepī\**  
*crēdō,\* creed*  
*cum\** (conj.)  
*cursus\**  
*diū\**  
*diversus,\* diverse*  
*ē, ex\**  
*enim\**  
*eō\** (verb)  
*et\**  
*etiam\**  
*exeō,\* exit*  
*habeō\**  
*homō,\* homi-cide*  
*ille\**  
*in\**  
*intellegō,\* intelligent*  
*interdum\**  
*interpōnō\**  
*inveniō,\* inven-tion*  
*ipse\**  
*ita\**  
*iam\**  
*iuvenis,\* juvenile*  
*labōrō\**  
*litus\**  
*longē\**  
*magnus,\* magni-tude*  
*mare,\* marine*  
*multus,\* multi-tude*  
*nāscor,\* nat-al*  
*nauta,\* nauti-cal*  
*nāvīgō,\* naviga-tion*  
*nāvis,\* nav-al*  
*nēmō*

*neque, nec\**  
*nūllus,\* nulli-fy*  
*ōlim\**  
*oppidum\**  
*pater,\* pater-nal*  
*pecūnia,\* pecuniary*  
*perveniō\**  
*portus\**  
*possum,\* poss-ibility*  
*posteā,\* post-pone*  
*prōgredior\**  
*prope\* (adv.)*  
*prope\* (prep.)*  
*puer,\* puer-ile*  
*-que\**  
*quī\* (relative)*  
*quīdam\**  
*quod\* (conj.)*  
*rēx,\* reg-al*  
*saepe\**  
*secundum\* (prep.)*  
*sed\**  
*spērō,\* de-sperate*  
*suī,\* sui-cide*  
*sum,\* essence*  
*suspicor\**  
*tam\**  
*tempus,\* tempor-al*  
*teneō,\* re-tent-ive*  
*terra,\* terr-estrial*  
*timeō,\* tim-id*  
*trānsēō,\* transit*  
*tum\**  
*usque\**  
*ut, utī\**  
*via,\* imper-vi-ous*  
*videō,\* e-vident*  
*volō,\* vol-untary*

2

*ad . . . versus\**

*advena\* (ad + veniō)*  
*aperiō,\* aper-ture*  
*audiō,\* audi-torium*  
*avis, avi-ation*  
*bellum,\* re-bell-ion.*  
*cantus, chant*  
*cōgnōscō,\* re-cognize*  
*cōsequor,\* consequence*  
*cōsilium,\* counsel*  
*cum\* (prep.)*  
*dīcō,\* dic-tation*  
*diēs,\* di-urnal*  
*dō,\* do-nation*  
*faciō,\* fac-tor*  
*fortiter,\* forti-tude*  
*gerō,\* belli-gerent*  
*ibi\**  
*igitur\**  
*ignōtus,\* contrast noted*  
*īnsula, insulate*  
*interim\**  
*is\**  
*itaque\**  
*iter,\* itiner-ant*  
*laetus\**  
*libenter\**  
*mōns,\* mount*  
*moriō,\* mori-bund*  
*nōlō\**  
*nūntius,\* e-nunci-ate*  
*obtineō, cf. teneō*  
*omnis,\* omni-potent*  
*paene,\* pen-insula*  
*parō\**  
*parvus\**  
*paucī,\* pauci-ty*  
*per,\* per-forate*  
*periculum\**  
*petō,\* pet-ition*  
*postrēmō\**  
*proficiscor\**

pulcher\*  
 quaerō,\* *re-quire*  
 quisquam\*  
 redeō\* (*red + eō*)  
 rēgīna, cf. rēx  
 rēgnūm,\* *regn-ant*  
 rēs,\* *rebus*  
 suus,\* cf. suī  
 tamen\*  
 trēs,\* *tri-nity*  
 ubi\* (adv.)  
 ubi\* (conj.)  
 validus,\* *valid*  
 vereor,\* *re-verent*

## 3

ā, ab\*  
 adeō\* (*verb*), cf. eō  
 aliūs,\* *ali-bi*  
 animus,\* *anim-ated*  
 appropinquō\*  
 atque, ac\*  
 bāca  
 dē\*  
 domus,\* *dom-estic*  
 dux,\* *duke*  
 ēgregiōr,\* *egress*  
 gaudēō,\* *gaudy*  
 gaza  
 harēna, *arena*  
 ignis,\* *ignite*  
 incola\*  
 inde\*  
 irātūs,\* *irate*  
 iaciō,\* *e-ject*  
 māne\*  
 mīlle,\* *mile*  
 moror\*  
 mox\*  
 nato  
 noctū,\* *noct-urnal*

nōn\*  
 numquam\*  
 passus\*  
 post\* (adv.), cf. posteā  
 prīmō,\* *prim-acy*  
 putō,\* *com-pute*  
 quārē\*  
 quoque\*  
 rāmus, *rami-fy*  
 sentiō,\* *senti-ment*  
 statim\*  
 ūllus,\* cf. nūllus  
 vehementer,\* *vehement*

## 4

amō,\* *am-iable*  
 brevī,\* *brevi-ty*  
 certus\*  
 cīvis,\* *civil*  
 colōnia\*  
 colōnus\*  
 compleō,\* *comple-ment*  
 condō\*  
 coorior\*  
 fēlīciter,\* *felici-ty*  
 ferō,\* *re-fer*  
 fiō,\* *fiat*  
 fluctus, *fluctu-ate*  
 haud\*  
 incolūmis\*  
 iniūria\*  
 interficiō\*  
 iterum,\* *iter-ate*  
 littera\*  
 pars\*  
 praefectus,\* *prefect*  
 properō\*  
 relinquō,\* *relinquish*  
 scribō,\* *scribe*  
 semel  
 spēs,\* cf. spērō

subitō\*  
 sustineō,\* cf. teneō  
 tempestās,\* *tempest*  
 ūnus,\* *uni-ty*  
 ventus,\* *venti-late*

## 5

adeō (adv.)  
 amīcus,\* *amic-able*  
 capiō,\* *cap-acity*  
 cōnor\*  
 dōnum,\* cf. dō  
 filius,\* *fil-i-al*  
 forte,\* *fort-uitous*  
 idem,\* *iden-tical*  
 mirus, *mir-acle*  
 nārrō,\* *narr-a-tion*  
 nōmen,\* *nomin-al*  
 nōtus,\* cf. ignōtus  
 nunc\*  
 piscis, *Pisces*  
 quīn\* etiam  
 rapiō,\* *rapine*  
 semper\*  
 senex, *sen-il-ity*  
 sōlum,\* *sole-ly*  
 vir,\* *vir-ile*

## 6

adorior\*  
 adversus,\* *adverse*  
 argentum,\* *Argentine*  
 aurum, *auri-ferous*  
 castra,\* *Chester*  
 celeriter,\* *celeri-ty*  
 cibus\*  
 cōgō,\* *cogent*  
 cōnsūmō,\* *consum-er*  
 dēdūcō,\* *deduct*  
 flūmen\*  
 fortis,\* cf. fortiter  
 frūmentum\*

hostis,\* *hostile*  
 inmittō,\* cf. mittō (below)  
 miles,\* *milit-ary*  
 mittō,\* *re-mit*  
 nam\*  
 occidō,\* (*sui*) *cide*  
 pōnō,\* *post-pone*  
 prō,\* *pro* (and *con*)  
 pugnō,\* *pugna-cious*  
 recipiō,\* *receipt*  
 rīpa,\* *ripa-rian*  
 sagitta,\* *Sagittarius*  
 scapha\*  
 silva,\* *silvan*  
 tēlum\*  
 vehō,\* *veh-icle*

## 7

aqua,\* *aqua-tic*  
 arbor,\* *arbor*  
 arma\*  
 collocō,\* cf. *locus* (below)  
 frīgus, *frigid*  
 fugiō,\* *fugi tive*  
 humus,\* *ex-hume*  
 īnsidiae,\* *insidi-ous*  
 iaceō,\* *ad-jacent*  
 iubeō\*  
 locus,\* *loco-motive*  
 manus,\* *manu-al*  
 modo\*  
 perterritus,\* cf. terreō  
     (below)  
 prius,\* *pri-ority*  
 procul\*  
 redūcō,\* *reduce*  
 soleō,\* *ob-solete*  
 sonus,\* *sono-rous*  
 terreō,\* *terr-or*  
 veniō,\* *con-vene*

## 8

acciō,\* *accept*  
 captīvus\*  
 clam\*  
 complūrēs,\* cf. plur-al  
 cōnsendō,\* (*a*) *scend*  
 cōpia,\* *copi-ous*  
 dēmum\*  
 dōnec \*  
 dum\*  
 emō,\* *red-emption*  
 habitō,\* *habita-tion*  
 hīc\* (pron.)  
 idōneus\*  
 miser,\* *misery*  
 nesciō,\* *contrast science*  
 novus,\* *nov-el*  
 quō\* (adv.)  
 reportō,\* *report*  
 sacerdōs,\* *sacerdot-al*  
 sequor,\* *con-sequence*  
 servō,\* *con-serve*  
 suprā\*  
 tractō,\* *tract-able*  
 vēndō,\* *vend-er*

## 9

dūcō,\* *pro-duce*  
 effugiō,\* cf. fugiō  
 frangō,\* *frag-ile*  
 frūstrā,\* *frustrate*  
 longus\*  
 mālō\*  
 paulō\*  
 pīrāta\*  
 poena,\* *penal*  
 praeda,\* *preda-tory*  
 sēdecim  
 vēlum,\* *veil*  
 vetus, *veter-an*

## 10

carō,\* *carn-al*  
 certē  
 corpus,\* *corpor-eal*  
 edō,\* *ed-ible*  
 equus,\* *equ-estrian*  
 famēs,\* *fam-iné*  
 filia,\* cf. filius  
 impetus,\* *impetu-ous*  
 iuvō,\* *coad-ju-tor*  
 mātrimōnium, *matri-*  
     *mony*  
 mēnsis\*  
 mentior  
 obses\*  
 oppidānī,\* cf. oppidum  
 pereō,\* cf. eō (verb)  
 puella\*  
 quamquam\*  
 quondam,\* *quondam*  
     (adj.)  
 trādō,\* *tradition*  
 uxor,\* *uxor-ious*

## II

cōnspectus,\* *conspectus*  
 deinde\*  
 duo,\* *du-al*  
 explōrō\*  
 ferē\*  
 fretum, *frith* (?)  
 hīc\* (adv.)  
 lēniter,\* *leni-ty*  
 lūna, *lunar*  
 nō\*

## 12

altus,\* *alti-tude*  
 āmittō,\* cf. mittō  
 angustus  
 annus,\* *annu-al*

conveniō,\* *convene*  
 excipiō\*  
 hiemō\*  
 magister, *magistr-ate*  
 negōtior, *negotiate*  
 (posterus)\*  
 scelerātus  
 sub,\* *sub-tract*

## I3

agō,\* *ag-itate*  
 ante\* (adv.), *anti-cipate*  
 apud\*  
 clāmor,\* *clamor*  
 cōnstituō,\* *constitu-tion*  
 currō,\* *in-cursion*  
 deus,\* *dei-ty*  
 ēmigrō  
 ērumpō,\* *eruption*  
 grātia,\* *grace*  
 interdiū  
 lēgātus,\* *de-legate*  
 liberī\*  
 morbus,\* *cholera* *morbus*  
 nox,\* *equi-nox*  
 reliquus,\* cf. *relinquō*  
 saxum\*  
 tūtus, *tute-lage*  
 undique\*  
 vulnerō,\* *vulner-able*

## I4

acerbus, *acerbi-ty*  
 ambulō,\* *per-ambulate*  
 asper,\* *asperi-ty*  
 aut\*  
 cadō,\* *de-cadence*  
 commoveō,\* *commotion*  
 dēsum  
 hiems,\* cf. *hiemō*  
 inquam\*

loquor,\* *loqu-acity*  
 maestus\*  
 -ne  
 numerus,\* *numer-al*  
 prōpōnō, *propose*  
 proximus,\* *proximi-ty*  
 rīdeō, *ridi-culous*  
 sūmō,\* *re-sume*  
 tacitus,\* *tacit*  
 tū\*  
 verbum,\* *verb-al*  
 virtūs,\* cf. vir  
 vōx,\* *voc-al*

## I5

alter,\* *alter-ation*  
 ambiō,\* *ambi-guous*  
 arbitror,\* *arbitra-tion*.  
 caedēs,\* *sui-cide*  
 cōgitō,\* *cogitate*  
 comes,\* *con-comit-ant*  
 concilium\*  
 contumēlia,\* *contumely*  
 convocō,\* *convoca-tion*  
 crūdēlis  
 cūrō,\* *mani-cure*  
 facile,\* *facili-ty*  
 incendō,\* *incend-iary*  
 inimicus,\* *inimic-al*  
 ostendō,\* *osten-tation*  
 recūsō\*  
 sīca\*

sīgnum\*  
 simul,\* *simul-taneously*  
 umquam\*  
 vincō,\* *con-vince*  
 vulnus,\* cf. *vulnerō*

## I6

afficiō\*  
 amplector (com)*plexus*

bene,\* *bene-fit*  
 dīmittō,\* cf. mittō  
 frāter,\* *frater-nal*  
 gravis,\* *grave*  
 polliceor\*  
 religiō\*  
 secūris\*  
 venēnum, *venom*  
 vērō,\* *veri-ly*

## I7

admoveō\*  
 animadvertō\*  
 ārdēns, *ardent*  
 audeō,\* *aud-acious*  
 bōs, *bov-ine*  
 castellum,\* *castle*  
 cōnātus, cf. cōnor  
 dēfendō\*  
 dēpōnō, *depose*  
 dēsistō\*  
 extinguo  
 hōra\*  
 moneō, *moni-tor*  
 oppugnō,\* (ob+pugnō)  
 prōdō\*  
 salūs,\* *salut-ary*  
 tantum,\* *tant=amount*  
 tēctum, *pro-TECT*  
 vīlla,\* *village*  
 vocō,\* *in-voke*

## I8

aciēs\*  
 adiuvō,\* *co-adju-tor*  
 adsum\*  
 aedēs,\* *edi-fice*  
 ager,\* *agri-culture*  
 auxilium,\* *auxili-ary*  
 caelum,\* *cel-estial*  
 fenestra

fuga,* cf. fugiō	persuādeō*	prōvincia*
imperātor,* imperat-ive	sedeō, sedent-ary	solvō,* dis-solve
latebrae,* cf. lateō (be-low)	socius*, soci-al	urbs,* urb-an
lateō,* latent		vīvō,* re-vive
postquam,* cf. post (adv.)		
prōspiciō, prospect		
scilicet*		
sicut*		
templum*		
tūtō, cf. tūtus		
19	21	24
āriter,* acri-monious	abscīdō, cf. occīdō	agricola,* cf. ager
aestās	caput,* capit-al (adj.)	assēnsus, assent
dētrīmentum,* detri- ment	cōnsōlor, consola-tion	coerceō, coercion
exercitus*	dēdō*	cruciātus,* cruci-fixion
expugnō*	īstruō,* instruction	iniussū,* cf. iubeō
gēns,* gent-ile	intercipiō*	maneō*
longinquus,* cf. longus	mora*	ōrō, ad-ora-tion
modus,* mode	pāx,* pac-ific	prīnum,* cf. prīmō
praeoccupō, preoccupy	perfugiō	quaestus,* quest ·
pridem	porta,* portal	superior*
prīmus* prime	sine,* sine-cure	
sciō,* science	vallēs*	
singulī,* singul-ar		
20	22	25
ācer,* cf. āriter	ante,* (prep.) ante- chamber	adhūc*
armātus,* cf. arma	audācter,* audaci-ty	ballista
ascīscō	cēna	cārus, chari-ty
dēnuō	cēnō	custōdia*
ēripiō	cōficiō*	custōdiō*
exsiliō,* exul-tation	perpaucī, cf. paucī	mūrus, mur-al
fīnis,* fin-al	pēs,* ped-al	nūntiō,* cf. nūntius
herba, herbage	silentium*	obsideō,* obsess
minus,* minus	sōpītus,* sop-orific	opus,* oper-ate
palūs*	surgō, in-surgent	praedium*
perficiō,* perfect	vigilō, vigil	
21	23	26
aes*	aliēnus,* alien	ancora*
clārus,* clari-fy	clārus,* clari-fy	antequam,* cf. ante (adv.)
cōmitās, comity	cōmitās, comity	cōsistō*
cōmiter	grātus*	īgnōminia, ignominy
grātus*	praemittō,* premise	labor*
propter*	propter*	malus,* male-factor
		paulātim*
		propinquus, propinquīty
		revocō, revoke

27

- abeō,\* cf. eō (verb)  
 aliquamdiū,\* cf. diū  
 appellō\* (-ere)  
 ars, art-ist  
 condūcō  
 discō, disc-iple  
 lūdō, col-lusion  
 māter,\* mater-nal  
 post,\* (prep.) post-pone  
 sexāgintā\*  
 simulō,\* simulate  
 tribūnus\*

28

- arceō  
 at\*  
 casa\*  
 cōnsidō,\* (sub)side  
 īstar  
 lectus\*  
 mōs, mor-al  
 regiō\*  
 rīvus,\* de-riv-ation  
 tōtus\*  
 ūndēvīgintī

29

- advesperāscit, cf. vespers  
 dēligō\*  
 difficilis\*  
 discēdō,\* (re)cēde  
 impedimenta,\* impediment  
 nisi\*  
 patior,\* patient  
 periculōsus, cf. pericu-  
 lum  
 respondeō,\* respond  
 sī\*  
 tollō,\* ex-tol

30

- frigidus, frigid  
 glaciēs,\* glacier  
 illūcēscō,\* (trans)lucent  
 magis\*  
 mātūrē  
 molestē\*  
 occupō,\* occupa-tion  
 pertinācia, cf. teneō  
 satis,\* satis-factory  
 trāns,\* trans-it  
 ūnā,\* uni-ty

31

- condiciō\*  
 expellō,\* expel  
 explōrātor\*  
 invītus\*  
 legiō\*  
 nē . . . quidem\*  
 opera,\* opera-tives  
 ultrō\*  
 unde\*

32

- admoneō,\* cf. moneō  
 cēdō,\* re-cede  
 centuriō\*  
 cohortor\*  
 compellō, compulsion  
 incommodum, incom-  
 mode  
 inrumpō,\* cf. ērumpō  
 lacus\*  
 proelium\*  
 reliquiae, cf. reliquus  
 statuō,\* statute  
 temerē,\* temeri-ty  
 ululātus\*

33

- alibī, cf. alias  
 dēmittō\*  
 etsī\*  
 īferō,\* infer  
 laudō, laud  
 mātrōna, matron  
 ūtiōsus, otiose  
 tantus,\* cf. tantum  
 victōria \*

34

- audācia,\* cf. audācter  
 commūnis, communi-ty  
 concēdō\*  
 exigō, exact (verb)  
 iūs,\* jus-tice  
 licet, license  
 memoria\*  
 postulō,\* postulate  
 repetō, cf. petō  
 senātus\*  
 sex,\* sex-tant  
 videor,\* cf. video

35

- celeritās,\* cf. celeriter  
 collis\*  
 contineō, cf. teneō  
 cotidiē,\* cf. diēs  
 exstruō, cf. structur:  
 intrā,\* intrant  
 largior, larg-ess  
 libertās  
 meus,\* meum (and  
 tuum)  
 mūnitiō,\* munitions  
 pūblicus\*  
 quantus,\* quanti-ty  
 vāllum\*

veterānī, cf. *vetus*  
*vīta*,\* *vital*

36

adferō\*  
*aliquī* (*aliquis*)\*  
*celebrō*  
*facultās*\*  
*hiberna*,\* *hibern-ate*  
*nanciscor*\*  
*nihil*,\* *nihil-ist*  
*stīpendium*, *stipend*

37

*circumveniō*,\* *circum-*  
*vent*  
*cōservō*,\* cf. *servō*  
*dēvius*, *devious*  
*ego*,\* *ego-tism*  
*ēlūdō*,\* *elude*  
*glōrior* (*vain*) *glori-ous*  
*intempestus*\*  
*iste*\*  
*pugna*,\* cf. *pugnō*  
*strepitus*\*  
*tergum*,\* *tergi-versation*  
*vesper*, cf. *advesperāscit*

38

*comportō*,\* cf. *reportō*  
*dēditiō*, cf. *dēdō*  
*dubius*, *dubious*  
*ecfrēnātē*  
*eō*\* (adv.)  
*ēveniō*, *even-tuate*  
*ēventus*, *event*  
*pueritia*, cf. *puer*

39

*agmen*\*  
*circiter*,\* cf. *circum*

*cruentus*  
*dēficiō*,\* *deficit*  
*īinferior*  
*inopia*,\* *contrast op-ulent*  
*multō*,\* cf. *multus*  
*necessārius*  
*nix*\*  
*nūdus*, *de-nude*  
*quīnque*\*  
*sagum*  
*vestīgium*, *vestige*

40

*classis*\*  
*coniungō*,\* *conjunction*  
*fallō*,\* *fall-ible*  
*merīdiēs*,\* *meridian*  
*occāsiō*, *occasion*  
*potestās*,\* cf. *possum*  
*rārus*, *rare*  
*rursus*\*  
*servus*,\* *serv-ile*  
*spectō*,\* *specta-cle*

41

*audāx*, cf. *audācter*  
*causa*\*  
*contrā*, *contra-dict*  
*damnō*,\* *con-demn*  
*dēleō*,\* *dele-terious*  
*impetrō*\*  
*invīsus*\*  
*mūniō*,\* cf. *mūnītiō*  
*nātūra*  
*nē*\*  
*perfidia*, *perfidy*  
*quam*\*  
*strēnuus*, *strenuous*

42

*anteā*,\* cf. *ante* (adv.)  
*exsiliūm*

*graviter*,\* cf. *gravis*  
*indīcō*,\* (*e*) *dict*  
*permōtus*,\* cf. *com-*  
*moveō*  
*saltem*

43

*aeger*\*  
*aegrē*  
*fortūna*\*  
*oculus*, *ocul-ist*  
*oppugnātiō*,\* cf. *op-*  
*pugnō*  
*tabernāculum*,\* *taber-*  
*nacle*  
*varius*\*

44

*contendō*,\* cf. *tend*  
*dexter*, *dexter-ous*  
*exspectō*,\* *expect*  
*fleō*  
*flōs*, *flor-ist*  
*imperīum*,\* *empire*  
*inter*,\* *inter-sect*  
*lacrima*, *lachrym-ose*  
*multitūdō*,\* *multitude*  
*octō*,\* *oct-agon*  
*patria*,\* *patri-ot*  
*praesidium*\*  
*sīc*\*

45

*abhinc*\*  
*antiquitus*, *antique*  
*honor*  
*hortor*,\* cf. *cohortor*

46

*cavus*, *cavi-ty*  
*committō*,\* *commit*  
*mulier*\*

## WORD LIST

priusquam,\* cf. prius  
quandō  
reperiō\*  
vīcus,\* War-wick

47

abripiō, cf. rapiō  
diligentia,\* diligence  
dominus,\* domin-ate  
ēvādō, evade  
facinus\*  
fidēlis,\* fidel-i-ty  
moribundus, cf. morior  
quis\* (indef.)  
stō,\* sta-tionary  
superbia, superb  
-ve\*  
vix\*

48

barbarus\*  
expediō,\* expedite  
firmō, con-firm  
incitō, incite  
intrō,\* cf. intrā  
praesum\*  
saltō

49

cēterī\*  
circumstō, circumstance  
extrā,\* extra-ordinary  
intervāllum,\* interval  
negōtiātor,\* cf. negō-  
tior

patefaciō  
plānē,\* plain-ly  
porrigō\*  
tegō,\* cf. tēctum  
vestimentum,\* vestment  
vultus

50  
adventus,\* advent  
efferō,\* elation  
faveō, fav-or

51  
absum,\* absent  
arripiō,\* cf. rapiō  
canō, cf. cantus  
memorābilis, memorable  
nāvigium,\* cf. nāvis

52

admīror, admire  
ēdō,\* edit  
fortitūdō, cf. fortiter  
gemitus  
sōlus,\* cf. sōlum  
superō,\* in-super-able  
vestis, cf. vestimentum

53

carrus, carr-iage  
crūdēlitās,\* cf. crūdēlis  
fluō, flu-id  
hortus, horti-culture  
impōnō, impose  
multum,\* cf. multō  
paulum\*  
suspēnsus, suspense

54

citrō\*  
cuneus, cunei-form  
dēferō\*  
gubernāculum, gubernā-  
toral  
moveō,\* cf. commoveō  
pandō, ex-pand

sententia,\* cf. sentiō  
ulterior,\* ulterior

55

impediō,\* cf. impedi-  
menta  
liburnica\*  
occidēns, occident  
onerāria, oner-ous  
onustus\*  
tardē, tardy

56

abiciō,\* cf. iaciō  
inlīdō (col)lision  
obstinātus, obstinate  
prōiciō,\* cf. iaciō  
resistō\*  
respōnsum, cf. respon-  
deō  
retineō,\* cf. teneō  
saevitia  
super, super-impose  
vīgintī\*

57

commemorō  
dēfigō (pre)fīx  
necō,\* inter-nec-ine  
prōlābor (re)lapse  
religō, cf. liga-ture  
supīnus, supine  
tenebrae

58

careō  
coniciō,\* cf. iaciō  
exitīalis  
fīnitimus\*  
frequēns, frequent

magicus	tantopere, cf. tantum	perrumpō, cf. ērumpō
palam*	ūtor,* <i>ut-ensil</i>	repentīnus*
probō,* ap <i>proba-tion</i>		
pulvis, <i>pulver-ize</i>		
	64	68
59		
adsequor	adulēscēns, <i>adolescent</i>	callidus
circuitus, cf. circum	canis, <i>canine</i>	dēvorō
dubitō,* <i>dubitate</i>	dēfessus*	excitō,* <i>excite</i>
īnsequor*	exiguus*	lingua, <i>lingu-ist</i>
quidem*	quārtus,* <i>quarter</i>	nūper*
redintegrō (dis) <i>inte-</i> <i>grate</i>		praetereō, cf. eō
vītō,* <i>ine-vit-able</i>		
	65	69
60		
clāmō, cf. clāmor	aedificō, cf. aedēs	aetās, <i>el-ternal</i>
cōferō,* <i>conference</i>	caespes	carpō, <i>ex-cerpt</i>
locuplēs	cōnsuēscō,* (de) <i>suetude</i>	prōsper(-eru)s.
	cōnsultō	<i>prosperi-ty</i>
61	ducentī	septem
accēdō,* <i>accede</i>	ēliciō, <i>elicit</i>	
bonus,* <i>bonny</i>	excīdō, cf. occīdō	70
quotiēns, <i>quotient</i>	fera, <i>fero-cious</i>	accidō,* <i>accident</i>
	frūstum,* <i>frustum</i>	argenteus, cf. argentum
62	sēdēs, cf. sedeō	cōfēstīm*
errō,* <i>error</i>	timor,* cf. timeō	duodccim, <i>duodecim-al</i>
folium, <i>foli-age</i>	ūsus,* cf. ūtor	gubernātōr, cf. gubernā- cūlum
quiēscō,* <i>quiescent</i>	vēnor, <i>ven-isom</i>	pōculum
somnus,* <i>somno-lent</i>	vīcīnus, <i>vicini-ty</i>	spoliō*
		vīs*
63		
auris, <i>aur-ist</i>	66	71
cōfertus	dēnique	avāritia, <i>avarice</i>
glōria, <i>glory</i>	dīligerētēr,* cf. dīligen- tia	cōfirmō,* cf. affirm
manipulāris	incendīum, cf. incendō	foris, per-for-ate
mors,* cf. morior	misceō, pro-misc-uous	praemium,* <i>premium</i>
opportūnus	nātiō,* <i>nation</i>	queror, <i>quer-ulous</i>
ōrdō*	praeter,* <i>preter-natural</i>	
pariō*	praetervehor, cf. vehō	
	reor,* <i>rate</i> (verb)	
	67	72
	dīvidō	appetō, cf. petō
	intus, cf. intrā	dīmicō*
	mūtō,* per-muta-tion	percutiō, <i>percussion</i>
		umerus

73

absconditus, cf. condō  
 adhaerēscō, adhere  
 dēterreō, deter  
 dētrūdō,\* (in)trusion  
 eōdem\*  
 praestō\*  
 secundus,\* cf. secundum

74

incrēdibilis, incredible  
 lūx,\* cf. illūcēscō

75

adstō, cf. stō  
 circumeō,\* cf. eō  
 colloquium,\* cf. loquor  
 colloquor, cf. loquor  
 īra, cf. īrātus

76

cōnspectīo,\* cf. cōnspec-  
 tūs  
 ēruptīo, cf. ērumpō  
 obscūrus, obscuri-ty  
 trādūcō, cf. dūcō  
 vigilia,\* cf. vigilō

77

addūcō,\* adduce  
 perlegō, cf. lectern  
 quīvis, cf. volō  
 venia, venial

78

custōs,\* cf. custōdiō  
 decem, decim-al  
 fōns, fount  
 prōcurrō  
 versor\*, con-versant

79

carcer, in-carcer-ate  
 efficiō, effect  
 negō, nega-tion  
 potior\*  
 princeps, princip-al  
 tolerō, tolerate

80

claudō,\* se-clude  
 oblīvīscor, oblīv-ion  
 omnīnō, cf. omnis  
 vel

81

amplius, ample  
 suscipiō  
 tribūtum

82

clādēs  
 integer, integer  
 prae-sertim  
 repente,\* cf. repentinus

83

cōnstantia, constancy  
 ex̄istimō,\* cf. estimate  
 persevērō, persevere  
 quīndecim

84

cāsus,\* casu-al  
 dētrahō, detract  
 dolor, dolor-ous  
 pedetemptim  
 quīnquāgintā  
 quō\* (conj.)

85

ob\*

86

ascendō,\* ascent  
 dēiciō,\* cf. iaciō  
 tertius,\* tert-iary

87

aequus\*, equ-able  
 prōmunturium

88

dēserō  
 fidēs, cf. fidēlis  
 similis\*

89

beneficiū,\* (bene +  
 faciō)  
 dēversōrium  
 lignātiō  
 referō, refer

90

convertō\*  
 fūmus, fume  
 horrendus, horr-or  
 incolō, cf. incola  
 spērnō, spurn

91

portō,\* port-er  
 spatium,\* spaci-ous  
 trānsportō,\* transport  
 valētūdō, valetudin-arian  
 vinculum  
 vīvus, cf. vīvō

92

coniūrātiō  
 male, cf. malus

93

augeō, aug-ment  
 emptiō, cf. emō

peregrīnus	premō,* cf. reprimō	107
reprimō, <i>repress</i>	tot	pāreō
trīgintā		
94	102	108
iudicō,* <i>judic-iary</i>	cōnsulō, <i>consult</i>	dēmōnstrō, <i>demonstra-</i>
praepōnō, <i>preposition</i>	magnopere, cf. magnus	<i>tion</i>
vagor, <i>vaga-bond</i>	ōrātiō,* <i>oration</i>	doceō,* <i>doc-tor</i>
95	subsidiū,* <i>subsidy</i>	equitātus,* cf. eques
gladius,* <i>gladi-ator</i>	ūniversī,* <i>univers-al</i>	intereō, cf. pereō
imperō,* cf. imperātor		intermittō, <i>intermission</i>
incertus, cf. certus	103	līberō,* cf. libertās
ingredior, <i>ingress</i>	cēnseō	nōndum
perturbō, <i>perturb</i>	disputō, <i>disputa-tion</i>	nōnnūllī* (nōn + nūllī)
quattuor	quis* (interrog.)	opprimō,* <i>oppress</i>
septuāgintā	uterque*	peditātus,* cf. pēs
suspīciō		perpetuus, <i>perpetu-al</i>
96	104	subsequor, <i>subsequent</i>
appōnō (ad + pōnō)	cupidē, <i>cupidi-ty</i>	
cīvitās,* cf. cīvis	medius,* <i>medio-crity</i>	109
regredior	nocturnus, cf. nox and	addō, <i>add-i-tion</i>
97	noctū	cōnsuētūdō,* cf. cōn-
vertō, cf. convertō	plērīque*	suēscō
98	prōnūntiō, <i>pronounce</i>	fossa, <i>foss-il</i> (adj.)
amīcitia, cf. amīcus		prīdiē, cf. diēs
99	105	ratiō, <i>ration-al</i>
concurrō,* <i>concourse</i>	cohors*	turris,* <i>turr-et</i>
100	dēscendō, cf. ascendō	
continēns, <i>continent</i>	dispōnō, <i>dispose</i>	110
perfuga, cf. perfugiō	inīquus,* cf. aequus	circumdō
speculator, <i>specula-tor</i>	officium,* <i>office</i>	comprehendō, <i>compre-</i>
101	orbis, <i>orbit</i>	<i>hend</i>
eques,* cf. equus	prōvideō, <i>provide</i>	differō (dis + ferō)
noster *	quisque*	populus, <i>popul-ar</i>
		septimus
	106	
	auctōritās, <i>authority</i>	111
	octāvus, <i>octave</i>	commodus, cf. incom-
	parcō, <i>parsi-mony</i>	modum
	rogō, <i>inter-roga-tion</i>	ündecimus
	trāgula	

112	121	131
occurro, occur	refugiō, <i>refuge</i>	āvertō, <i>avert</i>
profectiō, cf. proficīscor		cōnfodiō, cf. fossa
remittō,* remit		Īdūs
	122	quasi, <i>quasi</i> (adj.)
113	discessus, cf. discēdō	
cernō, dis- <i>cern</i>	praetereā, cf. praeter	
prīstinus, <i>pristine</i>	prōtinus	
	speciēs, <i>speci-ous</i>	
		133
114	123	exitus, cf. exeō
obsidiō, cf. obsideō	dēfēnsiō, cf. dēfendō	memor, cf. memoria
quoniam	hūc	septuāgēsimus
	necopīnāns, cf. opin-ion	
		134
115	124	forum
decimus, <i>decim-al</i>	plānitiēs	
ēmittō, <i>emit</i>		
postrīdiē,* cf. prīdiē		135
prōdūcō, <i>produce</i>		arcēssō
simulātiō,* cf. simulō	125	genus, <i>genus</i>
	circumsistō, cf. cōsistō	
		136
116	126	expeditus, cf. expediō
cōntiō	bīdūm, cf. trīdūm	praetōrius
nōnus		
temeritās, cf. temerē		
	127	137
	dignitās, <i>dignity</i>	
117	128	
trīdūm, cf. trēs and diēs	infēstus	
tumultus, <i>tumult</i>	latus, later-al	
	pīlum	
	turma	
		firmus, cf. firmō
118	129	intereā, cf. interim
pedes,* cf. pēs and pedi-	negōtium, cf. negōtior	Kalendae, <i>calendar</i>
tātus	and ūtiōsus ( <i>neg-</i>	quadridūm, <i>quadri-en-</i>
	= nec, i.e. “not”)	niūm
119	130	
explicō, (im)plicate	perdūcō	pācō, cf. pāx
metus		
	pertineō, <i>pertain</i>	
120		140
cūr		quīnquāgēsimus

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

(Numbers in parentheses following a definition indicate the Lesson in which that particular meaning is found.)

**ā, ab**, *prep. with abl.*, by, at the hands of; from; from the vicinity of; from among (106); of, from (72, 81, 129). See also *aliēnus*, *pars*, *petō*, *repetō*, and *tergum*.

**abeō**, -īre, -īi, -itum est, go away, go, depart, leave.

**abhinc**, *adv.*, ago.

**abiciō**, 3, -iēcī, -iectus, throw aside, throw overboard; throw (56); shoot (113).

**abripiō**, 3, -ripūi, -reptus, tear away, carry away; pull up, tear up.

**abscidō**, 3, -cidī, -cīsus, cut off.

**absconditus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, hidden.

**absum**, -esse, āfūi, be away, be distant (remote), be absent.

**ac**, see *atque*.

**accēdō**, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, approach, draw near; come, advance (138); *with ad and acc.*, approach (115). *Used impersonally*, be added (106).

**accidō**, 3, -cidī, befall, happen, turn out, develop.

**acciō**, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, receive, greet; learn (80); sustain, suffer (loss, indignity, etc.).

**acer**, -cris, -cre, fierce, spirited, energetic, vigorous; sharp, shrill, piercing, penetrating.

**acerbus**, -a, -um, harsh, bitter; galling (137), outrageous (57).

**aciēs**, -ēi, f., line of battle, battle line, battle array, line, ranks; regular engagement (36, 40). *ex aciē*, from the field; *in prīmā aciē*, in the forefront of the fight.

**acrīter**, *adv.*, fiercely, furiously; energetically, vigorously; with spirit, with vigor; relentlessly (41); eagerly, with eagerness (140).

**ad**, *prep. with acc.*, to, for; toward, to the neighborhood of, before (52); against, upon, on; at, on, near, in the neighborhood of, before: until, till, up to. *Often used with the gerundive or gerund to express purpose*. See also *accēdō*, *appellō* (-ere), *eō* (verb), *perfugiō*, *pertineō*, *perveniō*, *speciēs*, *ūnus*, and *usque*.

**ad . . . versus**, toward, in the direction of, for. *With acc. of town name, shortened to versus* (130).

**addō**, 3, -didī, -ditus, add; make mention in addition.

**addūcō**, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, lead on, bring on, bring; influence (119), rouse (135).

**adeō**, *adv.*, to such a degree, so.

**adeō**, -īre, -īi, -itus, visit, touch at (70); meet (135); run into, fall into (37).

**adferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, bring, transport, bear; carry, take, deliver (letter): *with dat.*, inspire (in) (36).

- Pass.*, come; with *ad* and *acc.*, come to, reach (63, 76, 90).
- adhaerēscō**, 3, -haesī, -haesum est, stick; ground (of a boat).
- adhūc**, *adv.*, up to this time, still, yet, hitherto.
- adiuvō**, 1, -iūvī, -iūtus, help, aid, assist, support.
- admīror**, 1, view with admiration, be filled with admiration for.
- admoneō**, 2, -monuī, -monitus, remind.
- admoveō**, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus, move up (84); ignēs (-em) *admovēre*, with dat., set (apply) fire (to).
- adorior**, 4, -ortus sum, attack, assail; make an assault (86).
- adsequor**, 3, -secūtus sum, catch up with, overtake.
- adstō**, 1, -stitī, stand by, be in attendance.
- adsum**, -esse, -fui, be present, be (close) at hand, be in attendance; be on the field (128); be come (100, 131); be there (113); be upon (one) (99); be back (again) (22); come up (124).
- Aduātuci**, -ōrum, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.
- adulēscēns**, -entis, *adj.*, young. *As masc. noun*, (a) youth.
- advena**, -ae, *c.*, stranger, newcomer.
- adventus**, -ūs, *m.*, approach, arrival, coming; presence (63); inroad (140).
- adversus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, contrary. See also *flūmen*.
- advesperāscit**, 3, -vesperāvit (*impersonal verb*), grow dark, begin to grow dark.
- aedēs**, -is, *f.*; *pl.*, house, home.
- aedificō**, 1, build, build up.
- aeger**, -gra, -grum, sick, ill. *As noun*, *aegrī*, -ōrum, *m.*, the sick.
- aegrē**, *adv.*, with difficulty.
- aequus**, -a, -um, favorable, suitable, good (121): *of mental states*, pleasant, resigned, undaunted, composed. **haud aequus**, no pleasant.
- aes** (*aeris, n.*) **aliēnum** (-ī), debt.
- aestās**, -ātis, *f.*, summer.
- aetās**, -ātis, *f.*, lifetime, life; age, period (74).
- Āfer**, -fra, -frum, negro. *As noun*, **Āfrī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Africans.
- afficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, attack; treat, overwhelm (26). *Pass.*, be filled (84).
- Āfrica**, -ae, *f.*, Africa.
- Āfricānus**, -a, -um, African, of Africa.
- ager**, -grī, *m.*, field; country (45); territory (75).
- agmen**, -inis, *n.*, (marching) column, (marching) line. **prīmū agmen**, vanguard; **novissimum agmen**, rear guard.
- agō**, 3, ēgī, āctus, drive, drive off (43, 117); do; treat, make overtures; carry out (project), keep (watch), pass (time), give, render (thanks), wear out (life). **inter sē agere**, talk to one another; **vītam agere**, live.
- agricola**, -ae, *m.*, farmer, planter, rustic.
- Alexander**, -drī, *m.*, the name of (1) an Indian chief, brother of King Philip; (2) a king of Macedonia.
- alibī**, *adv.*, elsewhere, in other places, in other quarters, at other points. See also *alius*.
- aliēnus**, -a, -um, another's, of another

(133); inclined away. *With ab and abl.*, unfriendly (to), averse (to); *with gen.*, unfriendly (to). See also *aes*.

**aliquamdiū**, *adv.*, for some time, for a time; for a considerable period (74.)

**aliquī (aliquis)**, aliqua, aliquod (*aliquid*), *adj.*, some, any; *noun*, some one, any one, something, anything. *Pl.*, any.

**alius, alia, aliud**, other, another. *As noun*, some one else, some other, another (120); anything else (91); *pl.*, others (86). **alius super alium**, one on top of another; **aliī . . . aliī**, some . . . others (17, 139); **aliī alibī**, some in one place, some in another (136); **aliī in aliam**, some into one . . . some into another (67); **neque aliis**, and no other (45).

**Allobrogēs**, *-um, m.*, the name of a people of southeast Gaul.

**alter, -era, -erum**, the other, a second, another, one (of two). *As noun*, the other, one (of two), the one (of two); *pl.*, the other party (120). **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the other.

**altus, -a, -um**, tall, high, lofty, elevated; deep (85). *As noun*, **alatum, -ī, n.**, the deep (sea), the ocean (12).

**Amānus, -ī, m.**, the name of a mountain range of eastern Cilicia.

**Ambiorīx, -īgis, m.**, the name of a Gallic chieftain.

**ambō, -ae, -ō** (*declined as duo, except for the ē*), both.

**ambulō, i., -āvī, -ātum est**, walk, stroll; roam (65); crawl (50).

**America, -ae, f.**, America.

**Americānus, -a, -um**, American, of America. *As noun*, **Americānus, -ī, m.**, (an) American; *pl.*, the Americans.

**amicitia, -ae, f.**, friendship, confidence.

**amicus, -a, -um**, friendly. *As noun*, **amicus, -ī, m.**, friend; *pl.*, **Amīci, -ōrum, m.**, the Friends.

**āmittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus**, lose.

**amō, i.**, love, like, fancy, cherish; be in love with (48). *Pass.*, be beloved (63). *Partic.*, **amāns, -antis, with gen.**, loyal (to).

**amplector, 3, -plexus sum**, embrace, accept.

**amplius, adv., compar.**, further, more.

**ancora, -ae, f.**, anchor.

**angustus, -a, -um**, narrow.

**animadvertō, 3, -vertī, -versus**, notice, note, perceive, observe, catch sight of, witness, see; discover, find out.

**animus, -ī, m.**, mind, spirit, soul, heart; manner, fashion, spirit: frame of mind; purpose; courage (56, 120), confidence (135). *Pl.*, courage, feeling (119), insubordinate spirit (140). See also **dēmittō** and **habeō**.

**Annēius, -ēī, m.**, (Marcus) Anneius, lieutenant to Marcus Cicero.

**annus, -ī, m.**, year.

**ante, adv.**, before, earlier, previously. See also *iam* and *paulō*.

**ante, prep. with acc.**, before; in front of, ahead of.

**anteā, adv.**, before, previously.

**antequam, conj.**, before.

**Antiochēa, -ae, f.**, Antioch, a city of Syria.

**antīquitus, adv.**, in ancient times, in early times.

- Antistius**, -*tī*, *m.*, the name of a Roman physician.
- Antōnius**, -*nī*, *m.*, Anthony (Wayne), an officer in the Revolutionary War.
- Apamēa**, -*ae*, *f.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.
- aperiō**, 4, *aperuī*, *apertus*, disclose; explain (2). *Partic. as adj.*, *aper-tus*, -*a*, -*um*, open, unprotected.
- appellō**, 1, call, name, address by name; call upon, call (122). *Pass.*, be known as.
- appellō**, 3, -*pulī*, -*pulsus*, bring, steer, row. *ad lītus appellere*, beach, run aground upon the shore.
- appetō**, 3, -*petīvī or -petii*, -*petitus*, attack, aim a thrust at.
- appōnō**, 3, -*posuī*, -*positus*, set on, bring on, serve (food).
- appropinquō**, 1, -*āvī*, -*ātūm est*, approach, draw near; be close at hand (47).
- apud**, *prep. with acc.*, among, in the country of, with; near, at; at (in) the house of; in the presence of.
- aqua**, -*ae*, *f.*, water.
- Arabēs**, -*um*, *m.*, the Arabs.
- Arae (-ārum, f.) Alexandrī**, the name of an ancient camp site in Cilicia (*lit.* the Altars of Alexander).
- arbitror**, 1, think, believe, judge.
- arbor**, -*oris*, *f.*, tree.
- arceō**, 2, -*uī*, keep out, ward off, keep back, keep off.
- arcēssō**, 3, -*ivī*, -*itus*, call in; call up (136).
- Ardeātēs**, -*ium*, *m.*, the people of Ardea (an ancient town about 20 miles south of Rome).
- ārdēns**, -*entis*, *partic. as adj.*, blazing.
- argenteus**, -*a*, -*um*, of silver, silver.
- argentum**, -*ī*, *n.*, silver, silver plate.
- arma**, -*ōrum*, *n.*, arms, weapons.
- armātus**, -*a*, -*um*, *partic. as adj.*, armed, in arms, arms in hand (20); arms and all (88). *Pl., as noun*, **armāti**, -*ōrum*, *m.*, armed men, warriors, braves.
- Arnoldius**, -*dī*, *m.*, (Benedict) Arnold, an officer in the Revolutionary War.
- Arpinēius**, -*ēī*, *m.*, (Gaius) Arpineius, a Roman soldier (102).
- arripiō**, 3, -*ripuī*, -*reptus*, catch up, seize; rescue (106).
- ars**, *artis*, *f.*, business, profession. **ars magica**, black art, magic.
- ascendō**, 3, *ascendī*, *ascēnsus*, ascend, clamber up, scale; *with in and acc.*, make the ascent of (139).
- asciscō**, 3, *ascīvī*, *ascītus*, win over; adopt (67).
- Asia**, -*ae*, *f.*, (1) Asia; (2) Asia Minor (132, 138).
- Asiāticus**, -*a*, -*um*, Asiatic, of Asia.
- asper**, -*era*, -*erum*, rough; severe (101); troublesome (135).
- assēnsus**, -*ūs*, *m.*, approval.
- at**, *conj.*, but, whereas, still, however.
- Atlanticus**, -*a*, -*um*, Atlantic.
- atque**, ac, *conj.*, and. See also *simul*.
- Atrebatēs**, -*um*, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.
- Attius**, -*tī*, *m.*, (Publius) Attius (Varus), one of Pompey's generals.
- auctōritās**, -*ātis*, *f.*, influence, dignity, impressiveness.
- audācia**, -*ae*, *f.*, boldness, daring, temerity, hardihood; insubordination, lawlessness (140); (act of) daring (88).
- audācter**, *adv.*, boldly, with boldness.
- audāx**, -*ācis*, *adj.*, bold, daring, audacious; of daring (99).
- audeō**, 2, *ausus sum*, dare, venture.

**audiō**, 4, -īvī, -ītus, hear, learn; listen, listen to, heed, give ear to.

**augeō**, 2, auxī, auctus; *pass.*, increase, grow (93); grow brighter (126). auris, -is, *f.*, ear.

**aurum**, -ī, *n.*, gold.

**ausus**, -a, -um, see *audeō*.

**aut**, *conj.*, or; sometimes represented in English by “and.” aut . . . aut, either . . . or.

**autem**, *conj.*, however, but, whereas; moreover, and.

**auxilium**, -īlī, *n.*, aid, help, assistance, reënforcement, relief, protection.

*Pl.*, auxiliary forces, supplementary force (detachments), allied force, allies, assistants, reënforcements, help. *auxiliō esse, with a second dat.*, (freely) help, benefit, support, protect, rescue. See also *ferō* and *veniō*.

**avāritia**, -ae, *f.*, greed, covetousness.

**āvertō**, 3, -vertī, -versus; *pass.*, turn (one's self) aside. *Partic. as adj.*, **āversus**, -a, -um, turned away (131).

**avis**, -is, *f.*, bird.

**bāca**, -ae, *f.*, berry.

**Bagrada**, -ae, *m.*, the name of a river of northern Africa.

**ballista**, -ae, *f.*; *pl.*, artillery.

**Balventius**, -tī, *m.*, (Titus) Balventius, a Roman standard bearer (106).

**barbarus**, -a, -um, barbarian. As noun, **barbarī**, -ōrum, *m.*, savages.

**Batāvī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Dutch.

**Bēcō**, -ōnis, *m.*, (Nathaniel) Bacon, a hero of colonial times.

**Bellovacī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.

**bellum**, -ī, *n.*, war, warfare; fighting (116). See also *gerō*.

**Bēnbrigius**, -gī, *m.*, (William) Bainbridge, an American naval officer. **bene**, *adv.*, well, successfully, satisfactorily. See also *gerō*, *habeō*, and *polliceor*.

**beneficiū**, -cī, *n.*, act of kindness, kindness, favor.

**Bibulus**, -ī, *m.*, (Marcus) Bibulus, a (Roman) governor of Syria.

**bīdūm**, -ī, *n.*, two days.

**Bīthynia**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a district of Asia Minor.

**bonus**, -a, -um, good. *As noun*, **bona**, -ōrum, *n.*, goods, possessions, belongings, things.

**bōs**, **bovis**, *c.* (*dat. and abl. pl.*, **bōbus** or **būbus**); *pl.*, cattle.

**Bostō**, -ōnis, *m.*, Boston.

**Braddoc**, -ōcis, *m.*, (Edward) Braddock, an English commander in the French and Indian War.

**brevī**, *adv.*, shortly, (with) in a short time, soon, in a moment, before long, quickly; soon afterward (67).

**Britannī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the English, the British, Englishmen.

**Britannia**, -ae, *f.*, England; Britain (101). **Britannia Nova**, New England.

**Britannicus**, -a, -um, English, British, of the English. See also *vir*.

**Brūtus**, -ī, *m.*, (1) Marcus Brutus, one of the murderers of Julius Caesar; (2) Decimus Brutus, husband of Sempronia (135).

**Byzantium**, -tī, *n.*, the ancient name of Constantinople.

**C.**, abbreviation of **Cāius**, -āī, *m.* (Gaius).

**Cabot**, -ōtis, *m.*, (1) John Cabot,

- (2) Sebastian Cabot; two early explorers, father and son.
- cadō**, *3, cecidī*, fall; turn out, fall out (14).
- caedēs**, *-is, f.*, slaughter, carnage, massacre, murder.
- caelum**, *-i, n.*, (the open) sky, heaven; (the open) air; climate.
- Caesar**, *-aris, m.*, (1) Gaius Julius Caesar, the conqueror of Gaul; (2) Lucius Caesar, an officer in Pompey's navy (117).
- caespes**, *-itis, m.*, sod.
- callidus**, *-a, -um*, clever.
- Camillus**, *-i, m.*, (Marcus) Camillus, a hero of ancient Rome.
- Canada**, *-ae, f.*, Canada.
- Caninius**, *-nī, m.*, (Gaius) Caninius (Rebilus), lieutenant to Curio in the civil war.
- canis**, *-is, c.*, dog.
- canō**, *3, cecinī*, play, sing.
- cantus**, *-ūs, m.*, singing, chanting, chant.
- capiō**, *3, cēpī*, **captus**, catch, seize, capture, take, occupy; take prisoner, make prisoner; secure, get (13); adopt (plan), follow (course), make for (hills), take up (arms). *Pass.*, be attracted. **pedibus captus**, lame; *vī capere*, take by storm.
- Capitōlium**, *-lī, n.*, the citadel of ancient Rome, the Capitol.
- Cappadocia**, *-ae, f.*, the name of a district of Asia Minor.
- captīvus**, *-i, m.*, prisoner, captive.
- caput**, *-itis, n.*, head; capital. See also **damnō**.
- carcer**, *-eris, m.*, prison.
- careō**, *2, -uī*, *with abl.*, be without, lack; spare.
- Carletō**, *-ōnis, m.*, (Sir Guy) Carleton, a British officer in the Revolutionary War.
- carō**, *carnis, f.*, meat, flesh.
- Carolaena**, *-ae, f.*, Carolina.
- carpō**, *3, carpsi*, **carptus**, gather, pluck.
- carrus**, *-i, m.*, wagon, cart.
- cārus**, *-a, -um*, beloved, precious, prized.
- casa**, *-ae, f.*, hut, shack. *Pl.*, barracks.
- Casca**, *-ae, m.*, the name of two brothers implicated in the murder of Julius Caesar.
- castellum**, *-i, n.*, blockhouse, fort, post; stronghold (133, 139).
- Castor**, *-oris, m.*, the name of a god worshiped by the Romans.
- castra**, *-ōrum, n.*, (entrenched) camp, fortress, fortified post, encampment. See also **faciō**, **habeō**, and **pōnō**.
- Castra (-ōrum, n.) Cornēlia' (-ōrum)**, the name of the site of a camp established in Africa by Publius Cornelius Scipio at the time of the second Punic War.
- cāsus**, *-ūs, m.*, fall (86); accident (94), plight (84, 134), calamity (97), disaster (115), emergency (105). *Abl. as adv.*, **cāsū**, by chance, as chance would have it.
- Catilīna**, *-ae, m.*, (Lucius Sergius) Catiline, a politician who conspired to overthrow the government of Rome.
- causa**, *-ae, f.*, cause, grounds, excuse, occasion; case (41). *Abl. causā*, with gen. of the gerundive, gerund, or abstract noun, for the purpose (of), for the business (of), for purposes (of), with the idea (of), with a view to, etc. **ob eam causam**, for that reason.

- cavus**, -a, -um, hollow.  
**cedidī**, see **cadō**.  
**cēdō**, 3, cessī, cessum est, fall back.  
**locō cēdere**, leave (one's) station, abandon (one's) position, give way.  
**celebrō**, 1, celebrate.  
**celeritās**, -ātis, f., swiftness, speed, swift action, haste.  
**celeriter**, *adv.*, quickly, swiftly, rapidly, speedily, fast; in haste, hastily. *Superl.*, at top speed, with great speed, with all speed.  
**cēna**, -ae, f., dinner.  
**cēnō**, 1, -āvī, (-ātus), dine, take dinner.  
**cēnseō**, 2, -uī, (*cēnsus*), express (the) opinion, give as (one's) opinion; urge (120).  
**centuriō**, -ōnis, m., captain, lieutenant, sergeant; centurion (103 ff.).  
**cēpī**, see **capiō**.  
**Cercās**, -ae, m., (Benjamin) Church, a celebrated Indian fighter.  
**cernō**, 3, (*crēvī*, certus), see, descry, discern, observe; watch (128).  
**certē**, *adv.*, at any rate, certainly; as a matter of fact (90).  
**certus**, -a, -um, certain, definite; assured (135); (a) particular (89). See also **cōgnōscō**, **faciō**, and **fiō**.  
**cēterī**, -ae, -a, the other, the rest (of). *As masc. noun*, the others, the rest, the other men.  
**Ceutronēs**, -um, m., the name of a people of northern Gaul.  
**cibus**, -ī, m., food.  
**Cicerō**, -ōnis, m., (1) Marcus Tullius Cicero, consul in 63 B.C.; (2) Quintus Tullius Cicero, brother of the preceding.  
**Cilicia**, -ae, f., the name of a district in Asia Minor.  
**Cimber**, -bri, m., see **Tillius**.
- circiter**, *adv.*, about.  
**circuitus**, -ūs, m., circuit, detour; circumference (110).  
**circum**, *prep. with acc.*, around, about, in the neighborhood of (116).  
**circumdō**, 1, -dedī, -datus, surround, girdle, encircle.  
**circumeō**, -ire, -iī, -itus, make the rounds of.  
**circumsistō**, 3, -stitī or -stetī, rally (gather, crowd) around.  
**circumstō**, 1, -stitī, stand about; surround, encircle.  
**circumveniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventus, surround, encircle, hem in, bring to bay; flank, turn the flank (of).  
**citrō**, *adv.*, see **ultrō**.  
**cīvis**, -is, c., citizen, fellow-citizen, countryman. *Pl.*, (one's) countrymen, people, townsmen.  
**cīvitās**, -ātis, f. (*gen. pl.* -um or -ium), state, country.  
**clādēs**, -is, f., disaster.  
**clam**, *adv.*, secretly, stealthily, quietly; unnoticed, unobserved.  
**clāmō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, cry out, call out.  
**clāmor**, -ōris, m., cry, shout.  
**clārus**, -a, -um, famous, prominent; loud (86).  
**classis**, -is, f., fleet.  
**claudō**, 3, **clausī**, **clausus**, close; shut up, confine (91).  
**Cn.**, *abbreviation of Cnaeus*, -ī, m., (*Gnaeus*).  
**cōēgī**, coactus, -a, -um, see **cōgō**.  
**coēpī**, **coepisse**, **coepitus**, began, commenced; proceeded (130).  
**coerceō**, 2, -ercui, -ercitus, hold in check.  
**cōgitō**, 1, think, imagine; *with dē and abl.*, have (any) thought (of) (51).

**cōgnōscō**, *3*, **cōgnōvī**, **cōgnitus**, get acquainted with, learn (of), fathom, find, observe; be informed, hear, gain information; get information of, gain (some) conception of (110); realize (93, 122); recognize (63, 89): try (case). *Pass.*, become known, be known. **certius cōgnōscere**, get more definite information (115).

**cōgō**, *3*, **cōēgī**, **cōactus**, compel, force, oblige, constrain, impel, lead (126); collect, gather, bring together, call together, call in, get together; concentrate, crowd; muster, organize. **cohors**, *-rtis, f.*, cohort. **cohors prae-tōria**, bodyguard.

**cohortor**, *1*, rally, cheer on; urge, exhort. *inter sē cohortārī*; exhort one another (127).

**collis**, *-is, m.*, hill.

**collocō**, *1*, place, put, deposit; station, locate, quarter, settle; establish, build: arrange, place, lay (ambuscade); mount (artillery); pitch (camp); stack (arms). *in aciē collocāre*, form in line.

**colloquium**, *-ī, n.*, conference, interview.

**colloquor**, *3*, *-locūtus sum*, converse, talk, have an interview.

**colōnia**, *-ae, f.*, colony.

**colōnus**, *-ī, m.*, colonist, settler.

**Columbus**, *-ī, m.*, (Christopher) Columbus, the discoverer of America.

**comes**, *-itis, c.*, companion, attendant, follower; hanger-on, minion (71). *Pl.*, (one's) men (22, 74), (one's) fellows (86).

**cōmitās**, *-ātis, f.*, kindness, courtesy. **cōmīter**, *adv.*, courteously (29), kindly (62); on friendly terms (23).

**Commāgēnus**, *-a, -um*, of Commagene (a northern district of Syria).

**commemorō**, *1*, relate, rehearse, state, note.

**committō**, *3*, *-mīsī*, *-missus*, join, consign. **proelium committere**, join battle, begin battle, engage in battle, offer battle, fight; *pass.*, (battle) take place; **proeliō rem committere**, risk an engagement, bring on an engagement.

**commodus**, *-a, -um*, easy, expeditious (130). *As noun*, **commodum**, *-ī, n.*, well-being.

**Commoris**, *-is, f.* (*acc. sing. -im*), the name of a small town of Asia Minor.

**commoveō**, *2*, *-mōvī*, *-mōtus*, move, stir (75), alarm (138). *Partic.*, **commōtus**, *-a, -um*, disturbed, excited, upset, startled, alarmed; concerned, stirred up, wrought up; spurred on, moved. *īrā commovērī*, become angry.

**commūnis**, *-is, -e*, common.

**compellō**, *3*, *-pulī*, *-pulsus*, drive, force. **compleō**, *2*, *-plēvī*, *-plētus*, fill, fill up; swamp (4), choke (122); supply (118).

**complūrēs**, *-ēs, -a*, several, several of, some, (quite) a number of, quite a few, numerous; to a considerable number (139); several (in number) (90).

**comportō**, *1*, bring together, gather together, get together, collect; get in, lay in (109).

**comprehendō**, *3*, *-prehendī*, *-prehēn-sus*, arrest (132); catch (fire).

**cōnātus**, *-ūs, m.*, attempt.

**concedō**, *3*, *-cessī*, *-cessus*, allow, grant, concede.

**concilium**, -ī, *n.*, council (of war), powwow; (deliberative) body (34).

**concurrō**, 3, -currī, -cursum est, rush (together), run. *inter sē concurre*rere, charge upon one another (117).

**condiciō**, -ōnis, *f.*, terms; proposal (110); condition, plight (91).

**condō**, 3, -didi, -ditus, store, deposit, hide away; found, establish (city, state).

**condūcō**, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, hire, engage.

**cōferō**, -ferre, contulī, conlātus, bring together (117). *sē cōferre*, betake (one's) self, make (one's) way, proceed; withdraw, return.

**cōfertus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, dense (107), solid (63); (the) thick (of) (136).

**cōfēstīm**, *adv.*, at once, quickly, forthwith, immediately, without delay; in haste, hastily, in a hurry, hurriedly.

**cōficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, finish, complete, accomplish, bring to pass; push to a conclusion (140); wear out, exhaust, weaken, overcome.

**cōfirmō**, 1, assert, declare; cheer (up), encourage, reassure, fortify, steady (120).

**cōfodiō**, 3, -fōdī, -fōssus, pierce, slay. *coniō*, 3, -iēcī, -iectus, discharge,

hurl, shoot, throw, cast; shower, pour in (missiles). *in fugam cōcīrē*, put to flight, rout.

**coniungō**, 3, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, join. *sē coniungere*, join, unite, effect (a) junction, join forces; ally one's self (103), cast in one's lot (130).

**coniūratiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, conspiracy.

**cōnor**, 1, try, attempt, endeavor.

**cōnsēndō**, 3, -scendī, -scēnsus, climb

up (64); go on board, come on board, embark upon; man (rampart); mount (horse); scale (wall).

**cōsequor**, 3, -secūtus sum, catch up, come up; catch up with, come up with; follow (90).

**cōservō**, 1, preserve (116), save, look out for; husband (101), spare (130).

**cōnsidō**, 3, -sēdī, -sessum est, settle, take up quarters; encamp, bivouac; take up (a) position (112); come to a halt (114).

**cōnsilium**, -ī, *n.*, plan, plans, plan of action, policy, course; design, purpose, scheme, project, venture; device, expedient, plot, stratagem, trick: advice, counsel; council (of war), conference. *Pl.*, course (135). See also *mūtō*.

**cōsistō**, 3, -stitī, -stitum est, stop, halt, come to a halt; take (one's) stand, station (one's) self; stand, ride, remain (at anchor). *in orbem cōsistere*, form in a circle.

**cōsōlor**, 1, comfort, reassure; address kindly (130).

**cōspectus**, -ūs, *m.*, sight, view.

**cōspiciō**, 3, -spēxī, -spectus, see, catch sight of; look on (87).

**cōstantia**, -ae, *f.*, firmness, resolution, steadfastness, reliability; coolness (83).

**cōstituō**, 3, -stituī, -stitūtus, decide, determine, plan; designate, appoint (89); fix, establish, organize; draw up, station (115).

**cōsuēscō**, 3, -suēvī, (-suētus); *perf.* (*with force of present*), be accustomed, be wont, be in the habit (of); *translated impersonally*, be (one's) custom.

**cōsuētūdō**, -inis, *f.*, practice, custom, policy; the ordinary (133).

**cōsulō**, *3*, -sulūi, (-sultus), take measures, make provision, look out.

**cōsultō**, *adv.*, purposely, designedly.

**cōnsūmō**, *3*, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, use up: eat, eat up; destroy; spend,

pass (time). *ignī cōnsūmere*, burn.

**contendō**, *3*, -tendī, (-tentus), proceed, march, make one's way; press (push) on, keep on, forge ahead, hurry: beg (129).

**continēns**, -entis, *partic. as adj.*, continuous, unremitting, unbroken. *As noun*, **continēns**, -entis, *f.* (*sc. terra*), mainland (100, 101).

**contineō**, *2*, -tinūi, -tentus, confine, coop up, restrain.

**cōtiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, address; assembly, meeting.

**contrā**, *prep. with acc.*, against, in the direction of (126).

**contulī**, see **cōnferō**.

**contumēlia**, -ae, *f.*, insult, affront, indignity, illtreatment; taunt.

**conveniō**, *4*, -vēnī, -ventus, meet, interview, have interview with, see; come together, gather, assemble.

**convertō**, *3*, -vertī, -versus, turn (128); direct (114), convert (96). *sē convertere*, turn, give attention (90).

**convocō**, *1*, call together, get together, convene, call, summon.

**coorior**, *4*, -ortus sum, arise, come up, spring up; close in (106).

**cōpia**, -ae, *f.*, supply, abundance; outfit. *Pl.*, supplies, stores; force, forces, troops, companies, army; (one's) following (138).

**Coriolānus**, -ī, *m.*, (Gaius) Coriolanus, a Roman who fought against his country.

**Cornēlius**, -a, -um, see **Castra Cornēlia**.

**Cornivallis**, -is, *m.*, (Lord) Cornwallis, a British general in the Revolutionary War.

**corpus**, -oris, *n.*, body.

**cotidiē**, *adv.*, daily, every day.

**Cotta**, -ae, *m.*, (Lucius) Cotta, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.

**Crassus**, -ī, *m.*, (Marcus) Crassus, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.

**crēdō**, *3*, crēdidī, crēditus, believe, think.

**cruciātus**, -ūs, *m.*, torture, pain, suffering, agony.

**crūdēlis**, -is, -e, cruel, savage.

**crūdēlitas**, -ātis, *f.*, cruelty, barbarity, savagery.

**cruentus**, -a, -um, bloody.

**Cūba**, -ae, *f.*, Cuba.

**cum**, *conj.*, (*time and circumstance*) when, while, after, as; at a time when (10): (*cause*) since, inasmuch as, as: (*concession*) though, although. *With subjunctive, often best rendered by a participial phrase.* **cum . . . tum**, not only . . . but also; **cum prīmum**, as soon as, when . . . first.

**cum**, *prep. with abl.*, with, along with. See also **habeo** (*sēcum*), **simul**, and **ūnā**.

**cuneus**, -ī, *m.*, wedge, stake.

**cupidē**, *adv.*, eagerly, with great eagerness.

**cūr**, *adv.*, why, on account of which.

**Cūriō**, -ōnis, *m.*, (Gaius) Curio, commander of Caesar's forces in Africa.

**cūrō**, *1*, care for; treat (wounds); watch over (47): care for, have regard for (91).

**currō**, *3*, cucurri, cursum est, run,

rush; run about (90); run, play (of fire) (90).

cursus, -ūs, *m.*, course, stretch.

custōdia, -ae, *f.*, custody. *Pl.*, guards, watch, pickets.

custōdiō, 4, -īvī, -ītus, guard, watch.

memoriā custōdīre, remember.

custōs, -ōdis, *m.*, guard, sentinel.

Cybistra, -ōrum, *n.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.

D., abbreviation of Decimus, -ī, *m.*

damnō, 1, condemn. capitīs damnāre, condemn to death.

dē, prep. with *abl.*, about, concerning, of, with reference to; down from, from.

decem, indeclinable *adj.*, ten.

decimus, -a, -um, tenth.

dēdī, see dō.

dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*, surrender. See also veniō.

dēdō, 3, -dīdī, -ditus, give up, surrender. *Partic. as noun*, dēdītī, -ōrum,

*m.*, surrendered men, prisoners.

sē dēdere, surrender, give one's self up, capitulate.

dēdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, lead forth, transport, conduct, escort, take, bring, lead; withdraw, lead away, call away, recall; draw down (131). dēfendō, 3, -fendī, -fēnsus, defend, protect.

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.*, defense.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, bear down (56), carry, bear, bring; report. *Pass.*, be carried, drift.

dēfessus, -a, -um, weary, tired out, worn out.

dēficiō, 3, -fēcī, (-fectus), give out, fail, run low.

dēfigō, 3, -fixī, -fixus, fix, plant, set up.

dēiciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus, hurl down, hurl back (86); tear down, destroy (99). *Partic.*, dēiectus, -a, -um, with *abl.*, (*freely*) disappointed (in). deinde, *adv.*, then, next, later, subsequently.

Dēiotarus, -ī, *m.*, the name of a native king who favored Roman rule in Asia Minor.

dēlātus, -a, -um, see dēferō.

dēleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētus, destroy, make away with; demolish, raze.

dēligō, 3, -lēgī, -lēctus, choose, select, pick out, appoint, delegate. *Partic. as adj.*, dēlēctus, -a, -um, chosen (34).

dēmittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus, lower. *Partic. as adj.*, dēmissus, -a, -um, downcast, crestfallen; animō dēmissus, disheartened, discouraged. sē animō dēmittere, lose heart (83).

dēmōnstrō, 1, point out, mention; explain (108).

dēnum, *adv.*, at length, finally, at last. See also iam.

dēnique, *adv.*, finally, in fine.

dēnuō, *adv.*, anew, again, once more, a second time.

dēpōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus, put down (load), lay down, surrender (office), give up (hope).

dēscendō, 3, -scendī, -scēnsum est, descend, come down, charge down (121).

dēserō, 3, -seruī, -sertus, desert, leave, leave in the lurch.

dēsistō, 3, -stitī, stitum est, desist, cease. proeliō dēsistere, cease fighting, withdraw.

dēsum, deesse, dēfui, be wanting (84), be disloyal (14).

dēterreō, 2, -terrū, -territus, keep off, scare away; intimidate.

**dētrahō**, 3, -trāxī, -tractus, pull (tear, strip) off; drag out (85).

**dētrimentum**, -ī, n., disaster, reverse, calamity, loss, harm, misfortune, mishap, accident; source of danger (100).

**dētrūdō**, 3, -trūsī, -trūsus, push off, shove off.

**dētulī**, see **dēferō**.

**deus**, -ī, m. (*dat. and abl. pl.*, **deīs**, *diīs, or dīs*), god.

**dēversōrium**, -ī, n., inn, tavern.

**dēvius**, -a, -um, out of the way.

**dēvorō**, 1, devour.

**dexter**, -tra, -trum, right. *As noun*, **dextra**, -ae, f. (*sc. manus*), right hand.

**dīcō**, 3, **dīxī**, dictus, say, speak, declare, tell, communicate, announce, report, mention, remark, suggest; express (sentiment, view), make (suggestion). **male dīcere**, swear, curse.

**dīēs**, -ēī, m. and f., day. *in dīēs*, from day to day.

**differō**, -ferre, distulī, dīlātus, scatter; put off, postpone.

**difficilis**, -is, -e, hard, difficult, troublesome; delicate (business), obstructed (slope).

**dignitās**, -ātis, f., reputation, standing.

**diligenter**, *adv.*, diligently, carefully, with care; busily (100); with all diligence (137).

**diligentia**, -ae, f., care, pains (99), carefulness, vigilance.

**dīmīcō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, fight, contend, struggle, be at war; do (one's) fighting (101).

**dīmittō**, 3, -mīsī, -missus, let go, release; let slip (through one's fin-

gers), miss (121), lose possession of; give up, abandon (36), forego (97); dismiss, send away, allow to depart; send out (108); send on (128).

**discēdō**, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, withdraw, depart, go (off), march away, retreat, leave; recede (66); move (103, 105). *With ab or ex and abl.*, leave, desert. **ab armīs discēdere**, discard (one's) arms (110); **īnferior discēdere**, be beaten (39).

**discessus**, -ūs, m., withdrawal, recall.

**discō**, 3, didicī, learn, acquire.

**dispōnō**, 3, -posuī, -positus, arrange, station.

**disputō**, -āvī, -ātum est, discuss, continue (the) discussion (104).

**dīū**, *adv.*, long, for a long time (period); (discuss) at length. **neque . . . diūtius**, and . . . no longer; nor very long (129); **nōn diūtius**, no longer. See also *iam*.

**dīversus**, -a, -um, different, various.

**dīvidō**, 3, -vīsī, -vīsus, divide, split up.

**dō**, dare, dedī, datus, give, grant, present; communicate, supply, provide; afford, offer, allow (109, 129); sound (signal). *Pass.*, present (it)self (121). *in custōdiam dare*, have arrested, arrest; *in fugam dare*, put to flight, rout, disperse; **operam dare**, give attention (91, 108); try, see to it (135); **poenās dare**, (pay the penalty), be punished; **sē somnō dare**, go to sleep, betake one's self to rest; **vēla dare**, set sail.

**doceō**, 2, -uī, doctus, show, point out; inform, tell; state, remind.

**dolor**, -ōris, m., distress, grief; matter of chagrin.

**dominus**, -ī, *m.*, master, owner.  
**Domitius**, -ī, *m.*, (Gnaeus) Domitius, a cavalry officer in Curio's army.  
**domus**, -ūs, *f.*, house, home, residence, dwelling, dwelling place; **domī**, at home; **domō**, from home (see also **ēgredior**); **domum**, homeward, home, toward home, for home; to (their) homes (96).

**dōnec**, *conj.*, until.

**dōnum**, -ī, *n.*, gift, present.

**dubitō**, *i.*, -āvī, -ātum est, hesitate.  
**dubius**, -a, -um, doubtful, uncertain.

*As noun*, **dubium**, -ī, *n.*, doubt (126).

**ducentī**, -ae, -a, two hundred.

**dūcō**, *3*, dūxī, **ductus**, lead, command, be commander of (9, 34); bring, conduct, take; draw, pull (56); stretch (chain). *in mātrimōnium dūcere*, marry, take in marriage.

**dum**, *conj.*, while, as, during the time when; provided only.

**duo**, **duae**, **duo**, two, the two.

**duodecim**, *indeclinable adj.*, twelve.

**dux**, **ducis**, *c.*, leader, commander, chief, captain, officer; conductor, guide.

**ē**, **ex**, *prep. with abl.*, (*separation, source*), from, (out) of, from out, out from; beyond (sight); after, in accordance with; (*material*), of, from; (*partitive*), of, out of, from. See also **aciēs**, **discēdō**, and **pars**.

**Eborācopolis**, -is, *f.*, Yorktown.

**Eborācum** (-ī, *n.*) **Novum** (-ī), New York (City).

**ecfrēnātē**, *adv.*, wildly.

**ēdō**, *3*, **ēdī**, **ēsus**, eat.

**ēdō**, *3*, -didī, -ditus, utter, give forth, give voice to.

**efferō**, -ferre, **extulī**, **ēlātus**, carry forth, carry out, bring (forth).

**efficiō**, *3*, -fēcī, -fectus, accomplish, bring (it) to pass; construct (99).

**effugiō**, *3*, -fūgī, escape, make (one's) escape, make good (one's) escape, succeed in escaping, slip away, get away; find relief from (134).

**ēgī**, see **agō**.

**ego**, **meī**, *I.*

**ēgredior**, *3*, -gressus sum, go out; disembark, come ashore; march forth, file out, step out, pass out, make (one's) way out, come forth, go forth; retire, depart; set out (107); start out (122). **domō** **ēgredī**, leave home.

**ēlātus**, -a, -um, see **efferō**.

**Eleutherocilicēs**, -um, *m.*, the Free Cilicians.

**ēliciō**, *3*, -licuī, -licitus, lure forth, lure. **Elizabēta**, -ae, *f.*, Elizabeth.

**ēlūdō**, *3*, -lūsī, -lūsus, outwit, cheat, get the better of.

**ēmigrō**, *i.*, -āvī, -ātum est, emigrate, move away.

**ēmittō**, *3*, -mīsī, -missus, send forth, send out.

**ēmō**, *3*, **ēmī**, **emptus**, buy, purchase; buy up (91).

**emptiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, buying; *with gen.*, traffic (in).

**enim**, *conj.*, for.

**ēō**, *adv.*, thither, to that place, there. **ēō magis**, (on this account the more), all the more; **ēō . . . unde**, to a point where.

**ēō**, *iī*, *ītum* est, go, advance. *With ad and acc.*, go to meet (107).

**ēodem**, *adv.*, to the same place (spot); to this same point (73); for the same point (destination). (117).

**Epiphanēa, -ae, f.**, the name of a city of Asia Minor.

**eques, -itis, m.**, horseman, knight.  
*Pl.*, cavalry, horsemen; cavalry detachment (117).

**equitātus, -ūs, m.**, cavalry, cavalry force, cavalry detachment, force of cavalry; horsemen, horse.

**equus, -ī, m.**, horse. See also *vehō*.

**Erana, -ae f.**, the name of a town of Asia Minor.

**ēripiō, 3, -ripūī, -reptus**, wrest, recover, rescue. *With dat.*, take away (from) (71).

**errō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est**, wander (about), stray.

**ērumpō, 3, -rūpī, (-ruptus)**, burst (rush) forth, burst (rush) out, dart (out); break out, break through (43), break away (64), make a dash (68).

**ēruptiō, -ōnis, f.**, sally, sortie.

**et, conj.**, and. **et . . . et**, both . . . and. **etiam, adv.**, even, also, too. See also *quīn etiam* and *sōlum*.

**etsī, conj.**, although, even though.

**Eurōpa, -ae, f.**, Europe.

**ēvādō, 3, -vāsī, -vāsum est**, get out, escape; emerge (82).

**ēveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est**, turn out, go, proceed.

**ēventus, -ūs, m.**, outcome, sequel; net result (110).

**ex**, see **ē**.

**exāctus, -a, -um**, see **exigō**.

**excīdō, 3, -cīdī, -cīsus**, cut down.

**excipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus**, except; withstand (35); await, meet (37, 101).

**excitō, 1, rouse, rouse up.**

**exeō, -īre, -ii, -itum est**, go out (forth), come out (forth), go (out), march forth; depart, retire.

**exercitus, -ūs, m.**, army, force, command.

**exigō, 3, -ēgī, -āctus**, collect (taxes); pass (time). *Partic.*, **exāctus, -a, -um**, completed, ended.

**exiguus, -a, -um**, small, weak; faint (sound).

**existimō, 1**, think, believe, judge, fancy, feel.

**exitīalis, -is, -e**, deadly, fatal.

**exitus, -ūs, m.**, means of egress; solution.

**expediō, 4, -īvī, -ītus**, make ready, get ready, get out; prime (weapons).

**expeditus, -a, -um, partic. as adj.**, unencumbered (by baggage), in light marching order. *As noun*, **expeditī, -ōrum, m.**, light-armed troops.

**expellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsus**, drive out; dispel (doubt).

**explicō, 1, -āvī or -ūī, -ātus or -itus**, deploy, arrange.

**explōrātor, -ōris, m.**, scout, explorer, frontiersman.

**explōrō, 1**, explore, reconnoitre, examine, inspect.

**expugnō, 1**, take by storm, storm, capture, take.

**exsilīō, 4, -siluī**, leap out; spring up (20); leap (80).

**exsilium, -ī, n.**, exile.

**exspectō, 1**, await, wait for, await the coming (arrival) of, delay for (111); look forward to, anticipate; wait (67, 121).

**exstruō, 3, -strūxī, -strūctus**, construct, build.

**extinguō, 3, extīnxī, extīnctus**, extinguish, put out.

**extrā, prep. with acc.**, outside of, outside, without; beyond (127).

**Faber**, -brī, *m.*, (Captain John) Smith.  
**Fabius**, -bī, *m.*, (1) Gaius Fabius, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war; (2) Fabius Paelignus, a soldier in Curio's army; (3) Quintus Fabius Sanga, a lawyer who helped Cicero in the suppression of the conspiracy of Catiline.

**facile**, *adv.*, easily, with great ease, without trouble, without difficulty, readily.  
**facinus**, -oris, *n.*, crime, outrage; deed, exploit, feat.

**faciō**, 3, fēcī, *factus*, do, perform, make; commit, perpetrate; build, construct; choose, elect, appoint, make: carry out (massacre); make, lay, place (ambuscade); make, deliver (announcement); afford (opportunity); inflict (injury); leave (tracks); take (departure). **castra facere**, encamp; **certiōrem (-ēs)** **facere**, inform, enlighten, send word to, notify (see also **fiō**); **impetum facere**, charge; **iniūriās facere**, with *dat.*, illtreat (4); **iter facere**, travel, journey, march, advance, proceed, push on; range (21); **stipendia facere**, serve (in army). See also **fiō**.

**facultās, -ātis**, *f.*, opportunity, chance.  
**Faesulānus**, -a, -um, of Faesulae (a town of Etruria). *As noun*, **Faesulānus**, -ī, *m.*, (a) citizen of Faesulae.

**fallō**, 3, **fefellī**, falsus, disappoint. *Partic. as adj.*, falsus, -a, -um, false, fictitious (137).

**famēs**, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation. See also **necō**.

**faveō**, 2, **fāvī**, *fautum est*, with *dat.*, be favorably disposed (to), feel sympathy (for), side (with).

**fefellī**, see **fallō**.

**fēlíciter**, *adv.*, successfully, well, prosperously. **nec fēlíciter**, and unsuccessfully. See (*rem*) **gerō**.

**fenestra**, -ae, *f.*, window.

**fera**, -ae, *f.*, wild animal (creature, beast).

**Ferdinandus**, -ī, *m.*, Ferdinand, king of Spain.

**ferē**, *adv.*, about, nearly, almost.

**ferō**, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*, carry, bear, bring; endure, put up with, bear, withstand, brave, hold out against; permit (139), call for (127): advance (standards); cast (vote), pass (measure). *Pass.*, be carried (hurled, thrown), roll. **auxilium ferre**, bring relief, bring help, give assistance, lend aid, lend a hand, assist; *with dat.*, support, help; **molestē ferre**, be irritated, be indignant, be in a state of indignation, be aggrieved, feel (it) keenly (60), regret (95, 97); chafe under, chafe at, bear with irritation (34, 55).

**fidēlis**, -is, -e, faithful, loyal, reliable.

**fidēs**, -eī, *f.*, credence; loyalty (120).

**filia**, -ae, *f.*, daughter.

**filius**, -ī, *m.*, son; the younger, junior (5).

**finis**, -is, *m.*, end, objective point (89). *Pl.*, boundaries, border; territory, land, lands, country.

**finitimus**, -a, -um, neighboring, nearby, adjacent. *As noun*, **finitimī**, -ōrum, *m.*, adjacent peoples (138).

**fiō**, **fierī**, *factus sum*, be done, take place; be accomplished, be gone through with (109); happen, occur, come to pass, arise, come on; be, become, grow; be made, be appointed. **certior (-ēs) fierī**, be informed, learn. See also **faciō**.

- firmō, *i.*, secure, strengthen.  
 firmus, *-a, -um*, strong.  
**Flāminīnus**, *-i, m.*, (Titus Quintius) Flamininus, a Roman ex-consul.  
**fleō**, *2, flēvī, flētūm est*, weep, cry.  
**Flōrida**, *-ae, f.*, Florida.  
**flōs, flōris**, *m.*, blossom, flower.  
**fluctus**, *-ūs, m.*, wave.  
**flūmen**, *-inis, n.*, river, stream, current (73). *adversō flūmine*, up the river, up (the) stream, (on) up the stream (98); *secundō flūmine*, with the current, downstream.  
**fluō**, *3, flūxī*, (fluxus), flow.  
**folium**, *-i, n.*, leaf.  
**fōns, fontis**, *m.*, spring.  
**foris**, *-is, m.; pl.*, door.  
**forte**, *adv.*, by chance, accidentally, casually, as it chanced; perchance (77).  
**fortis**, *-is, -e*, brave, courageous, heroic.  
**fortiter**, *adv.*, bravely, courageously, valiantly, stoutly; with courage, with bravery, with fortitude (52); like a man (68).  
**fortitūdō, -inis, f.**, fortitude, heroism; spirit (61).  
**fortūna**, *-ae, f.*, fortune, fate, luck; good fortune (135). *Pl.*, well-being. *As proper name*, Fortūna, *-ae, f.*, the name of the goddess of fortune.  
**forum**, *-i, n.*, market place. *In particular, the market place at Rome, the Forum.*  
**fossa**, *-ae, f.*, ditch, moat.  
**frangō**, *3, frēgī, frāctus*, break, wreck; break down (26); break, humble (140), discourage, dishearten (33).  
**frāter**, *-tris, m.*, brother.
- frequēns, *-entis, adj.*; *pl.*, in large numbers.  
**fretum**, *-i, n.*, strait, channel, sound.  
**frīgidus**, *-a, -um*, icy.  
**frīgus**, *-oris, n.*, cold. *Pl.*, cold weather (7).  
**frūmentum**, *-i, n.*, grain, corn.  
**frūstrā**, *adv.*, in vain, to no purpose, without success.  
**frūstum**, *-i, n.*, bit, piece.  
**fuga**, *-ae, f.*, flight, rout, retreat, escape; defection (117). See also *coniciō* and *dō*.  
**fugiō**, *3, fūgī*, flee, retreat, retire, slip away; hurry, run. *Partic. as adj.*, *fugiēns, -entis*, flying (59, 70), in retreat (127).  
**fūmus**, *-i, m.*, smoke.
- Gabīnius, -nī, m.**, (Publius) Gabinius (Capito), a person implicated in Catiline's conspiracy.
- Gallia**, *-ae, f.*, France; Gaul (101 ff.).  
**Gallicus**, *-a, -um*, French; Gallic (126 ff.).  
**Gallus**, *-a, -um*, Gallic. *As noun*, **Gal-lus**, *-i, m.*, (a) Gaul: *pl.*, the Gauls (45 ff.); the French, Frenchmen.
- gaudeō**, *2, gāvīsus sum*, rejoice, be delighted (pleased, glad).
- gaza**, *-ae, f.*, treasure.
- gemitus**, *-ūs, m.*, groan.
- gēns, gentis, f.**, nation, tribe, people.
- genus**, *-eris, n.*, class; birth, family (136).
- Germānī, -ōrum, m.**, the Germans.
- gerō**, *3, gessī, gestus*, do, accomplish, manage (4), carry through to completion (129): have (quarrel); wear (22, 99). *Pass.*, take place, happen, go on, proceed. **bellum gerere**, wage war, fight, carry on

war, be at war, take the field, go on the warpath. **rem bene** (*fēliciter*) **gerere**, be successful, have (any) success, act successfully; **sē gerere**, behave, act, comport (one's) self. See also *rēs*.

**glaciēs**, -ēī, *f.*, ice.

**gladius**, -ī, *m.*, sword.

**glōria**, -ae, *f.*, luster, renown.

**glōrior**, ī, boast.

**Gorgia**, -ae, *f.*, Georgia.

**Graecus**, -a, -um, Greek.

**grātia**, -ae, *f.*, favor (89). *Pl.*, thanks.

**grātus**, -a, -um, acceptable, satisfactory, attractive; grateful (45).

**gravis**, -is, -e, heavy; trying (110), pressing (111); extortionate, ruinous (137): serious, dangerous (disease); heavy, deep, sound (sleep).

**graviter**, *adv.*, seriously, deeply, severely; much, greatly, exceedingly.

**Grūdiī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.

**gubernācūlum**, -ī, *n.*, steering oar. *Pl.*, steering gear, tiller, helm.

**gubernātōr**, -ōris, *m.*, helmsman, pilot.

**habeō**, 2, -ūī, -itus, have, hold, keep; hold, regard; get, make (135): deliver, make (speech), set forth (argument); attain (renown, credence). **bene sē habēre**, have a good time; **castra habēre**, remain encamped; **in animō habēre**, intend, plan; think of, consider (doing a thing); **in incertō habēre**, be undecided; **rēs ita sē habēre**, matters stand thus (53); **sēcum habēre**, harbor (132).

**habitō**, ī, -āvī, (-ātus), live, dwell, be located.

**Hadrūmētūm**, -ī, *n.*, the name of a town of northern Africa.

**Hannibal**, -alis, *m.*, the name of a famous Carthaginian general.

**harēna**, -ae, *f.*, sand.

**haud**, *adv.*, by no means, not very, not. See also *aequus*, *invītus*, *libenter*, *longinquus*, *longus*, *magnus*, and *procul*.

**Henrīcūs**, -ī, *m.*, Henry, king of Portugal.

**herba**, -ae, *f.*, grass.

**hiberna**, -ōrum, *n.*, winter quarters, winter camp, winter encampment.

**hīc**, *adv.*, here.

**hīc**, **haec**, **hoc**, this, that; *abl.*, **hāc** (*sc. viā*), by this route. *As noun*, he, they, this, these; *neut.*, this (thing, action, consideration, story, etc.).

**hiemō**, ī, -āvī, -ātum est, pass the winter, winter, be quartered for the winter.

**hiems**, -emis, *f.*, winter, winter time, winter season.

**Hispānī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Spanish, the Spaniards.

**Hispānia**, -ae, *f.*, Spain.

**Hispāniēnsis**, -is, -e, of Spain. *As noun*, **Hispāniēnsis**, -is, *m.*, (a) native of Spain.

**homō**, -inis, *c.*, man, fellow, individual, person, body; he, the man. *Pl.*, people, mankind (23).

**honor**, -ōris, *m.*, honor, mark of distinction; esteem, honor; deference (81).

**hōra**, -ae, *f.*, hour.

**Horātiūs**, -ī, *m.*, Horatius (Cocles), a hero of early Rome.

**horrendus**, -a, -um, awful, frightful.

**hortor**, ī, urge, exhort, direct; encourage, cheer, rally; beg (102, 104).

**hortus**, -ī, *m.*, garden.

**hostis**, -is, *m.*, enemy.

**hūc**, *adv.*, to this place, thither.

**Hudsōn**, -ōnis, *m.*, (1) Henry Hudson, the explorer; (2) the name of a river of New York state.

**humus**, -ī, *f.*, ground; **humī**, on the ground, upon the ground; in(to) the ground (90).

**ibi**, *adv.*, there, at that point, in that region, right there.

**Iconium**, -nī, *n.*, the name of a town of Asia Minor.

**idem**, *eadem*, **idem**, the same, that same, this same; the very (7). *As noun*, the same man; *neut.*, the same (thing, story, procedure, etc.).

**idōneus**, -a, -um, suitable, proper, satisfactory, well-adapted; favorable (wind).

**Idūs**, -uum, *f.*, the Ides (the 13th of some months, the 15th of others).

**igitur**, *conj.*, therefore, accordingly, and so.

**ignis**, -is, *m.*, fire, light, camp fire.

*Pl.*, flames. See also **cōnsūmō**.

**ignōminia**, -ae, *f.*, disgrace, humiliation.

**ignōtus**, -a, -um, unknown, unexplored, strange.

**ille**, *illa*, *illud*, that, this, the. *As noun*, he, she, the one, they, these; *neut.*, this.

**illūcēscō**, 3, -lūxī, dawn.

**impedimenta**, -ōrum, *n.*, baggage, baggage train, stores; personal effects (110).

**impediō**, 4, -īvī, -ītus, hinder, molest, delay; put a damper upon (138). *Partic. as adj.*, **impeditus**, -a, -um, hampered, weighed down, at a dis-

advantage; blockaded, obstructed, choked: difficult (ground) (128).

**imperātor**, -ōris, *m.*, general, commander, commanding general (officer), commander in chief.

**imperium**, -rī, *n.*, order (129), command (44); sway, control (81), government, rule (140).

**imperō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, *with dat. case, if any*, give orders (command, direction, directions), issue orders, order, direct.

**impetrō**, 1, win, gain, secure; buy (41).

**impetus**, -ūs, *m.*, attack, assault, charge, onset, onslaught.

**impōnō**, 3, -posuī, -positus, *with dat. or in and acc.*, place, load (upon, on).

**imus**, -a, -um, see **inferior**.

**in**, *prep.*; (1) *with abl.*, in, at, on, upon, on board, on the surface of; within, in the midst of, among; (2) *with acc.*, into, to, in, into the territory of; against, upon, on, at, among; toward, for; out upon (51).

**incendium**, -dī, *n.*, fire, conflagration.

**incendō**, 3, -cendī, -cēnsus, burn (up), destroy by fire; set fire to, fire.

**incertus**, -a, -um, irregular, devious (107); insecure (135). *As noun*, **incertum**, -ī, *n.*, uncertainty (135) (see **habēō**).

**incitō**, 1, spur on, stir up. **sē incitāre**, work one's self up (48).

**incola**, -ae, *c.*, inhabitant, native.

**incolō**, 3, -coluī, inhabit, occupy, populate, be settled in.

**incolumis**, -is, -e, safe, unharmed, in safety, unscathed, unmolested; scot free.

- incommōdum**, -ī, *n.*, inconvenience (54), check, set-back, disaster, reverse.
- incrēdibilis**, -is, -e, fabulous, astonishing.
- inde**, *adv.*, thence, from thence; from there; from that point; from it.
- Indiāna**, -ae, *f.*, Indiana.
- indicō**, 3, -dixī, -dictus, declare (war).
- Indus**, -a, -um, Indian. *As noun*, Indus, -ī, *m.*, (an) Indian; *pl.*, the Indians.
- inferior**, -iōr, -ius, inferior, lower, weaker. *Superl.*, īmus, -a, -um, (the) lowest (part of) (131). See also discēdō.
- inferō**, -ferre, intulī, inlātus, inflict; *with dat.*, inflict (upon), do (to), make (war upon). iniūriās īferre, *with dat.*, maltreat.
- infēstus**, -a, -um, threatening, opposing.
- ingredior**, 3, -gressus sum, enter, effect an entrance.
- inimīcus**, -a, -um, unfriendly, hostile, ill-disposed. *As noun*, inimīcus, -ī, *m.*, enemy, ill-wisher; *superl.*, deadly foe.
- iniquus**, -a, -um, unfavorable.
- iniūria**, -ae, *f.*, injury, wrong, damage; *pl.*, injuries, violence. *Abl. as adv.*, iniūriā, unjustly, wrongfully, without just cause (45). See also faciō and īferō.
- iniussū**, *abl. of defective noun, with gen.*, without the order (of), against the order (of), without orders (from).
- inlīdō**, 3, -līsī, -līsus, dash. *Pass.*, be dashed, crash.
- inmittō**, 3, -mīsī, -missus, send, throw, hurl, shoot, discharge, fire. tēlūm inmittere, fire.
- inopia**, -ae, *f.*, lack, need, scarcity.
- inquam**, —, -quiī, say, exclaim, cry; inquire, reply, retort.
- inrumpō**, 3, -rūpī, (*ruptus*), break (into), burst (into), rush (into), dash (into); burst in, break in.
- īnsequor**, 3, -secūtus sum, pursue, follow. vestīgiīs īsequī, follow the trail.
- īnsidiae**, -ārum, *f.*, ambuscade, ambush; treachery, underhand means (72). See also lateō.
- īnstar**, *indeclinable noun, with gen.*, the size (of), as large as.
- īnstruō**, 3, -strūxī, -strūctus, draw up, form, marshal; fit out, equip.
- īnsula**, -ae, *f.*, island. īnsula Longa, Long Island.
- īnteger**, -gra, -grum, untouched. *As noun*, integrī, -ōrum, *m.*, fresh troops.
- īntellegō**, 3, -lēxī, -lēctus, realize, see, perceive, gather, understand, know.
- īntempestus**, -a, -um, *lit.*, unseasonable. See nox.
- īnter**, *prep. with acc.*, among, in the midst of; between. See also agō, cohortor, and concurrō.
- īntercipiō**, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, intercept, cut off; capture.
- īnterdiū**, by day, by daylight.
- īnterdūm**, *adv.*, at times, from time to time; sometimes, occasionally; in some cases (91).
- īntereā**, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile.
- īntereō**, -īre, -īī, perish, be killed.
- īnterficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, kill, slay, put to death; murder, massacre,

kill off, cut off, cut down, cut to pieces. **tēlō interficere**, shoot dead. **interim**, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime, the while.

**intermittō**, *3.* -misi, -missus, check; leave between (126).

**interpōnō**, *3.* -posui, -positus, interpose, put (place, hold) between. *Pass.*, lie between, intervene.

**intervallum**, *-ī, n.*, distance.

**intrā**, *prep. with acc.*, within, behind; (over) within (113).

**intrō**, *1.* enter, make (one's) way into; step in (49): enter, gain (harbor).

**intus**, *adv.*, within, inside; on board (70).

**inveniō**, *4.* -vēni, -ventus, find, find out, discover.

**invīsus**, *-a, -um*, odious; hated (48, 75).

**invītus**, *-a, -um*, unwilling, against (one's) will, against (one's) inclination, with reluctance; exceedingly loath, much against (one's) will. **haud invītus**, nothing loath.

**ipse**, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, himself, herself, itself, themselves, *gen.*, own: (the city) proper, (this, that) particular: on their own motion (24); in person; with his own hand (136): very, mere, even. *As noun*, he, the man himself, they, *gen.*, his (own), their (own).

**ira**, *-ae, f.*, anger, wrath.

**irātus**, *-a, -um*, angry, in anger, in a passion, in (one's) wrath; hotly, angrily (103).

**is**, *ea*, *id*, *this*, *the*, *that*. *As noun*, he, a man (103), she, they, these, those, (the) people, (the) men; *neut.* it, this, that; this thing, this purpose (54), the things, the events, those

things; a thing (132), a project (139): *gen.*, his, her, their; of theirs (138). **id quod**, what.

**Isabella**, *-ae, f.*, the name of a queen of Spain.

**iste**, *ista*, *istud*, that, this; that . . . of yours (134). *As noun*, he, this (131).

**ita**, *adv.*, thus, so; in this way, in the following way; with matters standing thus (119); by this means (104): in such a manner (122); at such speed (139): so very (121).

**Italia**, *-ae, f.*, Italy.

**itaque**, *conj.*, and so, accordingly.

**iter**, *itineris*, *n.*, journey, way, road, route, march, traveling, trip, stage (138). **in itinere**, on the march, on the road, on the line of march, during the journey; **iter magnum**, forced march. See also **faciō**.

**iterum**, *adv.*, again, a second time, once again; the second time (64). See also **semel**.

**iaceō**, *2.* -uī, lie, lie neglected (131).

*Partic. as adj.*, *iacēns*, -entis, prostrate.

**iaciō**, *3*, *iēcī*, iactus, throw, cast, shoot; throw out (anchors).

**Iacsō**, *-ōnis*, *m.*, (Andrew) Jackson.

**iam**, *adv.*, now, already, at length.

**iam ante**, previously; **iam dēmūm**, now at length, at length; **iam diū**,

now for a long time, long since; **iam prīdem**, long since, long before.

**Iāniculum**, *-ī, n.*, the name of a hill separated from Rome by the Tiber.

**Iasper**, *-erī*, *m.*, (Sergeant) Jasper, a daring soldier of the Revolution.

**Iuba**, *-ae*, *m.*, the name of an African king.

iubeō, 2, iussī, iussus, order, command, direct, bid, tell, say (89); give orders, leave orders. *Pass.*, be under orders, be ordered.

iūdicō, 1, think, infer, believe, feel, be of the opinion.

Iūnius, -nī, m., (Gaius) Junius, a soldier in Caesar's army in Gaul.

Iūnō, -ōnis, f., Juno, queen of the gods, as being the wife of Jupiter.

iūs, iūris, n., law, rules (132); court (45): *pl.*, rights, privileges, prerogatives. *Abl. as adv.*, iūre, rightfully, with good right. See also **vocō**.

iūvenis, -is, m., young man, youth, young fellow; *with adj. force*, youthful (25).

iuvō, 1, iūvī, iūtus, aid, help, assist, relieve, help out.

**K.**, abbreviation of **Kalendae**, -ārum, f., the Calends (*i.e.* the first day of a month).

**L.**, abbreviation of **Lūcius**, -cī, m.

**Labiēnus**, -ī, m., (Titus) Labienus, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.

**labor**, -ōris, m., hardship, difficulty, trial; strain, toil, labor, work, exertion, effort, fatigue (124).

**labōrō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, work, toil; be hard pressed (136).

**lacrima**, -ae, f., tear.

**lacus**, -ūs, m., lake.

**laetus**, -a, -um, joyful, glad, happy, rejoicing, delighted; with joy, with alacrity (96), in high spirits (50).

**Lāodicēa**, -ae, f., the name of a city of Asia Minor.

**largior**, 4, -ītus sum, give freely, sacrifice.

**Lārīsa**, -ae, f., the name of a town in Greece.

**latebrae**, -ārum, f., hiding place, sheltered spot (99); ambush (105). in latebrīs, in hiding (32).

**lateō**, 2, -uī, hide, skulk, be in hiding, lie in wait. in īnsidiīs latēre, lie in wait.

**latus**, -eris, n., flank (of army).

**lātūs**, -a, -um, see **ferō**.

**laudō**, 1, praise, commend.

**lectus**, -ī, m., bed, couch.

**lēgātūs**, -ī, m., captain, commander, lieutenant, officer, staff officer (44), subordinate officer (33); ambassador, messenger, envoy (42, 110, 130, 132, 133, 134, 135, 138); governor (23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 62, 75, 76).

**legiō**, -ōnis, f., regiment; legion (102 ff.). *Pl.*, troops.

**lēniter**, *adv.*, slowly, leisurely.

**Lexingtō**, -ōnis, m., Lexington, a town in Massachusetts.

**libenter**, *adv.*, readily, cheerfully, with pleasure, happily, gladly, with alacrity. **haud libenter**, with discontent; **nec libenter**, and unhappily.

**liberi**, -ōrum, m., children.

**Liberia**, -ae, f., the name of a country of Africa.

**liberō**, 1, free, relieve.

**libertās**, -ātis, f., liberty, freedom, emancipation.

**liburnica**, -ae, f., sloop, cutter, brigantine.

**licet**, 2, licuit or **licitum est**, *impersonal verb*, be permitted.

**lignātiō**, -ōnis, f., felling (of) timber.

**Līma**, -ae, f., the name of a town of South America.

**lingua**, -ae, f., tongue, language.

**littera**, -ae, *f.*, letter (of the alphabet).  
*Pl.*, letter, communication, message; document, paper (112); alphabet (113).

**litus**, -oris, *n.*, coast, shore.

**Livius**, -vī, *m.*, (Titus) Livy, a famous Roman historian.

**locuplēs**, -ētis, *adj.*, rich, wealthy, well-to-do.

**locus**, -ī, *m.* (*pl.* loca, -ōrum, *n.*), place, spot, point, region, locality, location, ground, position, post; part (110): station (in life) (79); position, light (118). *Pl.*, district, country (31, 33); location (65); quarters (91). omnibus locīs, everywhere. See also cēdō and nātūra.

**locūtus**, -a, -um, see loquor.

**Londīnum** (-nī, *n.*) Novum (-ī), New London, a town in Connecticut.

**longē**, *adv.*, far, (to) a considerable distance, to a great distance; with superl. or compar. of adj. or adv., (by) far, much.

**longinquus**, -a, -um, distant, remote, far away, at a distance. haud longinquus, at no great distance.

**longus**, -a, -um, long. haud longus, no great (distance); longum est, it is too long (127), 'twould be a long tale (87). See also īnsula and nāvis.

**loquor**, 3, locūtus sum, talk, speak, converse; state (126); with cum and abl., talk (to).

**Lovisiāna**, -ae, *f.*, Louisiana.

**Lūcānius**, -nī, *m.*, (Quintus) Lucanius, a soldier in Caesar's army in Gaul.

**lūdō**, 3, lūsī, lūsum est, play, sport.

**lūna**, -ae, *f.*, moon.

**Lūsitānia**, -ae, *f.*, the ancient name of Portugal.

**lūx**, lūcis, *f.*, light, the light of day, dawn, daybreak. **prīma lūx**, early dawn, dawn, daybreak.

**Lycāonia**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a district in Asia Minor.

**M.**, abbreviation of **Mārcus**, -ī, *m.*

**maestus**, -a, -um, sad, dejected, sorrowful, sorrowing; in dejection, in gloom, in (the garb of) mourning (42); disappointed (86).

**magicus**, -a, -um, magic, magical. See also ars.

**magis**, *adv.*, *compar.*, more (129); see also eō (*adv.*). *Superl.*, **maximē**, particularly, especially; exceedingly, in the highest degree: sometimes prefixed to give superlative force to an *adj.* or *adv.*

**magister**, -trī, *m.*, captain. **puerōrum** magister, tutor, school teacher.

**magnopere**, *adv.*, earnestly; unreasonably (103).

**magnus**, -a, -um, great, large, big, of large size, huge, immense, extensive: abundant (stores), dead (earnest), excessive (heat), good (courage), grave (peril), hearty, heartfelt (thanks), heavy, severe, serious (loss), heavy, severe, violent (earthquake, storm), heroic (spirit), high (column, hope), important (exploit), keen (anticipation), liberal (reward), loud (noise), long (distance), much (assistance), strong (force, guard, spirit, etc.), tremendous (curse), valuable (treasure), wide (river). haud magnus, no great; nōn magnus, of no great size. See also iter.

- Compar.*, **maior**, -or, -us, (all the) greater (84); a considerable (55), some considerable (120); elder, older. *As noun*, **maiōrēs**, -um, *m.*, fathers (13).
- Superl.*, **maximus**, -a, -um, extreme, utmost, supreme, exceedingly great, immense, mighty; much (104); general, wholesale, frightful (slighter).
- maior**, -or, -us, see **magnus**.
- male**, *adv.*, not fully (140). See also **dīcō**.
- mālō**, **mālle**, **māluī**, prefer, choose.
- malus**, -a, -um, wicked, evil, unprincipled, vile. *As noun*, **malum**, -i, *n.*, evil, misfortune, trouble, difficulty.
- māne**, in the morning, on the morrow, next morning; early in the morning (49).
- maneō**, 2, **mānsī**, **mānsum est**, remain, stay, tarry, live.
- manipulāris**, -is, -e, of the rank and file. *As noun*, **manipulāris**, -is, *m.*, soldier of the rank and file, private; *pl.*, men.
- Mānlius**, -lī, *m.*, (1) Marcus Manlius, a Roman who defended the Capitol against the Gauls; (2) Gaius Manlius, lieutenant to Catiline.
- manus**, -ūs, *f.*, hand; band, company, detachment, force.
- Mārcius**, -cī, *m.*, **Marcius** (*Rufus*), an officer in Curio's army.
- Mārcus**, -ī, *m.*, Marcus.
- mare**, -is, *n.*, sea, ocean; the high seas (92).
- Marta**, -ae, *f.*, Martha.
- Mārtius**, -a, -um, of March.
- māter**, -trīs, *f.*, mother.
- mātrimōnium**, -ī, *n.*, marriage. See also **dūcō**.
- mātrōna**, -ae, *f.*, lady.
- mātūrē**, *adv.*, early, soon; speedily (94).
- Maurī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Moors.
- maximē**, see **magis**.
- maximus**, -a, -um, see **magnus**.
- Mediterrāneus**, -a, -um, Mediterranean.
- medius**, -a, -um, middle (of), center of. See also **nox**.
- melior**, see **bonus**.
- memor**, -oris, *adj.*, with *gen.*, with a thought (of), thinking (of), remembering.
- memorābilis**, -is, -e, noteworthy, remarkable.
- memoria**, -ae, *f.*, memory, remembrance. See also **custōdīō** and **teneō**.
- mēnsis**, -is, *m.*, month.
- mentior**, 4, -ītus sum, make up (a) story, fabricate.
- meridiēs**, -ēī, *m.*, midday, noon (129); the south (40, 43, 77).
- metus**, -ūs, *m.*, fear (122); thought of danger (119).
- meus**, -a, -um, my; my own (138); on my part (140).
- Miantōnimō**, -ōnis, *m.*, the name of an Indian chief.
- miles**, -ītis, *m.*, soldier, common soldier, soldier in the ranks. *Pl.*, men, privates. See also **tribūnus**.
- mille**, *indeclinable adj.*; *pl.*, (*noun*) **mīlia**, -iūm, *n.*, thousand. **mīlle** passūs, mile; **mīlia passuum**, miles.
- minimē**, see **minus**.
- minimus**, see **parvus**.
- minor**, -or, -us, see **parvus**.
- minus**, *adv.*, *compar.*, less; not very (80). *Superl.*, **minimē**, not at all, by no means; no (87).

- mīrus, -a, -um**, wonderful, strange.  
**misceō**, 2, -uī, mistus or mixtus, mingle.
- miser**, -era, -erum, wretched, pitiful, unfortunate, luckless, poor; hard (42). *As noun*, poor fellow, poor woman, poor wretches, etc.
- mittō**, 3, mīsī, missus, send, dispatch; shoot, hurl, fire; throw away, discard, lose (129). *Partic. as noun*, missī, -ōrum, m., messengers, *lit.* those sent (109).
- modo**, *adv.*, just before, just now, lately; just, but just: only (20, 131). **modo . . . modo**, at one time . . . at another. See also *sī*.
- modus**, -ī, m., manner, fashion, way, means, chance. *eius modī*, of this sort; nūllō modō, not at all (83); quō modō, thus.
- molestē**, *adv.*, with irritation; see *ferō*.
- moneō**, 2, -uī, -itus, warn, advise, inform (49).
- mōns**, montis, m., mountain, eminence, height.
- mora**, -ae, f., delay, hesitation. *sine morā*, instantly (64).
- morbus**, -ī, m., disease, illness, sickness.
- moribundus**, -a, -um, dying, at the point of death.
- morior**, 3, mortuus sum, die. *Partic. (and adj.) mortuus*, -a, -um, having died, dead: *as noun*, mortuus, -ī, m., dead man; *pl.* the dead.
- moror**, 1, delay, tarry, linger, dally, lounge; hold back, remain, wait, stop; be detained (9, 10).
- mors**, mortis, f., death, dying, execution.
- mōs**, mōris, m., custom. *Pl.*, ways (28), character (72).
- moveō**, 2, mōvī, mōtus, move; break (camp).
- mox**, *adv.*, soon, shortly, quickly.
- Mūcius**, -cī, m., (Gaius) Mucius, a hero of ancient Rome.
- mulier**, -eris, f., woman.
- multitūdō**, -inis, f., throng, crowd, company, band, force, number, numbers; rain (of weapons).
- multō**, *adv.*, (by) much, (by) far.
- multum**, *adv.*, much, greatly. *Superl.*, plūrimum, very frequently (135).
- multus**, -a, -um, much. *Pl.*, many; many of, a large number of; in large numbers (28): *as masc. noun*, many, many persons, many people; *neut.*, many (things), many (stories), much (property). *Compar.*, plūs, plūris, *neut. (noun)*, more (88): *pl.*, plūrēs, -ēs, -a, more, several (131); *as noun*, more (122). *Superl.*, plūrimī, -ae, -a, very many, numerous, a large number of; in large (great) numbers, in strong force: a cloud (multitude, shower) of.
- mūniō**, 4, -īvī, -ītus, intrench, strengthen, fortify. *Partic. as adj.*, mūnitus, -a, -um, strong, (strongly) fortified.
- mūnitiō**, -ōnis, f., fortification, intrenchment. *Pl.*, fortifications; siege works (115, 123).
- mūrus**, -ī, m., wall, (stone) fence (55).
- mūtō**, 1, change. cōnsilium mūtare, change (one's) mind.
- nam**, *conj.*, for.
- nancīscor**, 3, nactus sum, find, discover; gain, secure; reach (83). *Perf. tense*, have (119).
- nārrō**, 1, relate, narrate, tell (of).
- nāscor**, 3, nātus sum, be born.

nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, tribe.

natō, *i.*, -āvī, -ātūm est, float.

nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature, natural inclination. *Abl. as adv.*, nātūrā, naturally (134). nātūra locī, natural situation (41).

nātus, -a, -um, see nāscor.

nauta, -ae, *m.*, sailor, deck hand.

*Pl.*, crew.

nāvigmū, -ī, *n.*, vessel.

nāvīgō, *i.*, -āvī, -ātūm est, sail, cruise, coast, ply; head, journey, travel (11); be on shipboard (91); go to sea (5), ship (2).

nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, vessel, boat. nāvis longa, warship, man-of-war. See also solvō.

-ne, sign of a question.

nē, *conj.*; (*purpose*) so as not to, not to, in order not to, so that . . . not, to the end that . . . not, lest; (*after verbs of fearing*) that, lest; (*after recūsāre*) that (132). nē quis, so that no one (54, 57); nē qua, so that no (102); nē quid, so that . . . not . . . anything (47); nē ullus, that no (84).

nē . . . quidem, not even; not . . . either (93).

nec, see neque.

necessārius, -a, -um, necessary, essential, needed, needful.

necō, *i.*, put to death, kill. fame necāre, starve to death.

necopināns, -antis, *adj.*, off (one's) guard.

negō, *i.*, -āvī, (-ātūs), declare that . . . not, say "no."

negōtiātor, -ōris, *m.*, trader.

negōtior, *i.*, trade, have (business) dealings; be a trader (134).

negōtiūm, -tī, *n.*, business, commission.

nēmō, defective noun, *m.*, no one, none, not a man. *Gen. and abl. supplied by nūllius and nūllō.*

neque, nec, *conj.*, and . . . not, nor; when followed by enim or (sometimes) by vērō, not. neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor; not . . . nor yet (126). See also alius, diū, fēlīciter, libenter, quisquam, sciō, tamen, ūllus, umquam, and volō.

Nervius, -vī, *m.*, a Nervian. *Pl.*, the Nervii (a people of northern Gaul).

nesciō, 4, -scīvī, not understand, not know, be ignorant of.

nihil, indeclinable noun, nothing. *Acc. as adv.*, not . . . at all (68).

Nīna, -ae, *f.*, the name of one of the ships of Columbus.

nisi, *conj.*, unless; *as adv.*, except, excepting.

nix, nivis, *f.*, snow.

nō, *i.*, -āvī, -ātūm est, swim, float.

noctū, *adv.*, at night, by night, in the night, during the night, under cover of night; one night (68).

nocturnus, -a, -um, during the night, night (*adj.*).

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, be unwilling, not be willing, not wish, not desire, not want; object, decline, refuse.

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name, title; honor (35).

nōn, *adv.*, not.

nōndum, *adv.*, not yet.

nōnnūlli, -ae, -a, a number of. As noun, some.

nōnus, -a, -um, ninth.

nōster, -tra, -trum, our. As noun, nostrī, -ōrum, *m.*, our men (soldiers, troops, forces, force).

nōtus, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, known.

Noveborācēnsis, -is, -e, of New York,  
New York (*adj.*).

novus, -a, -um, new, strange, odd, unexpected ; revolutionary, upstart (138); *as part of a town or country name*, New. (ali)quid novī (*as neut. noun*), anything new (*lit. of new*). *Superl.*, last, hindermost (127). See also agmen and rēs.

nox, noctis, f., night, darkness, night-fall. *Abl. as adv.*, nocte, under cover of the darkness (130). media nox, midnight; nocte intempestā, at dead of night.

nūdus, -a, -um, bare, naked, without clothing.

nūllus, -a, -um, no, not a; nūllō, (*as masc. noun*), supplying the lacking abl. of nēmō, no one, none (39, 58, 82). See also modus and pars.

numerus, -ī, m., number, numbers, company, contingent, class; amount (66). quōrum in numerō, among whom.

Numidae, -ārum, m., the Numidians; with *adj. force*, Numidian (117).

numquam, *adv.*, never. nōn numquam, sometimes (63).

nunc, *adv.*, now, to-day.

nūntiō, i, announce, report, send word; *with dat.*, inform.

nūntius, -ī, m., messenger, envoy, herald; news, information, message.

nūper, *adv.*, lately, just before.

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of. See also causa and rēs.

oblīvīscor, 3, oblītus sum, forget; *with gen.*, be forgetful (of).

obscūrus, -a, -um, dim; lowly (79).

obses, -idis, c., hostage.

obsideō, 2, -sēdī, -sessus, besiege, beset, blockade, hem in, surround; guard, watch.

obsidiō, -ōnis, f., siege.

obstinātus, -a, -um, determined, dogged.

obtineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentus, hold, have, enjoy (34). rēgnūm obtinērē, rule.

occāsiō, -ōnis, f., opportunity, chance.

occidēns, -entis, m., the west.

occidō, 3, -cidī, -cīsus, kill, slay, put to death, murder, slaughter, massacre; cut down, cut to pieces, cut off.

occupō, i, occupy, take possession of, capture, seize, seize (upon); fill (89). *Partic. as adj.*, occupātūs, -a, -um, guarded (133): busy, busied; interested (129).

occurrō, 3, -currī, -cursum est, with *dat.*, meet, head off.

octāvus, -a, -um, eighth.

octō, indeclinable *adj.*, eighth.

Octōber, -bris, -bre, of October.

oculus, -ī, m., eye.

officiūm, -ī, n., duty, task; respect (131).

ōlim, *adv.*, once upon a time, once, at one time, on one occasion, one day, one time.

omnīnō, *adv.*, altogether, entirely.

omnis, -is, -e, all, every; whole, the whole (of), all (of); any (113, 129).

*As noun, masc. pl.*, all, every one, everybody, they all; all (those) (118); *neut. pl.*, everything, all the (those) things, every expedient (120), all sorts of things (123). See also locus and sciō.

onerāria, -ae, f., transport, merchant vessel.

onustus, -a, -um, laden, loaded.

**opera**, -ae, *f.*, services; coöperation (135); attention (91, 108). See also **dō**.

**oppidāni**, -ōrum, *m.*, townspeople, townsmen, inhabitants of (the, one's) town.

**oppidum**, -ī, *n.*, town, city.

**opportūnus**, -a, -um, auspicious, favorable, opportune.

**opprimō**, 3, -pressī, -pressus, crush, overwhelm; catch (139).

**oppugnatiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, siege, attack, assault; (the) attacking (122).

**oppugnō**, 1, attack, assail, besiege, beset, invest; press the siege (140).

**optimus**, -a, -um, see **bonus**.

**opus**, -eris, *n.*, work, task; (earth) work. *Pl.*, fortifications, defenses, (siege) works. **opus est**, there is need (46).

**ōratiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, speech, argument, representations, remarks, words.

**orbis**, -is, *m.*, circle. See also **cōsistō**.

**ōrdō**, -inis, *m.*, (regular) order; rank, class; command, position (63). *Pl.*, ranks (107, 125); centurions (127).

**ōrō**, 1, beg.

**ostendō**, 3, **ostendī**, **ostentus**, display, disclose, show, point out, set forth; impart (the) information (133). **sē ostendere**, appear, show one's self.

**ōtiōsus**, -a, -um, at leisure, off duty; quiet (33).

**P.**, abbreviation of **Pūblius**, -li, *m.*

**pācō**, 1, reduce to order. *Partic. as adj.*, **pācātus**, -a, -um, subdued, submissive.

**Paelignus**, -ī, *m.*, see **Fabius**.

**paene**, *adv.*, almost.

**palam**, *adv.*, openly, in full view;

frankly, freely, boldly; with no show of secrecy (126).

**palūs**, -ūdis, *f.*, swamp, marsh, glade. **pandō**, 3, **pandī**, passus, spread.

*Partic. as adj.*, **passus**, -a, -um, full spread (sails), outstretched (hands).

**parcō**, 3, **pepercī**, *with dat.*, be merciful (to), have pity (on), have mercy (upon), spare.

**pāreō**, 2, -uī, obey, comply; *with dat.*, give heed (to), obey, respond (to); be in subjection (to) (140).

**pariō**, 3, **peperī**, partus, win, gain.

**parō**, 1, prepare, get ready, make preparations for (51); fit out, make ready, put in order; *with infin.*, prepare, make preparations, plan. *Partic. as adj.*, **parātus**, -a, -um, in readiness, ready.

**pars**, **partis**, *f.*, part, proportion, division, section, remnant; quarter, direction, side. *Pl.*, rôle (131). **ab eā parte**, in that quarter, on that side; **ex omnibus partibus**, on all sides; **in omnīs partēs**, in every direction; **in alterā parte . . . in alterā**, on the one hand . . . on the other; **in utramque partem**, pro and con (103); **nūllam in partem**, no (sign be made) one way or the other (119); **quāscumque in partēs**, whithersoever; **unā ex parte**, on one side.

**Parthī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Parthians.

**parvus**, -a, -um, small, little, scant; weak (force), low (hill). *Compar.*, **minor**, -or, -us, less, of no great size (85); lighter (shock); younger (68). *Superl.*, **minimus**, -a, -um, very small, (but) the slightest (91).

**passus**, -ūs, *m.*, pace. See **mille**.

**passus**, -a, -um, see **pandō** and **patiō**. **patefaciō**, 3, -fēcī, -factus, throw

- open; disclose, divulge. *Partic. as adj.*, patefactus, -a, -um, open (64).
- pater, -tris, *m.*, father.
- patior, 3, passus sum, allow, permit, suffer; endure, bear, suffer.
- patria, -ae, *f.*, fatherland, country; ancestral domain (75), rightful country (93).
- pauci, -ae, -a, few, a few (of), the few. *As masc. noun*, a few, a mere handful, (only) a few (45); *neut.*, a few (things, words, questions).
- paulatim, *adv.*, slowly, by slow degrees, gradually.
- paulō, *adv.*, a little, somewhat. paulō ante, a little before (earlier), shortly before, a little while before; a little while ago (69); paulō post, a little later, shortly afterward, a short time afterward.
- paulum, *adv.*, a little, a little way, a little (short) distance; a short time.
- pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace, state of peace.
- Pecsuot, -otis, *m.*, the name of an Indian killed by Miles Standish.
- pecunia, -ae, *f.*, money, funds; pay (94), bribe (94). See also solvō.
- pēdes, -itis, *m.*, foot soldier. *Pl.*, infantry, footmen, foot soldiers.
- pedetemptim, *adv.*, gradually, little by little, warily, slowly.
- peditatus, -ūs, *m.*, foot soldiery, infantry, foot, foot soldiers, footmen; force of infantry (138).
- Pennsylvēnia, -ae, *f.*, Pennsylvania.
- per, *prep. with acc.; (of space) through, across, over, along; around in (the grass), on (the sea); (of time) through, for; (agency) through (translated freely "from" or "by").* See also simulatiō and tenebrae.
- percutiō, 3, -cussī, -cussus, strike, strike down.
- perdūcō, 3, -dūxi, -ductus, conduct. *Pass.*, be protracted, last (129).
- peregrinus, -ī, *m.*, foreigner.
- pereō, -ire, -iī, perish, die, lose (one's) life, be killed, fall.
- perficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, complete, finish, carry to completion, carry out; do, perform; construct, build.
- perfidia, -ae, *f.*, treachery, treason.
- perfuga, -ae, *c.*, renegade, traitor; *with adj. force*, deserting (123).
- perfugiō, 3, -fūgī, desert, flee; *with ad and acc.*, take refuge (with) (111).
- periculōsus, -a, -um, perilous, beset with dangers.
- periculum, -ī, *n.*, danger, peril, risk; crisis (104), dangerous state (112).
- perlegō, 3, -lēgī, -lēctus, read through.
- permotus, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, startled, surprised, taken aback, confused; stirred (up), alarmed, shaken, worried, concerned; incensed (66), inspired (83), shamed (120).
- perpauci, -ae, -a, very few, a very few.
- perpetuus, -a, -um, everlasting, ever troublesome (139). *in perpetuum (as neut. noun)*, for all time (108).
- perrumpō, 3, -rūpī, -ruptus, break through, break down, destroy.
- persevērō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, persist, remain firm; *with infin.*, continue (to do a thing), persist (in doing a thing).
- persuādeō, 2, -suāsī, -suāsum est, *with dat.*, make it agreeable (to), persuade, induce.
- perterritus, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, terrified, thoroughly frightened, in great fear, panic-stricken, thrown

into a panic, in terror, scared out of (one's) wits; in their terror (129).

**pertinācia**, -ae, *f.*, obstinacy, persistēce.

**pertineō**, 2, -tinuī, *with ad and acc.*, be not far from (129); have a bearing upon, be of importance for (140).

**perturbō**, 1, throw into confusion, disconcert.

**perveniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est, arrive, come, venture, make (one's) way: *with ad and acc.*, reach, arrive (at); be reduced (to) (125): *with in and acc.*, reach; effect an entrance (into) (85). **pervenire** in **potestātem**, *with gen.*, surrender (to).

**pēs**, *pedis*, *m.*, foot. See also **captus** (under **capiō**).

**pessimus**, -a, -um, see **malus**.

**petō**, 3, -ivī, -itūs, look for, seek; ask, ask for, beg, sue for (peace); desire, try to get; get, find, secure: head for, make for (128, 139); hunt down (133); attack (131): *with ab and abl.*, request (132).

**Petrēius**, -ēī, *m.*, (Marcus) Petreius, commanding officer of the army that defeated Catiline.

**Petrosidius**, -dī, *m.*, (Lucius) Petrosidius, a standard bearer in Caesar's army in Gaul.

**Philadelphia**, -ae, *f.*, Philadelphia.

**Philippus**, -ī, *m.*, (King) Philip, an Indian chief.

**Philomēlium**, -lī, *n.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.

**pīlum**, -ī, *n.*, javelin.

**Pindenissus** (or -um), -ī, *m.* or *n.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.

**Pinta**, -ae, *f.*, the name of one of the ships of Columbus.

**pīrāta**, -ae, *m.*, pirate, robber.

**piscis**, -is, *m.*, fish.

**plānē**, *adv.*, clearly, full well; fully, utterly.

**plānitiēs**, -ēī, *f.*, plain, level ground.

**plēriquo**, **plēraequē**, **plēraque**, most of, the majority of. *As masc. noun*, the majority, the most part, nearly all.

**plūrimī**, -ae, -a, see **multus**.

**plūrimū**, see **multum**.

**plūs**, **plūris**, *n.*, see **multus**.

**Pōcahonta**, -ae, *f.*, the name of an Indian princess.

**pōculum**, -ī, *n.*, cup.

**poena**, -ae, *f.*, penalty. See also **dō** and **repetō**.

**Poenī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Carthaginians.

**pollicor**, 2, **pollicitus sum**, promise, agree, declare (89); offer, make offer of. **bene pollicērī**, make fair promises (135).

**Pollūx**, -ūcis, *m.*, the name of a god worshiped by the Romans.

**Pompēiānī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Pompeians (*i.e.* adherents of Pompey).

**Pompēius**, -ēī, *m.*; (1) Gnaeus Pompey, the opponent of Caesar in the civil war; (2) Gnaeus Pompey, an interpreter attached to Caesar's army in Gaul; (3) Pompey, a slave name (99).

**Pomptīnus**, -ī, *m.*, (Gaius) Pomptinus, lieutenant to Marcus Cicero.

**pōnō**, 3, **posuī**, **positus**, place, put, station, fix; establish, build: *with in and abl.*, stake (upon) (112).

*Partic.* as *adj.*, **positus**, -a, -um, located, situated. **castra pōnere**, encamp, pitch camp.

**Pontiac**, -acis, *m.*, the name of an Indian chief.

**populus**, -ī, *m.*, people (*i.e.* nation).  
**porrigō**, 3, -rēxī, -rēctus, hold out,  
 stretch out; display.

**Porsinna**, -ae, *m.*, the name of a king  
 of Etruria.

**porta**, -ae, *f.*, gate, door.

**portō**, 1, carry, bring; accommodate  
 (91).

**portus**, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, bay, port.

**possum**, posse, potuī, be able (can,  
 etc.).

**post**, *adv.*, after, afterward, later. See  
 also **paulō** and **postquam**.

**post**, *prep. with acc.*, after, later than;  
 behind. See also **tergum**.

**posteā**, *adv.*, afterward, later, there-  
 after.

(**posterus**), -a, -um, next, following.  
*As noun*, **posteri**, -ōrum, *m.*, de-  
 scendants, posterity.

**postquam** or **post . . . quam**, *conj.*,  
 after, when; when at length (64),  
 as soon as (82).

**postrēmō**, *adv.*, finally, at last, at  
 length, in the end.

**postridiē**, *adv.*, the next day, on the  
 following day. **postridiē eius diēi**,  
 on the following day (123).

**postulō**, 1, demand, require, ask.

**potestās**, -ātis, *f.*, power, control, pos-  
 session; opportunity (109, 121).  
 See also **perveniō**.

**potior**, 4, -ītus sum, *with abl.*, gain,  
 get, secure; capture, gather in  
 (117), get (take) possession of; oc-  
 cupy (129).

**praeda**, -ae, *f.*, plunder, booty, prize.

**praedium**, -ī, *n.*, estate, plantation,  
 ranch, farm.

**praefectus**, -ī, *m.*, commander; cap-  
 tain (70, 74, 81), general (123),  
 officer (70, 125), governor (4).

**praemittō**, 3, -mīsī, -missus, send  
 ahead, send forward.

**praemium**, -ī, *n.*, reward, present,  
 bonus, largess; bribe (71).

**praeoccupō**, 1, forestall, anticipate;  
 reach first (125).

**praepōnō**, 3, -posū, -positus, *with  
 dat.*, put in charge (of).

**praesēns**, -entis, see **praesum**.

**praesertim**, *adv.*, especially.

**praesidium**, -ī, *n.*, garrison, guard,  
 escort; guard(ing) (138).

**praestō**, 1, -stītī, -stitus, show, ex-  
 hibit, manifest, display; perform  
 (105); guarantee (107).

**praesum**, -esse, -fūi, be in charge, be  
 in command; *with dat.*, be in charge  
 (of), be in command (of). *Partic.*

**praesēns**, -entis, present (135); *as  
 adj.*, instant (death).

**praeter**, *prep. with acc.*, by, past, be-  
 yond.

**praetereā**, *adv.*, besides, furthermore,  
 in addition.

**praeterēō**, -īre, -īi, -itus, pass by;  
*perf. tense*, be past, be gone (131).

**praetervehor**, 3, -vectus sum, sail  
 past.

**praetōrius**, -a, -um, of the com-  
 mander; see **cohors**.

**premō**, 3, **pressī**, pressus, press hard,  
 harass, beset.

**pridēm**, see **iam**.

**pridē**, *adv.* (*sometimes as prep. with  
 an acc.*), (on) the day before.

**primō**, *adv.*, at first, at the outset, in  
 the beginning.

**prīnum**, *adv.*, first. See also **cum  
 (conj.)** and **ubi (conj.)**.

**prīmus**, -a, -um, first, chief, foremost,  
 leading; the beginning of, the first  
 part of; early, earliest; the very

(88). **in p̄im̄is** (*as masc. noun*), in the front rank (136). See also **aciēs**, **agmen**, and **lūx**.

**pr̄inceps**, -*ipis*, *m.*, chief citizen.

*Pl.*, chief men, leading men.

**Pr̄issilla**, -*ae*, *f.*, Priscilla.

**pr̄istinus**, -*a*, -*um*, former, old-time ; past (133).

**prius**, *adv.*, first, previously.

**priusquam**, *conj.*, before ; *after a negative*, until (88, 109).

**prō**, *prep. with abl.*, in return for, instead of ; as, for (10, 16, 83) ; for, in behalf of, in defense of (14, 35, 61, 63) ; before, in front of (107).

**probō**, *i.*, approve.

**procul**, *adv.*, far, far away, remote, at a distance ; in the distance (94, 113) ; from a distance (87, 125). **haud procul**, at no great distance, near at hand, near by.

**prōcurrō**, *3*, -*cucurrī* or -*currī*, -*cursum est*, run forward, charge.

**prōdō**, *3*, -*didi*, -*ditus*, betray ; disclose (52).

**prōdūcō**, *3*, -*dūxi*, -*ductus*, bring out, lead out, (cause to) march out.

**proelium**, -*i*, *n.*, battle, fight, fighting, (scene of) battle ; battle (in the open) (122). See also **committō** and **dēsistō**.

**profectiō**, -*ōnis*, *f.*, departure.

**proficiscor**, *3*, **profectus sum**, set out, set forth, start, start off, start out, proceed ; depart (27), slip away (62).

**prōgredior**, *3*, -*gressus sum*, advance, progress, proceed, move forward, move on, take up (the) march, go forward, go ahead ; go forth (75) ; march, travel ; sail, coast ; push out (2), venture (3, 6).

**prōiciō**, *3*, -*iēci*, -*iectus*, throw (out), hurl ; throw over (98) ; lay down (arms). *Pass.*, fall forward (130).

**prōlābor**, *3*, -*lapsus sum*, fall forward, slip down (57).

**prōmunturium**, -*i*, *n.*, promontory, cape.

**prōnūntiō**, *i*, announce, make announcement.

**prope**, *adv.*, near, near by. *Compar.*, rather near, quite near, very near, too near ; *as prep. with acc.*, quite near to (107).

**prope**, *prep. with acc.*, near, close to, by, in the neighborhood of.

**properō**, *i*, -*āvī*, -*ātum est*, hasten, hurry, scurry ; *with infin.*, make haste (78).

**propinquus**, -*a*, -*um*, near-by, near. *As noun*, **propinquī**, -*ōrum*, *m.*, relatives.

**prōpōnō**, *3*, -*posuī*, -*positus*, set forth, explain.

**propter**, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, because of ; through (fear).

**prōsper** (or -*erūs*), -*era*, -*erūm*, good (fortune, luck).

**prōspiciō**, *3*, -*spēxi*, (-*spectus*), look forth, look out.

**prōtinus**, *adv.*, straight on ; forth-with (129).

**prōvideō**, *2*, -*vīdī*, -*vīsus*, foresee, determine ; look after, look out for (136).

**prōvincia**, -*ae*, *f.*, province, colony, territory, district.

**proximus**, -*a*, -*um*, next, nearest, adjoining, neighboring, near-by ; next, following, next succeeding ; that (night) (119).

**Prūsia** (or -*ās*), -*ae*, *m.*, the name of a king of Bithynia.

**pūblicus**, -a, -um, public, official (112). See also *rēs*.

**puella**, -ae, f., girl, maiden, maid.  
**puer**, -erī, m., boy, lad; slave (133).

See also *magister*.

**pueritia**, -ae, f., boyhood, childhood.  
**pugna**, -ae, f., battle.

**pugnō**, i, -āvī, -ātum est, fight, war;  
keep up (the) fight (106).

**pulcher**, -chra, -chrūm, beautiful, fair,  
pretty, charming; splendid, fine, (2, 98).

**pulvis**, -eris, m., dust (90, 118);  
powder.

**putō**, i, think, believe.

**Q.**, abbreviation of *Quīntus*, -ī, m.

**quadrīdūm**, -ī, n., four days, a period  
(space) of four days.

**quaerō**, 3, *quaesīvī*, *quaesītus*, seek,  
search, look for, hunt for; secure,  
get, find, recover; ask, inquire (122).

**quaestus**, -ūs, m., profit, gain.

**quam**, conj. and adv., than, rather  
than; with the superl. of adjs. and  
advs., as . . . as possible.

**quamquam**, conj., although.

**quandō**, adv., see *sī*.

**quantus**, -a, -um, how great; what,  
what a. As noun, *quantum*, -ī, n.,  
how much? See also *tantus*.

**quārē**, conj., therefore, wherefore,  
(and) accordingly, (and) so, (and)  
consequently; because of which,  
on which account, (and) on this  
account, as a consequence of which;  
whereat, whereupon.

**quārtus**, -a, -um, fourth.

**quasi**, conj., with partic., as if, pre-  
tending (to).

**quattuor**, indeclinable adj., four.

**-que**, conj., and; and (so) (139).

**queror**, 3, *questus sum*, complain.  
**qui**, *quae*, *quod*, rel. pron., who, which  
(gen., whose). With antecedent  
implied: *masc. pl.*, (some) who,  
(people) who, (those) who (90, 93,  
120, 129, 140); *neut. sing.*, (a thing)  
which (37), (one) which (131);  
*neut. pl.*, (the things) which (110).

At the beginning of a sentence: as  
noun, who, which, he, she, it, this,  
they, these; neut., this thing, these  
things, this: as adj., which, what,  
this. (When a personal or demon-  
strative pronoun is used to render a  
relative, it is often desirable to sup-  
ply a conjunction, such as "and,"  
"but," etc.) See also *modus*. For  
the corresponding interrog. and  
indef. pron., see *quis*.

**quīdam**, *quaedam*, *quoddam* (quid-  
dam), a certain; a (3); a sort of  
(137). Pl., some, certain, certain  
of. As *masc. noun*, a certain one;  
pl., certain, some (people).

**quidem**, adv., indeed; at any rate (93).  
See also *nē* . . . *quidem*.

**quiēscō**, 3, *quiēvī*, (*quiētus*), rest, re-  
pose; take (one's) nap (71).

**somnō** *quiēscere*, be sunk in sleep.

**quīn etiam**, indeed, in fact, as a mat-  
ter of fact, nay more, even; why  
(not interrog.).

**Quīntius**, -ī, m., see *Flāminīnus*.

**quīndecim**, indeclinable adj., fifteen.

**quīnquāgēsimus**, -a, -um, fiftieth.

**quīnquāgintā**, indeclinable adj., fifty.

**quīnque**, indeclinable adj., five.

**Quīntus**, -ī, m., Quintus.

(*quis*) *qui*, *quae*, (*quid*) *quod*, indef.  
pron., any one, any, etc. (see *nē* and  
*sī*).

(*quis*) *qui*, *quae*, (*quid*) *quod*, in-

*terrog.* pron., who? what? (*the latter, both noun and adj.*).

**quisquam**, —, **quicquam**, *in negative clauses*, any one, anything. **nec quisquam**, and no one; **nec quicquam**, and . . . nothing.

**quisque**, **quaque**, **quodque** (*quidque*): *adj.*, each, every; *noun*, each (man) (120).

**quivis**, **quaevīs**, **quodvīs** (*quidvīs*): *adj.*, any whatsoever; *noun*, any one whatsoever, anything whatsoever (77).

**quō**, *adv.*, whither, to which place; to which, into which: to the place to which (118); thither, there.

**quō**, *conj.*, in order that, so that.

**quod**, *conj.*, because, since, as, because of the fact that; on the ground that; that (60, 100); as for the fact that (45).

**quondam**, *adv.*, once, in days gone by, at one time, on one occasion, one time; previously (33).

**quoniam**, *conj.*, since, inasmuch as.

**quoque**, *adv.* and *conj.*, also, too, as well; even.

**quotiēns**, *conj.*, as often as.

**rāmus**, -ī, *m.*, branch.

**rapiō**, 3, **rapui**, **raptus**, seize, catch, catch up, snatch away; carry away, steal, plunder (38).

**rārus**, -a, -um, (*in pl.*), scattered, far apart, few.

**ratio**, -ōnis, *f.*, manner, way.

**ratus**, -a, -um, see *reor*.

**Rebilus**, -ī, *m.*, see *Caninius*.

**recipiō**, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, receive, admit, harbor (140); regain, recover, retake. *in nāvigium recipere*, get (take) on board: **sē recipere**, with-

draw, retreat, retire, return, go back, march back, fall back; march, proceed (117); *with in and acc.*, take refuge (in) (115).

**recūsō**, 1, object to, reject; shun, shrink from (15).

**redeō**, -īre, -ī, -itum est, return, come back, get back, make (one's) way back, go back; come again (125); *with ad and acc.*, be reduced (to) (112). **domum redīre**, arrive home (5).

**redintegrō**, 1, renew.

**redūcō**, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, lead back, conduct back, withdraw, remove (122), bring back, carry back, take back, pull back; bring (123); *with ad and acc.*, restore (to) (93).

**referō**, -ferre, **rettulī**, -lātus, carry (back); repay (favor).

**refugiō**, 3, -fūgī, flee for protection; retire in haste (129).

**rēgina**, -ae, *f.*, queen.

**regiō**, -ōnis, *f.*; *sing. and pl.*, region, territory, district, locality, country, neighborhood.

**rēgnūm**, -ī, *n.*, sway, control; kingdom, realm. See also *obtineō*.

**regredior**, 3, -gressus sum, return, withdraw.

**religiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, religion, (religious) belief, religious system; religious considerations (131).

**religō**, 1, fasten, bind.

**relinquō**, 3, -līquī, -lictus, leave, leave behind, abandon; leave, set sail from; raise (siege): leave, allow (116). *Partic. as adj.*, **relictus**, -a, -um, remaining (88).

**reliquiae**, -ārum, *f.*, remnants.

**reliquus**, -a, -um, the rest of, the remaining. *Pl.*, the other, other, the

remaining, the rest of; the following (109); *as noun*, the others, those remaining, the remnant, the remainder, the rest. *reliquus esse*, be left, remain (115, 125).  
**remittō**, 3, -misi, -missus, send back; subtract (114).

**reor**, 2, ratus sum, expect (136).

*Partic.*, ratus, -a, -um, thinking, believing.

**repente**, *adv.*, suddenly, (all) of a sudden.

**repentinus**, -a, -um, sudden, unexpected.

**reperiō**, 4, repperi, repertus, find, discover.

**repetō**, 3, -petivī, -petitus, exact (*lit.* demand back). *poenās repetere*, with ab and abl., discipline, punish.

**reportō**, 1, carry back, bring back.

**repperi**, see *reperiō*.

**reprimō**, 3, -pressi, -pressus, stop, suppress, check.

**rēs**, rei, f., thing, things, action; affair, business, circumstance, fact, happening, matter, matters; act (121), casualty (106), concession (50), development (103); engagement, the fighting (129, 136); errand (14), event (42), incident (88), issue (72), observation (48), occurrence (71), performance (58), plan (94), point (129), proceeding (69), result (99), situation (108, 114), transaction (118), turn (of events) (92, 125), undertaking (40), venture (100). *Pl.*, business (139), cause (126), demonstration (121), means (127), things, appliances (122). *haec rēs or quae rēs* (*all cases, sing. and pl.*), this; *quam ob rem*, wherefore, and so, accord-

ingly; *rēs gestae*, exploits; *rē vērā*, in very truth; *rēs novae*, insurrection, revolution (25); *rēs pūblica*, commonwealth, state, (one's) country (60). See also *committō* and *gerō*.

**resistō**, 3, -stiti, -stitum est, with dat. case, if any, resist, offer resistance, oppose, make opposition; hold (one's) own, stand (one's) ground, make a stand (136); go (against), hold out (against), hold (one's) ground (against).

**respondēō**, 2, -spondi, -spōnsum est, answer, reply; make answer, send answer; declare.

**respōnsum**, -i, n., answer, reply.  
**retineō**, 2, -tinui, -tentus, hold back; hold down (91); keep (101); maintain, hold fast to (113); save (133).

**rettulī**, see *referō*.

**revocō**, 1, recall, call back.

**rēx**, rēgis, m., king, chief, ruler.

**Rhēnus**, -i, m., the ancient name of the Rhine.

**rīdeō**, 2, rīsi, (rīsus), laugh, smile.

**rīpa**, -ae, f., (river) bank, bank (of river).

**rīvus**, -i, m., stream; brook (82).

**rogō**, 1, ask, beg, request.

**Rōma**, -ae, f., Rome.

**Rōmānus**, -a, -um, Roman. *As noun*, Rōmāni, -ōrum, m., the Romans. See also *vir*.

**Rūfus**, -i, m., see *Mārcius*.

**rursus**, *adv.*, again, in turn, once more.

**Sabīnus**, -i, m., (Quintus) Sabinus, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.

**Saburra**, -ae, m., the name of a gen-

- eral in the army of the African king Juba.
- sacerdōs**, -ōtis, *c.*, priest, priestess; medicine man; minister (97).
- saepe**, *adv.*, often, oftentimes, on many occasions, many times, frequently, repeatedly. *Compar.*, over and over again (87), repeatedly (122).
- saevitia**, -ae, *f.*, brutality, roughness, savagery, barbarity, bloodthirstiness.
- sagitta**, -ae, *f.*, arrow.
- sagum**, -ī, *n.*, cloak.
- saltem**, *adv.*, at least, at any rate.
- saltō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, dance.
- salūs**, -ūtis, *f.*, safety, well-being (91); salvation, escape, saving the day (125); life, lives (50, 72, 130). **salūti esse**, with a second dat., save, prove the salvation (of), save the day (for) (63).
- Samarobrīva**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a city of northern Gaul.
- Sanga**, -ae, *m.*, see *Fabius*.
- Santa** (-ae) **Mariā**, -ae, *f.*, the name of one of the ships of Columbus.
- Saratōga**, -ae, *f.*, Saratoga.
- satis**, *adv.*, sufficiently, enough; quite, rather (58), very (56). See also **sciō**.
- Savanna**, -ae, *f.*, Savannah.
- saxum**, -ī, *n.*, rock, cliff.
- scapha**, -ae, *f.*, skiff, open boat, row-boat.
- scelerātus**, -a, -um, rascally, wicked, villainous.
- scilicet**, *adv.*, of course, to be sure, naturally; evidently (133).
- sciō**, 4, **scīvī**, scītus, know, understand. **nec satis scīre**, and be somewhat undecided (104); **omnia scīre**, know all (about the subject) (31).
- scribō**, 3, **scripsī**, **scriptus**, write; state (114).
- sē**, **sēsē**, see *suī*.
- secundum**, *prep. with acc.*, along.
- secundus**, -a, -um, following; favorable (131). See also *flūmen*.
- secūris**, -is, *f.*, battle-ax, ax, tomahawk.
- secūtus**, -a, -um, see *sequor*.
- sed**, *conj.*, but; *resuming*, now (136).
- sēdecim**, *indeclinable adj.*, sixteen.
- sedeō**, 2, **sēdī**, **sessum est**, take a seat, sit.
- sēdēs**, -is, *f.*, seat (of war) (82). *Pl.*, location, abode (65); district, habitat (66).
- semel**, *adv.*, once. **semel atque iterum** or **semel iterumque**, time and again, several times.
- semper**, *adv.*, always, ever, at all times.
- Semprōnia**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a woman implicated in the conspiracy of Catiline.
- senātus**, -ūs, *m.*, Parliament (34, 35); Congress (39, 43, 44); session of Congress (44); (the Roman) senate (42, 132, 134, 137).
- senex**, **senis**, *m.*, old man; *with adj. force*, aged.
- sententia**, -ae, *f.*, view, sentiment, opinion, suggestion.
- sentiō**, 4, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus**, realize, know, feel; see, perceive, notice; find (96).
- septem**, *indeclinable adj.*, seven.
- September**, -bris, -bre, of September.
- septimus**, -a, -um, seventh. **septimus quīnquāgēsimus**, fifty-seventh.
- septuāgēsimus**, -a, -um, seventieth.
- septuāgintā**, *indeclinable adj.*, seventy.
- Sepyra**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a small town of Asia Minor.

- sequor**, 3, **secūtus sum**, follow. **ve-**  
**stigiis sequī**, follow the trail (61).
- servō**, 1, save, rescue, preserve, keep.
- servus**, -ī, *m.*, slave; helper (74).
- sex**, *indeclinable adj.*, six.
- sexāgintā**, *indeclinable adj.*, sixty.
- Sextilis**, -is, -e, of August.
- sī**, *conj.*, if, in case; if perchance,  
 on the chance that, in the hope that;  
 (to see) if (121). **sī modo**, if only,  
 provided (that); **sī quandō**, if at any  
 time, whenever; **sī qui** (*noun*), if  
 any; **sī quid novī**, if anything new.
- sic**, *adv.*, thus, so, in this manner, in  
 this way, through (by) this means;  
 in such a way (54, 133).
- sīca**, -ae, *f.*, dagger.
- Sicilia**, -ae, *f.*, Sicily.
- Siculus**, -ī, *m.*, (a) Sicilian.
- sicut**, *conj.*, just as; thus, for example.
- signum**, -ī, *n.*, sign, signal; watch-  
 word, countersign (99). *Pl.*, stand-  
 ards.
- silentium**, -ī, *n.*, silence, quietness  
 (86). *Abl. as adv.*, **silentiō**, silently,  
 in silence.
- silva**, -ae, *f.*, forest, woods, wood,  
 grove.
- similis**, -is, -e, similar; *with dat.*,  
 similar (to), resembling, like.
- simul**, *adv.*, at the same time, simul-  
 taneously; at one and the same  
 time (105, 136). **simul atque**, as  
 soon as (124); **simul cum**, together  
 with (139).
- simulātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, pretense, show.  
**per simulātiōnem**, under pretense  
 (122).
- simulō**, 1, pretend, make believe, make  
 it appear (49); affect, pretend (135).
- sine**, *prep. with abl.*, without. See  
 also **mora** and **timor**.
- singulī**, -ae, -a, one at a time, one by  
 one, isolated (66).
- socius**, -a, -um, allied (137). *As noun*,  
**socius**, -ī, *m.*, ally, assistant, partner  
 (98). *Pl.*, allies, friends; partici-  
 pants (135); friendly natives (140).
- soleō**, 2, **solitus sum**, be accustomed,  
 be wont, be apt, be in the habit (of  
 doing a thing); *imperf. and perf.*  
*tenses*, used. *Translated imper-  
 sonally*, be (one's) wont, be (one's)  
 custom.
- sōlum**, *adv.*, only. **nōn sōlum . . .**  
**sed etiam**, not only . . . but also.
- sōlus**, -a, -um, alone, in solitude; un-  
 aided, single-handed; in single  
 combat (72).
- solvō**, 3, **solvī**, **solūtus**, unfetter (91);  
 pay (debt). **nāvem (-ēs) solvere**,  
 cast off, set sail; **pecūniām solvere**,  
 defray expense (89).
- somnus**, -ī, *m.*, sleep, slumber, nap.  
 See also **dō**.
- sonus**, -ī, *m.*, sound, noise.
- sōpitūs**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, asleep.
- spatiūm**, -ī, *n.*, space, room; period  
 (120), respite (129).
- speciēs**, -ēi, *f.*, show, display, parade,  
 pretense, guise. *ad speciem*, as a  
 blind (122).
- spectō**, 1, -āvī, (-ātus), look, verge, lie.
- speculator**, 1, spy, view.
- spernō**, 3, **sprēvī**, **sprētus**, scorn, dis-  
 regard.
- spērō**, 1, hope, hope for.
- spēs**, -ei, *f.*, hope, reliance (125); ex-  
 pectation (128), anticipation (135);  
 chance (125), prospect (126), prom-  
 ise (111).
- spoliō**, 1, spoil, plunder, despoil, pil-  
 lage; prey upon (81, 92, 98).
- sprētus**, -a, -um, see **spernō**.

**Spurinna, -ae, m.**, the name of a priest who predicted the death of Julius Caesar.

**Standisius, -sī, m.**, (Miles) Standish.  
**statim, adv.**, at once, immediately, instantly, promptly, without delay, without parley (71); at the very outset (120).

**statuō, 3, statuī, statūtus**, set up (35); decide, determine, make up (one's) mind.

**stipendium, -ī, n.**, pay. *Pl.*, military service; see *faciō*.

**stō, 1, stetī**, stand, be stationed; ride (at anchor); stand, stop, halt (85).

**strēnuus, -a, -um**, active, energetic, sturdy.

**strepitus, -ūs, m.**, bustle, noise, confusion.

**sub, prep. with abl.**, under, beneath; with acc., toward.

**subitō, adv.**, suddenly, unexpectedly, without warning.

**sublātus, -a, -um**, see *tollō*.

**subsequor, 3, -secūtus sum**, follow rapidly; follow (124).

**subsidiūm, -ī, n.**, support, reënforcement, relief, help. See also *veniō*.

**sui, sibi**, himself, him; herself, her; itself, it; themselves, them. See also: *sē* with *cōferō*, *coniungō*, *dēdō*, *dēmittō*, *dō*, *gerō*, *habeō*, *ostendō*, *recipiō*, *tegō*, and *teneō*: inter *sē* with *agō*, *cohortor*, and *concurrō*: *sēcum* with *habeō*.

**sum, esse, fuī**, be, become (111), prove to be; remain, stop (137); stand, be located; happen (127). See also *auxilium*, *salūs*, and *ūsus*.

**sūmmus, -a, -um**, see *superior*.  
**sūmō, 3, sūmpsī, sūmptus**, take, pro-

cure, get; swallow (133); put on (100).

**super, prep. with acc.**, above, over (72); upon, on top of (56).

**superbia, -ae, f.**, haughtiness, arrogance.

**superior, -iōr, -iūs**, superior, stronger; higher (130); past, former, earlier, previous. *Superl.*, *suprēmus, -a, -um*, supreme, and *summus, -a, -um*, greatest, very great, great; the top of (86): acute (crisis); full (speed), all (speed), the top of (one's speed); grave (peril), hardest, heaviest (work), hearty (approval), (commander) in chief, most distressing (scarcity), most splendid (valor), pressing (need), severest (hardship), utmost (daring), utter (despair, lawlessness).

**superō, 1, surpass, excel, prevail** (104); defeat, overcome, outdo, worst, beat.

**supīnus, -a, -um**, on (one's) back, upon (one's) back, face upward; placed flat on (one's) back (94).

**suprā, adv.**, above.

**suprēmus, -a, -um**, see *superior*.

**surgō, 3, surrēxī, surrectum est**, rise up, arise, rise.

**suscipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus**, undertake.

**suspēnsus, -a, -um**, *partic. as adj.*, anxious.

**suspiciō, -ōnis, f.**, suspicion; impression (127).

**suspīcor, 1, suspect, think.**

**sustineō, 2, -tinū, -tentus**, withstand, sustain, break the force of (118); stay (hunger).

**sustulī**, see *tollō*.

**suus, -a, -um**, his, of his, her, their, of theirs; his own, her own, etc. *As noun*, *sui, -ōrum, m.*, his men

(followers, following, forces, force); their men (followers): his own people (16); their own lines (121).

**Synnada**, -ōrum, *n.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.

**Syria**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a country of Asia.

**T.**, abbreviation of **Titus**, -ī, *m.*

**tabernāculum**, -ī, *n.*, tent, wigwam.

**tacitus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, silent, motionless; quiet, in silence.

**Taeconderōga**, -ae, *f.*, Ticonderoga.

**Tallapūsa**, -ae, *m.*, Tallapoosa, a river of Alabama.

**tam**, *adv.*, so.

**tamen**, *adv. and conj.*, however, but, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still. *nec tamen*, and yet . . . not.

**tantopere**, *adv.*, so greatly.

**tantum**, *adv.*, merely, only, but.

**tantus**, -a, -um, so great, so large, such, such great, such large; so base, such base (41), so grievous (34), so remarkable (110), so severe (33), such (absolute) (86), such serious (134); overwhelming (134). **quantō . . . tantō**, (*with two comparatives*) the . . . the; **tantus . . . quantus**, such . . . as.

**tardē**, *adv.*, slowly, with little speed.

**Taurus**, -ī, *m.*, the name of a mountain range of Asia Minor.

**Tebarānī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the name of a people of Asia Minor.

**tēctum**, -ī, *n.*, roof; structure, building.

**Tecumsa**, -ae, *m.*, Tecumseh, an Indian chief.

**tegō**, 3, **tēxi**, **tēctus**, cover, conceal; bury (64). *sē tegere*, get under cover.

**tēlum**, -ī, *n.*, missile, weapon; shaft shot, bullet. *Pl.*, ammunition (59, 83, 92). See also *inmittō* and *interficiō*.

**temerē**, *adv.*, rashly, hastily, incalculately, lightly (82).

**temeritās**, -ātis, *f.*, rashness, rash action, hasty act, incalculousness, folly.

**tempestās**, -ātis, *f.*, storm.

**templum**, -ī, *n.*, temple (71); church.

**tempus**, -oris, *n.*, time, period, season, occasion, hour (100); circumstances (139). *Pl.*, days, times; ages (45).

**tenebrae**, -ārum, *f.*, darkness. *per tenebrās*, in the darkness (gloom).

**teneō**, 2, -uī, hold, occupy, garrison; have (128); keep to (139). **memoriā tenēre**, remember (34); *sē tenēre*, remain constantly (133).

**tergum**, -ī, *n.*, back. *ā tergō* and *post tergum*, in the rear. See also *vertō*.

**terra**, -ae, *f.*, the earth, land; country, land, district; the ground; dirt, earth (110).

**terreō**, 2, -uī, -itus, frighten, intimidate, overawe, scare. *Partic. as adj.*,

**territus**, -a, -um, frightened, terror-stricken, alarmed, abashed.

**tertius**, -a, -um, third.

**Thrācēs**, -um, *m.*, the Thracians, a nation dwelling to the north of ancient Greece.

**Tiberis**, -is, *m.* (*acc. sing.*, -im), the Tiber.

**Tillius**, -ī, *m.*, (Lucius) Tillius (Cimber), one of the murderers of Julius Caesar.

**timeō**, 2, -uī, be afraid, fear, be apprehensive; fear, be afraid of, be in fear of.

timor, -ōris, <i>m.</i> , fear, apprehension, alarm, panic (117), demoralization (122). <i>sine timōre</i> , with no thought of danger, unconcerned.	trīdūum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , three days.
tolerō, <i>i.</i> , keep at bay; tide over (112).	trīgintā, <i>indeclinable adj.</i> , thirty.
tollō, <i>3.</i> , sustulī, sublātus, raise, put up, lift; set up (shout, cry); weigh (anchor): dislodge, drive away (139). <i>Pass.</i> , (hope) be dispelled (given up, gone). <i>Partic. as adj.</i> , sublātus, -a, -um, puffed up (108).	tūlī, tuī, you; <i>reflexive</i> , yourself (14).
tot, <i>indeclinable adj.</i> , so many.	tūlī, see ferō.
tōtūs, -a, -um, whole, the whole of, total, all, entire.	Tullius, -lī, <i>m.</i> , (Lucius) Tullius, lieutenant to Marcus Cicero.
tractō, <i>i.</i> , handle, manage; have on (one's) hands, be engagēd in (40).	tum, <i>adv.</i> , then, at that time, on that occasion, on this occasion; at the time (28, 83); at such times (7); for the time being (122); now (139): thereupon, whereupon; later (113): furthermore, in the second place (16, 114). See also <i>cum</i> ( <i>conj.</i> ).
trādō, <i>3.</i> , -dīlī, -ditus, give up, surrender, hand over, pass over; pass (hand) up (86); cede; transfer (91): assign (112); impart (27): say (88), state (131). trāditum est, it is related (stated, <i>lit.</i> handed down); the story runs (88).	tumultus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , alarm, confusion.
trādūcō, <i>3.</i> , -dūxī, -ductus, take across, bring across.	turma, -ae, <i>f.</i> , company (of cavalry), squadron. ( <i>A turma enrolled about 30 men.</i> )
trägula, -ae, <i>f.</i> , dart.	turris, -is, <i>f.</i> , ( <i>acc. sing.</i> -im), tower.
trāns, <i>prep. with acc.</i> , across, over.	tūtō, <i>adv.</i> , safely, in safety.
trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itus, cross, cross over, come over, go over; come over, desert (119).	tūtūs, -a, -um, safe; (place) of safety.
trānsportō, <i>i.</i> , take over, carry over; carry away (91, 92).	ubi, <i>adv.</i> ; ( <i>interrogative</i> ) where? ( <i>Relative</i> ) where; upon which (11), in which (33); <i>beginning a new sentence</i> , there, (and) there, (but) there, etc. ( <i>cf. what is said of the translation of the relative qui</i> ).
Trasumennus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , the name of a lake of central Italy.	ubi, <i>conj.</i> , when. ubi prīmū, on the first occasion that, the first time that.
trēs, trēs, tria, three.	ūllus, -a, -um, any; some (65); a single (137). nē ūllus, that no; nec ūllus, and . . . no, and . . . none.
Trēverī, -ōrum, <i>m.</i> , the name of a people of northern Gaul.	ulterior, -iōr, -ius, farther; <i>in some proper names</i> , South (60, 70).
tribūnus, -ī, <i>m.</i> (with or without mīlitum), captain (27), major (28), staff-officer (32); (military) tribune (103 ff.).	Superl., ultimus, -a, -um, last, final.
tribūtūm, -ī, <i>n.</i> , tribute, tax.	ultimus, -a, -um, see ulterior.
	ultrō, <i>adv.</i> , voluntarily, actually. ultrō citrōque, back and forth, up and down.
	ululātus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , yell, cry, shriek, war- whoop.

**Umbrēnus, -ī, m.**, (Publius) Umbrenus, a freedman implicated in Catiline's conspiracy.

**umerus, -ī, m.**, shoulder.

**umquam, adv.**, ever. **neque umquam**, and never.

**ūnā, adv.**, together. **ūnā cum, with abl.**, along with, together with, in company with, with; side by side with (83).

**Uncās, -ae, m.**, the name of an Indian chief.

**unde, adv.**, whence, from which, from whence; from thence (39).

**ūndēcimūs, -a, -um**, eleventh.

**ūndēvīngītī, indeclinable adj.**, nineteen.

**undique, adv.**, on all sides, in all quarters, everywhere, all about, in all directions, in every direction; from every side, from all sides, from every quarter, from all quarters.

**ūniversī, -ae, -a**, all, one and all, in a body.

**ūnus, -a, -um**, one, a single; (but) one (125); the one, the single (126).

*As noun, masc. sing.*, one (132).

**ad ūnum**, to a man, to the last man, utterly.

**urbs, urbīs, f.**, city; the city (*i.e.* Rome) (42, 45, 86).

**usque, adv.**, even. **usque ad, with acc.**, as far as, even to; until.

**ūsus, -ūs, m.**, use, assistance, service; experience (133). **ūsuī esse**, (*freely*), be useful, be helpful, be used; be needed, be needful (110, 122, 123). See also *veniō*.

**ūsus, -a, -um**, see **ūtor**.

**ut, utī, conj.**; (*causal*) inasmuch as (126); (*purpose*) to, in order to, in order that, so that, that; for the

purpose (of doing a thing), with the idea (of doing a thing): (*relative*), as; (just) as (135); (*result*) so that, that, as to: (*substantive*) that (110); (*temporal*) when (131, 138).

**uterque, utraque, utrumque**, each (of two), either, both. *As noun, masc. sing.*, each, each man (of two). **utī**, see **ut**.

**Utica, -ae, f.**, the name of an African city.

**ūtor, 3, ūsus sum, with abl.**, use, make use of, enjoy, have, employ, have recourse to, have occasion to use, bring into play, put into execution: accept, profit by (129), depend upon (71); devote (109); give utterance to (92); keep up (127); stoop to (63); *with a second abl.*, use (have) . . . (as) (129).

**uxor, -ōris, f.**, wife; squaw.

**vagor, i**, wander, drift.

**valētūdō, -inis, f.**, health.

**validus, -a, -um**, strong, hardy, powerful; large (army).

**vallēs, -is, f.**, valley, glade.

**vällum, -ī, n.**, wall, rampart, intrenchment.

**varius, -a, -um**, varying, various, of various kinds.

**Vārus, -ī, m.**, see *Attius*.

**Vasingtō, -ōnis, m.**, (George) Washington.

**-ve, conj.**, or; and (120).

**vectus, -a, -um**, see *vehō*.

**vehementer, adv.**, exceedingly much; deeply (42), energetically (94), earnestly (104), highly (139), zealously (135).

**vehō, 3, vēxī, vectus**, carry, bring,

- convey, ferry over. *Pass.*, be carried, proceed, sail, ride. **equō vectus**, on horseback.
- vel**, *conj. and adv.; with superl. of adjs. or advs.*, even (98). **vel . . . vel**, either . . . or, both . . . and.
- vēlum**, -ī, *n.*, sail. See also *dō*.
- vēndō**, 3, **vēndidī**, **vēnditus**, sell.
- venēnum**, -ī, *n.*, poison.
- venia**, -ae, *f.*, pardon.
- veniō**, 4, **vēnī**, **ventum est**, come, proceed, march; arrive (126); draw near (118); *with in and acc.*, arrive (in). **auxiliō venire**, (*freely*) come to help; *with a second dat.*, come to the help (of): *in dēditiō-nem venire*, surrender; *in manūs venire*, with *gen.*, fall into the hands (of): *subsidiō venire*, (*freely*) come to the rescue; *with a second dat.*, come (go) to the help (of): *ūsū venire*, be experienced, happen (133) (*ūsū is perhaps an irregular dat. form*).
- vēnor**, 1, hunt.
- ventus**, -ī, *m.*, wind.
- verbum**, -ī, *n.*, word.
- vereor**, 2, -itus sum, fear, be afraid. *Partic.*, **veritus**, -a, -um, fearing, apprehensive; apprehensive of, alarmed at.
- vērō**, *conj.*, indeed, but, nevertheless, however, whereas; in truth, as a matter of fact, in fact: moreover (27); and (29, 42, 120).
- Verrēs**, -is, *m.*, (Gaius) Verres, a (Roman) governor of Sicily.
- versor**, 1, be involved, be; move about; bear a part (79).
- versus**, see *ad . . . versus*.
- Verticō**, -ōnis, *m.*, the name of a Gaul friendly to the Romans.
- vertō**, 3, **vertī**, **versus**, turn. **terga vertere**, wheel about.
- vesper**, -erī and -eris, *m.*, evening. **sub vesperum**, toward evening.
- vestīgium**, -ī, *n.*, track, mark. See also *īnsequor* and *sequor*.
- vestīmentum**, -ī, *n.*, garment. *Pl.*, clothing, clothes, dress.
- vestis**, -is, *f.*, clothing.
- veterānī**, -ōrum, *m.*, veterans, veteran soldiers, veteran troops.
- vetus**, -eris, *adj.*, old-time, one-time.
- via**, -ae, *f.*, route, road, way, highway, track, trail, path; journey (126).
- vīcīnus**, -ī, *m.*, neighbor.
- victōria**, -ae, *f.*, victory.
- victus**, -a, -um, see *vincō*.
- vīcus**, -ī, *m.*, village, hamlet.
- videō**, 2, **vīdī**, **vīsus**, see, view, behold, observe, watch; catch sight of, sight; see, find, discover (134).
- videor**, 2, **vīsus sum**, seem, appear. *Used impersonally*, **vidētur**, seem best (103).
- vigilia**, -ae, *f.*, watch (*i.e.* division of the night). *Pl.*, wakefulness (104).
- vigilō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, keep awake, be alert, be awake; sit up (39).
- vīgintī**, *indeclinable adj.*, twenty.
- villa**, -ae, *f.*, farmhouse; farm (53).
- vincō**, 3, **vīcī**, **victus**, defeat, conquer, subdue, overcome, worst, beat, repulse; be victorious, prevail. *Partic. as adj.*, **victus**, -a, -um, defeated, beaten.
- vinculum**, -ī, *n.*, chain. *Pl.*, fetters, chains.
- vir**, **virī**, *m.*, man, gentleman; husband (73). **vir Britannicus**, (an) Englishman; **vir Rōmānus**, (a) Roman
- Virginia**, -ae, *f.*, Virginia.

**virtūs, -ūtis, f.**, valor, bravery, courage, grit; coolness (110).

**vis, —, f.**, force (73), violence (131); vigor (136), (dead) earnest (136): amount (70, 74, 82), cloud (of dust) (118). *Pl.*, strength. See also *capiō*.

**vīta, -ae, f.**, life. *Sing. often found where Engl. would use pl.* See also *agō*.

**vītō, i.**, avoid, make (one's) way around; avert (danger) (122).

**vīvō, 3, vīxī, vīctum est**, live; eke out an existence (39).

**vīvus, -a, -um**, alive (132). *As noun,* **vīvī, -ōrum, m.**, the living (91).

**vix**, *adv.*, scarcely, hardly.

**vocō, i.**, call, summon, invite; call, name. *in iūs vocāre*, prosecute, bring to trial (45).

**volō, velle, voluī**, desire, wish, please; be anxious, want, aim, plan; be willing, be ready. *nec velle*, and . . . be unwilling, and . . . refuse (86).

**vōx, vōcis, f.**, voice; tones (95), articulation (131); remark, question (14).

**vulnerō, i.**, wound. *Partic. as adj., vulnerātus, -a, -um*, wounded; *as noun, vulnerātī, -ōrum, m.*, the wounded.

**vulnus, -eris, n.**, wound, injury.

**vultus, -ūs, m.**, countenance, expression.

# PEARSON'S LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

By HENRY CARR PEARSON, Horace Mann School,  
Teachers College, New York.

---

Complete . . . . .	\$1.00
Part II, Based on Caesar . . . . .	.50
Part III, Based on Cicero . . . . .	.50

---

**T**HIS book combines a thorough and systematic study of the essentials of Latin syntax with abundant practice in translating English into Latin; and affords constant practice in writing Latin at sight. It meets the most exacting college entrance requirements.

¶ Part I is a summary of the fundamental principles of Latin grammar and syntax, and contains clear, concise explanations of many points that are troublesome to the ordinary pupil. It is divided into graded lessons of convenient length, each lesson including English-Latin exercises for practice. References to all the leading grammars are also given.

¶ Part II contains short, disconnected English sentences and some continuous narrative based on Books I-IV of Caesar's Gallic War. Part III presents material for translation into Latin based upon Cicero. There are also exercises for general review preparatory to college entrance examinations.

¶ A valuable feature of the book is the Review Lessons, introduced at intervals. These contain lists of important words for vocabulary study, and together with the summaries of grammatical principles afford excellent material for review work and practice in sight translation. For purposes of emphasis and intensive study, typical Latin sentences, illustrating important grammatic usages, idioms, and phrases are placed at the head of each chapter based on Books I and II of Caesar and the first Catilinian oration of Cicero.

---

A M E R I C A N   B O O K   C O M P A N Y

# MORRIS & MORGAN'S LATIN SERIES FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

- ESSENTIALS OF LATIN FOR BEGINNERS. Henry C. Pearson, Teachers College, New York. 90 cents.
- A SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR. Morris H. Morgan, Harvard University. \$1.00.
- A FIRST LATIN WRITER. M. A. Abbott, Groton School. 60 cents.
- CONNECTED PASSAGES FOR LATIN PROSE WRITING. Maurice W. Mather, formerly of Harvard University, and Arthur L. Wheeler, Bryn Mawr College. \$1.00.
- CAESAR. EPISODES FROM THE GALlic AND CIVIL WARS. Maurice W. Mather, formerly of Harvard University. \$1.25.
- CICERO. TEN ORATIONS WITH EXTRACTS FROM THE EPISTLES TO SERVE AS ILLUSTRATIONS. J. Remsen Bishop, Eastern High School. Detroit, Frederick A. King, Hughes High School, Cincinnati, and Nathan W. Helm, Phillips Exeter Academy, Exeter, N. H. \$1.25.
- CICERO. SIX ORATIONS. Bishop, King, and Helm. \$1.00.
- SELECTIONS FROM LATIN PROSE AUTHORS FOR SIGHT READING. Susan Braley Franklin and Ella Catherine Greene, Miss Baldwin's School, Bryn Mawr. 40 cents.
- CICERO. CATO MAIOR. Frank G. Moore, Dartmouth College. 80 cents.
- CICERO. LAELIUS DE AMICITIA. Clifton Price, University of California. 75 cents.
- SELECTIONS FROM LIVY. Harry E. Burton, Dartmouth College. \$1.50.
- HORACE. ODES AND EPODES. Clifford H. Moore, Harvard University. \$1.50.
- HORACE. SATIRES. Edward P. Morris, Yale University.. \$1.00.
- PLINY'S LETTERS. Albert A. Howard, Harvard University.
- TIBULLUS. Kirby F. Smith, Johns Hopkins University.
- LUCRETIUS. William A. Merrill, University of California. \$2.25.
- LATIN LITERATURE OF THE EMPIRE. Alfred Gudeman, University of Pennsylvania.
- Vol. I. Prose: Velleius to Boethius . . . . . \$1.80
- Vol. II. Poetry: Pseudo-Vergiliana to Claudianus . . . 1.80
- SELECTIONS FROM THE PUBLIC AND PRIVATE LAW OF THE ROMANS. James J. Robinson, Hotchkiss School. \$1.25.

*Others to be announced later*

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

# VIRGIL'S AENEID

Edited by HENRY S. FRIEZE, late Professor of Latin, University of Michigan. Revised by WALTER H. DENISON, Professor of Latin, University of Michigan

First Six Books . . . . .	\$1.30	Complete . . . . .	\$1.50
Complete Text Edition . .		\$0.50	

**I**N its present form this well-known work has been thoroughly revised and modernized. It is published in two volumes: one containing the first six books, the other the entire twelve books—an arrangement especially convenient for students who read more than the minimum College Entrance Requirements in Latin. Both volumes are printed on very thin opaque paper, thus making each an extraordinarily compact and usable book.

¶ The introduction has been enlarged by the addition of sections on the life and writings of Virgil, the plan of the Aeneid, the meter, manuscripts, editions, and helpful books of reference.

¶ The text has been corrected to conform to the readings that have become established, and the spellings are in accord with the evidence of inscriptions of the first century A.D. To meet the need of early assistance in reading the verse metrically, the long vowels in the first two books are fully indicated.

¶ The notes have been thoroughly revised, and largely added to. The old grammar references are corrected, and new ones added. The literary appreciation of the poet is increased by parallel quotations from English literature. The irregularities of scansion in each book are given with sufficient explanations.

¶ The vocabulary has been made as simple as possible, and includes only those words occurring in the Aeneid. The illustrations and maps, for the most part, are new and fresh, and have been selected with great care, with a view to assisting directly in the interpretation of the text.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

# A NEW CICERO

Edited by ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph.D., LL.D., Professor Emeritus in Brown University; assisted by J. C. KIRTLAND, Jr., Professor in Phillips Exeter Academy; and G. H. WILLIAMS, Professor in Kalamazoo College, late Instructor in Phillips Exeter Academy

Nine Oration Edition . . \$1.25

Six Oration Edition . . \$1.00

FOR convenience this edition of Cicero has been published in two forms. The larger edition includes the four orations against Catiline, the Manilian Law, Archias, Marcellus, Ligarius, and the Fourteenth Philippic. The smaller edition contains the first six of these orations, which are those required by the College Entrance Examination Board, and by the New York State Education Department.

¶ Before the text of each oration is a special introduction, which is intended to awaken the interest of the student by furnishing him with information in regard to the oration.

¶ The general introduction presents an outline of the life of Cicero, a brief history of Roman oratory, a chronological table of contemporaneous Roman history, a short account of the main divisions of the Roman people, the powers and the duties of magistrates, of the senate, of the popular assemblies, and of the courts of justice.

¶ The notes give the student the key to all really difficult passages, and at the same time furnish him with such collateral information upon Roman manners and customs, upon Roman history and life, as will enable him to understand, appreciate, and enjoy these masterpieces of Roman oratory. The grammatical references are to all the standard Latin grammars.

¶ The vocabulary gives the primary meanings of words, with such other meanings as the student will need in translating the orations. Special attention is devoted to the important subject of etymology. There are many maps and illustrations.

A AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

# LATIN DICTIONARIES

## HARPER'S LATIN DICTIONARY

Founded on the translation of Freund's Latin-German Lexicon. Edited by E. A. ANDREWS, LL.D. Revised, Enlarged, and in great part Rewritten by CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D., and CHARLES SHORT, LL.D.  
Royal Octavo, 2030 pages. Sheep, \$6.50; Full Russia, \$10.00

¶ The translation of Dr. Freund's great Latin-German Lexicon, edited by the late Dr. E. A. Andrews, and published in 1850, has been from that time in extensive and satisfactory use throughout England and America. Meanwhile great advances have been made in the science on which lexicography depends. The present work embodies the latest advances in philological study and research, and is in every respect the most complete and satisfactory Latin Dictionary published.

## LEWIS'S LATIN DICTIONARY FOR SCHOOLS

By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D.  
Large Octavo, 1200 pages. Cloth, \$4.50; Half Leather, \$5.00

¶ This dictionary is not an abridgment, but an entirely new and independent work, designed to include all of the student's needs, after acquiring the elements of grammar, for the interpretation of the Latin authors commonly read in school.

## LEWIS'S ELEMENTARY LATIN DICTIONARY

By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D.  
Crown Octavo, 952 pages. Half Leather . . . . . \$2.00

¶ This work is sufficiently full to meet the needs of students in secondary or preparatory schools, and also in the first and second years' work in colleges.

## SMITH'S ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY

A Complete and Critical English-Latin Dictionary. By WILLIAM SMITH, LL.D., and THEOPHILUS D. HALL, M.A., Fellow of University College, London. With a Dictionary of Proper Names.  
Royal Octavo, 765 pages. Sheep . . . . . \$4.00

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

# SELECTIONS FROM THE WORKS OF OVID

Edited by FRANK J. MILLER, Ph.D. (Yale),  
Professor of Latin, University of Chicago

Annotated Edition . . . \$1.40

Text Edition . . . . \$0.50

THESE selections are fairly representative, and are edited in such a way as to illustrate the style and subject-matter of each poem, and at the same time to show the exact relation of every part to the complete work.

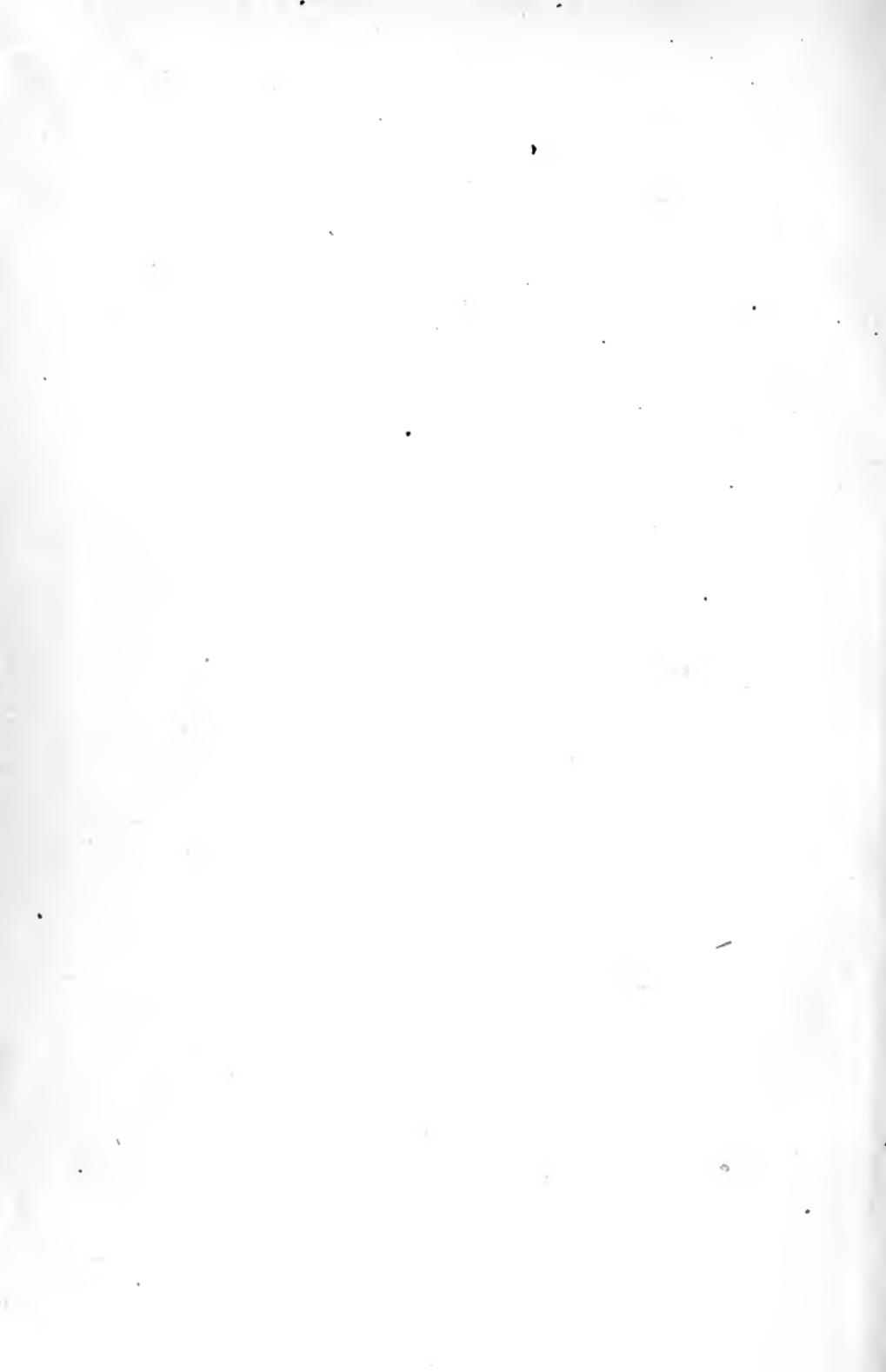
The book includes over 3,800 lines from the Metamorphoses, thus more than meeting the requirements in Ovid of the College Entrance Examination Board, and in addition the following: Selections from Heroides, Amores, Ars Amatoria, Remedia Amoris, Fasti, Tristia, and Epistulae ex Ponto; Life of Ovid, Poetic Forms of Ovid's Works; with notes on the selections, and vocabulary.

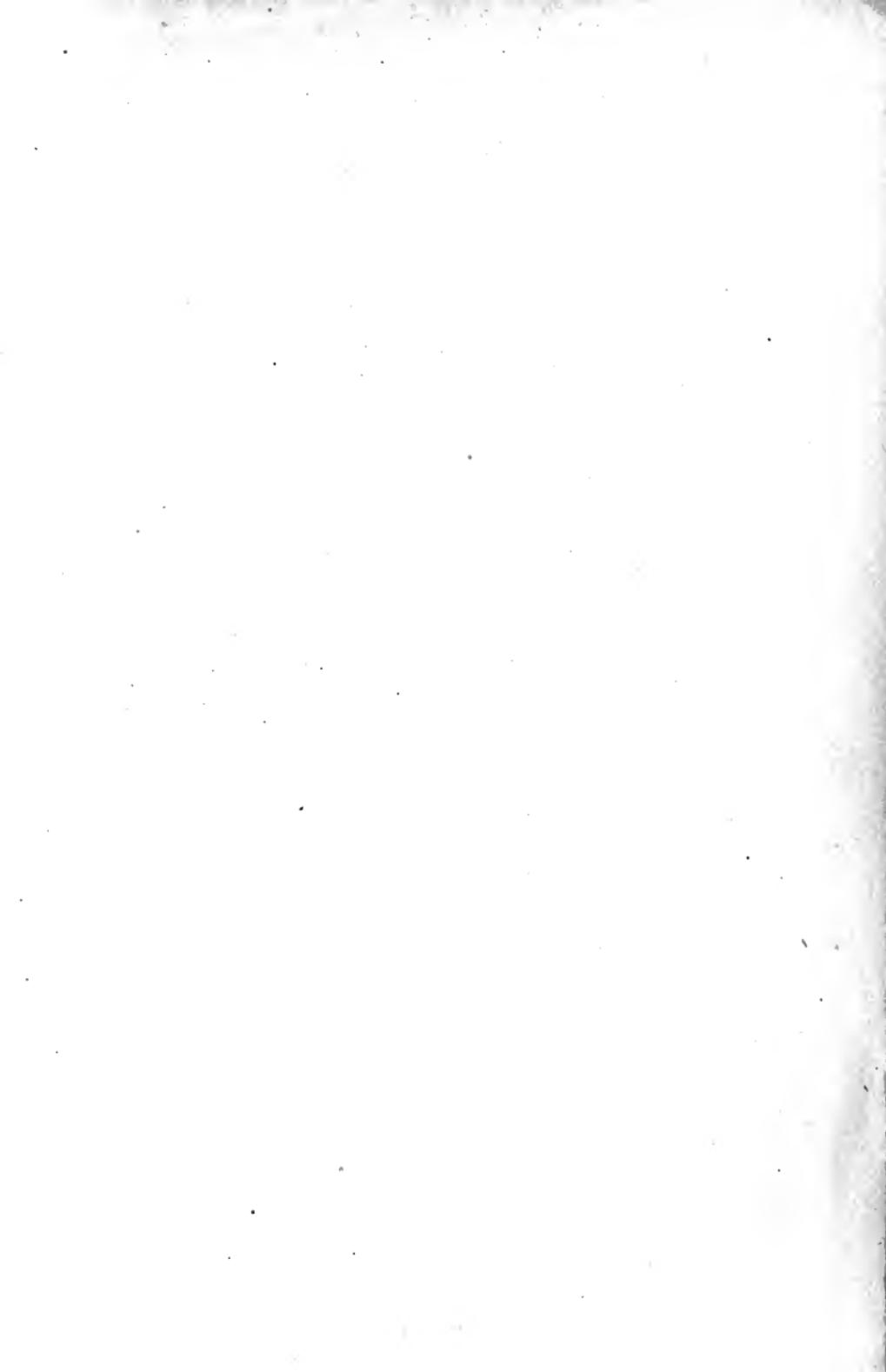
The notes have been prepared with special reference to the needs of both the school and the college student. They include: General assistance in the translation of difficult and obscure passages; judicious references on points of syntax to all the modern school grammars in common use; notes and comments upon points of antiquarian interest; and suggestions and illustrations of the relations of Ovid's stories to their earlier sources, and especially of their effect upon English literature.

The vocabulary, which has been prepared especially for this volume, gives the literal meaning of each word, and also all of the typical meanings which occur in the text. Generous assistance in word derivation is offered as well.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY







THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE  
STAMPED BELOW

**AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS**

WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN  
THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY  
WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH  
DAY AND TO \$1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY  
OVERDUE.

JUN 1 3 1945	
Pat [unclear] [unclear]	2
[unclear]	
29 May '56 CT	
Eddie	
JUN 2 9 1956 L	
JUN 2 9 1956 L	
31 Jan 58 J	
RECD LD	
JAN 19 1953	
	LD 21-100m-12-'43 (8796s)

GENERAL LIBRARY - U.C. BERKELEY



8000241692

